

MASSIMO DI PIERRO

WEB2PY

ENTERPRISE WEB FRAMEWORK

3RD EDITION

LULU.COM

Copyright 2008, 2009, 2010 by Massimo Di Pierro. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600, or on the web at www.copyright.com. Requests to the Copyright owner for permission should be addressed to:

Massimo Di Pierro
School of Computing
DePaul University
243 S Wabash Ave
Chicago, IL 60604 (USA)
Email: mdipierro@cs.depaul.edu

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty: While the publisher and author have used their best efforts in preparing this book, they make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this book and specifically disclaim any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales representatives or written sales materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for your situation. You should consult with a professional where appropriate. Neither the publisher nor author shall be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damages, including but not limited to special, incidental, consequential, or other damages.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data:

ISBN 978-0-557-60414-2

Printed in the United States of America.

2010-08-13 12:09

To my family

Contents

1	Introduction	29
1.1	Principles	32
1.2	Web Frameworks	33
1.3	Model-View-Controller	35
1.4	Why web2py	39
1.5	Security	40
1.6	In the box	42
1.7	License	44
1.8	Acknowledgments	46
1.9	About this Book	48
1.10	Elements of Style	50

2 The Python Language	53
2.1 About Python	53
2.2 Starting up	54
2.3 help, dir	55
2.4 Types	56
2.4.1 str	57
2.4.2 list	58
2.4.3 tuple	59
2.4.4 dict	60
2.5 About Indentation	61
2.6 for...in	62
2.7 while	63
2.8 def...return	64
2.9 if...elif...else	65
2.10 try...except...else...finally	66
2.11 class	68
2.12 Special Attributes, Methods and Operators	69
2.13 File Input/Output	70

2.14 lambda	71
2.15 exec, eval	73
2.16 import	74
2.16.1 os	75
2.16.2 sys	76
2.16.3 datetime	76
2.16.4 time	77
2.16.5 cPickle	77
3 Overview	79
3.1 Startup	79
3.2 Say Hello	84
3.3 Let's Count	89
3.4 Say My Name	91
3.5 Postbacks	93
3.6 An Image Blog	96
3.7 Adding CRUD	111
3.8 Adding Authentication	112

3.9 Configuring the Layout	115
3.10 A Wiki	115
3.11 More on admin	127
3.11.1 <i>site</i>	127
3.11.2 <i>about</i>	130
3.11.3 <i>edit</i>	131
3.11.4 <i>errors</i>	134
3.11.5 <i>Mercurial</i>	137
3.12 More on appadmin	138

4 The Core	141
4.1 Command Line Options	141
4.2 Dispatching	144
4.3 Libraries	149
4.4 Applications	154
4.5 API	156
4.6 <i>request</i>	157
4.7 <i>response</i>	161

4.8 session	164
4.9 cache	166
4.10 URL	168
4.11 HTTP and redirect	171
4.12 T and Internationalization	173
4.13 Cookies	175
4.14 Application init	176
4.15 URL Rewrite	177
4.15.1 Application-Specific URL Rewrite	181
4.16 Default Application, Controller and Function	181
4.17 Routes on Error	181
4.18 Cron	182
4.19 Background Processes and Task Queues	185
4.20 Third Party Modules	187
4.21 Execution Environment	188
4.22 Cooperation	190
4.23 WSGI	191
4.23.1 External Middleware	192

4.23.2 Internal Middleware	192
4.23.3 Calling WSGI Applications	193
5 The Views	195
5.1 Basic Syntax	198
5.1.1 for...in	198
5.1.2 while	198
5.1.3 if...elif...else	199
5.1.4 try...except...else...finally	200
5.1.5 def...return	201
5.2 HTML Helpers	202
5.2.1 XML	203
5.2.2 Built-in Helpers	204
5.2.3 Custom Helpers	217
5.3 BEAUTIFY	218
5.4 Server-side DOM and Parsing	219
5.4.1 elements	219
5.4.2 parent	221

5.4.3 flatten	221
5.4.4 Parsing	222
5.5 Page Layout	222
5.5.1 Default Page Layout	224
5.5.2 Customizing the Default Layout	226
5.6 Functions in Views	228
5.7 Blocks in Views	229
5.8 Using the Template System to Generate Emails	230
6 The Database Abstraction Layer	233
6.1 Dependencies	233
6.2 Connection Strings	235
6.2.1 Connection Pooling	236
6.2.2 Connection Failures	237
6.2.3 Replicated Databases	237
6.3 Reserved Keywords	238
6.4 DAL, Table, Field	239
6.5 Record Representation	240

6.6 Migrations	246
6.7 Fixing Broken Migrations	247
6.8 insert	248
6.9 commit and rollback	249
6.10 Raw SQL	250
6.10.1 executesql	250
6.10.2 _lastsql	251
6.11 drop	251
6.12 Indexes	251
6.13 Legacy Databases and Keyed Tables	252
6.14 Distributed Transaction	253
6.15 Manual Uploads	253
6.16 Query, Set, Rows	254
6.17 select	255
6.17.1 Shortcuts	256
6.17.2 Fetching a Row	258
6.17.3 Recursive selects	258
6.17.4 Serializing Rows in Views	259

6.17.5 <code>orderby</code> , <code>groupby</code> , <code>limitby</code> , <code>distinct</code>	260
6.17.6 Logical Operators	262
6.17.7 <code>count</code> , <code>delete</code> , <code>update</code>	263
6.17.8 Expressions	263
6.17.9 <code>update_record</code>	264
6.17.10 <code>first</code> and <code>last</code>	264
6.17.11 <code>as_dict</code> and <code>as_list</code>	264
6.17.12 <code>find</code> , <code>exclude</code> , <code>sort</code>	265
6.18 Computed Fields	266
6.19 Virtual Fields	267
6.20 One to Many Relation	269
6.20.1 Inner Joins	270
6.20.2 Left Outer Join	271
6.20.3 Grouping and Counting	272
6.21 Many to Many	272
6.22 Many to Many, <code>list:<type></code> , and <code>contains</code>	274
6.23 Other Operators	276
6.23.1 <code>like</code> , <code>startswith</code> , <code>contains</code> , <code>upper</code> , <code>lower</code>	276

6.23.2 <code>year, month, day, hour, minutes, seconds</code>	277
6.23.3 <code>belongs</code>	278
6.24 Generating raw SQL	278
6.25 Exporting and Importing Data	279
6.25.1 CSV (one table at a time)	279
6.25.2 CSV (all tables at once)	280
6.25.3 CSV and Remote Database Synchronization	281
6.25.4 HTML/XML (one table at a time)	283
6.25.5 Data Representation	284
6.26 Caching Selects	285
6.27 Self-Reference and Aliases	286
6.28 Table Inheritance	288
7 Forms and Validators	289
7.1 FORM	290
7.1.1 Hidden fields	294
7.1.2 <code>keepvalues</code>	296
7.1.3 <code>onvalidation</code>	296

7.1.4	Forms and redirection	297
7.1.5	Multiple forms per page	298
7.1.6	Sharing Forms	299
7.2	SQLFORM	300
7.2.1	SQLFORM and insert/update/delete	304
7.2.2	SQLFORM in HTML	306
7.2.3	SQLFORM and Uploads	307
7.2.4	Storing the Original Filename	310
7.2.5	autodelete	311
7.2.6	Links to Referencing Records	311
7.2.7	Pre-populating the form	313
7.2.8	SQLFORM without database IO	313
7.3	SQLFORM.factory	315
7.4	CRUD	316
7.4.1	Settings	318
7.4.2	Messages	320
7.4.3	Methods	321
7.4.4	Record Versioning	323

7.5	Custom forms	325
7.5.1	CSS Conventions	326
7.5.2	Hide Errors	327
7.6	Validators	328
7.6.1	Validators	329
7.6.2	Database Validators	342
7.6.3	Custom Validators	344
7.6.4	Validators with Dependencies	345
7.7	Widgets	346
7.7.1	Autocomplete Widget	347
8	Access Control	349
8.1	Authentication	351
8.1.1	Restrictions on registration	354
8.1.2	Integration with OpenID, Facebook, etc.	355
8.1.3	CAPTCHA and reCAPTCHA	357
8.1.4	Customizing Auth	358
8.1.5	Renaming Auth tables	359

8.1.6	Other Login Methods and Login Forms	360
8.2	Auth and Mail	366
8.2.1	Email Debugging	367
8.2.2	Emails from Google App Engine	367
8.2.3	More Email Examples	368
8.2.4	x509 and PGP Encryption	369
8.3	Authorization	370
8.3.1	Decorators	372
8.3.2	Combining Requirements	373
8.3.3	Authorization and CRUD	374
8.3.4	Authorization and Downloads	375
8.3.5	Access Control and Basic Authentication	376
8.3.6	Settings and Messages	377
8.4	Central Authentication Service	382
9	Services	387
9.1	Rendering a dictionary	387
9.1.1	HTML, XML, and JSON	388

9.1.2	Generic Views	389
9.1.3	Rendering Rows	390
9.1.4	Custom Formats	391
9.1.5	RSS	391
9.1.6	CSV	393
9.2	Remote Procedure Calls	394
9.2.1	XMLRPC	397
9.2.2	JSONRPC and Pyjamas	398
9.2.3	AMFRPC	403
9.2.4	SOAP	405
9.3	Low Level API and Other Recipes	406
9.3.1	simplejson	406
9.3.2	PyRTF	407
9.3.3	ReportLab and PDF	408
9.4	Services and Authentication	409
10	Ajax Recipes	411
10.1	web2py_ajax.html	411

10.2 jQuery Effects	415
10.2.1 Conditional Fields in Forms	419
10.2.2 Confirmation on Delete	421
10.3 The ajax Function	422
10.3.1 Eval target	423
10.3.2 Auto-completion	424
10.3.3 Ajax Form Submission	427
10.3.4 Voting and Rating	428
11 Deployment Recipes	431
11.1 Linux/Unix	434
11.1.1 One Step Production Deployment	435
11.1.2 Apache setup	435
11.1.3 mod_wsgi	436
11.1.4 mod_wsgi and SSL	440
11.1.5 mod_proxy	441
11.1.6 Start as Linux Daemon	444
11.1.7 Lighttpd	444

11.1.8 Shared Hosting with mod_python	446
11.1.9 Cherokee with FastCGI	447
11.1.10 PostgreSQL	449
11.2 Windows	451
11.2.1 Apache and mod_wsgi	451
11.2.2 Start as Windows Service	454
11.3 Securing Sessions and admin	455
11.4 Efficiency and Scalability	456
11.4.1 Efficiency Tricks	458
11.4.2 Sessions in Database	458
11.4.3 HAProxy a High Availability Load Balancer	459
11.4.4 Cleanup Sessions	461
11.4.5 Upload Files in Database	462
11.4.6 Collecting Tickets	463
11.4.7 Memcache	465
11.4.8 Sessions in Memcache	466
11.4.9 Removing Applications	466
11.4.10 Using Replicated Databases Servers	466

11.5 Google App Engine	467
11.5.1 Configuration	468
11.5.2 Running and Deployment	470
11.5.3 Configuring the Handler	472
11.5.4 Avoid the Filesystem	473
11.5.5 Memcache	473
11.5.6 Database Issues	474
11.5.7 GAE and HTTPS	475
12 Other Recipes	477
12.1 Upgrading	477
12.2 How to Distribute your Applications as Binaries	478
12.3 Fetching an external URL	479
12.4 Pretty dates	479
12.5 Geocoding	479
12.6 Pagination	480
12.7 httpserver.log and the Log File Format	481
12.8 Populating Database with Dummy Data	482

12.9	Send an SMS	483
12.10	Accepting Credit Card Payments	484
12.11	Twitter API	486
12.12	Streaming Virtual Files	486
12.13	Jython	487
13	Components and Plugins	489
13.1	Components	490
13.1.1	Client-Server Component Communications	495
13.1.2	Trapped Ajax Links	496
13.2	Plugins	497
13.2.1	Component Plugins	502
13.2.2	Plugin Manager	503
13.2.3	Layout plugins	505
13.3	plugin_wiki	506
13.3.1	Markmin syntax	509
13.3.2	Page Permissions	512
13.3.3	Special Pages	512

13.3.4 Configuring plugin_wiki	514
13.3.5 Current Widgets	515
13.3.6 Extending Widgets	521
Bibliography	525

Preface

web2py was launched in 2007 and now, after three years of continuous development, we have reached a very much needed third edition of this book. During this time web2py has managed to win the affection of many knowledgeable users and developers who share its goals and have contributed to make significant improvements.

I would like to acknowledge and especially thank a few of those major contributors: Jonathan Lundell (new routes), Thadeus Burgess (new template), Nathan Freeze (validators and authentication), and Timothy Farrell (new web server). There is a more complete list in Chapter 1. Our collective effort has created one of the most fully-featured Open Source web frameworks in existence.

I originally started web2py as a teaching tool because I was very concerned about the growth of the digital divide and the obstacles this creates for the free flow of information. The ability to build good quality web applications, fast and efficiently, is of critical importance to enable more people to interact with the Internet in a meaningful way and prevent the biggest players from monopolizing information. This was my motivation for creating web2py, and it remains just as valid and even more important today.

In general, the purpose of any web framework is to make web development easier, faster and prevent developers from making mistakes, especially in

matters related to security. In web2py we address these issues with our three main goals:

Ease of use is the primary goal for web2py. For us, this means reducing the learning and deployment time. This is why web2py is a full-stack framework without dependencies. It requires no installation and has no configuration files. Everything works *out of the box*, including a web server, database and a web-based IDE that gives access to all the main features. The API has been simplified to just 12 core objects, which means it is easier to work with and memorize. We have worked hard to make web2py as unrestricted as possible; you can use a wide range of the most popular web servers and databases and always have access to the full power of the Python language.

Faster development is the secondary goal. Every function of web2py has a default behavior (which can be overridden). For example, as soon as you have specified your data models, you will have access to a web-based database administration panel. As soon as you add controller actions, you will have default presentation views to create forms and present data to your users in HTML, XML, JSON, RSS, etc. web2py also generates automatically forms for your data.

Security is at the heart of web2py, and our goal here is to lock everything down to keep your systems and data safe. Therefore, our database layer eliminates SQL Injections. The template language prevents Cross Site Scripting vulnerabilities. The forms generated by web2py provide field validation and block Cross Site Request Forgeries. Passwords are always stored encrypted. Sessions are stored server-side by default to prevent Cookie Tampering and session cookies are uuid to prevent Cookie Stealing.

web2py has always been built from the user perspective and is constantly optimized internally to become faster and leaner, whilst always maintaining *backward compatibility*.

web2py is free for you to use. If you benefit from it, we hope you will feel a little more like contributing back to society in whatever form you choose.

1

Introduction

web2py (1) is a free, open-source web framework for agile development of secure database-driven web applications; it is written in Python (2) and programmable in Python. web2py is a full-stack framework, meaning that it contains all the components you need to build fully functional web applications. web2py is designed to guide a web developer to follow good software engineering practices, such as using the Model View Controller (MVC) pattern. web2py separates the data representation (the model) from the data presentation (the view) and also from the application logic and workflow (the controller). web2py provides libraries to help the developer design, implement, and test each of these three parts separately, and makes them work together. web2py is built for security. This means that it automatically addresses many of the issues that can lead to security vulnerabilities, by following well established practices. For example, it validates all input (to prevent injections), escapes all output (to prevent cross-site scripting), renames uploaded files (to prevent directory traversal attacks). web2py leaves little choice to application developers in matters related to security. web2py includes a Database Abstraction Layer (DAL) that writes SQL (3) dynamically so that you, the developer, don't have to. The DAL knows how to generate SQL transparently for SQLite (4), MySQL (6), PostgreSQL (5), MSSQL (7), FireBird (8), Oracle (9), IBM DB2 (10), Informix (11), and Ingres (12). The

DAL can also generate function calls for Google BigTable when running on the Google App Engine (GAE) (13). Once one or more database tables are defined, web2py also generates a fully functional web-based database administration interface to access the database and the tables. web2py differs from other web frameworks in that it is the only framework to fully embrace the Web 2.0 paradigm, where the web is the computer. In fact, web2py does not require installation or configuration; it runs on any architecture that can run Python (Windows, Windows CE, Mac OS X, iOS, and Unix/Linux), and the development, deployment, and maintenance phases for the applications can be done via a local or remote web interface. web2py runs with CPython (the C implementation) and Jython (the Java implementation), versions 2.4, 2.5 and 2.6 although "officially" only supports 2.5 so that we can guarantee backward compatibility for applications. web2py provides a ticketing system. If an error occurs, a ticket is issued to the user, and the error is logged for the administrator. web2py is open source and released under the GPL2.0 license, but applications developed with web2py are not subject to any license constraint. In fact, as long as they do not contain web2py source code, they are not considered "derivative works". web2py also allows the developer to bytecode-compile applications and distribute them as closed source, although they will require web2py to run. The web2py license includes an exception that allows web developers to ship their products with original pre-compiled web2py binaries, without the accompanying source code.

Another feature of web2py is that we, its developers, commit to maintain backward compatibility in future versions. We have done so since the first release of web2py in October, 2007. New features have been added and bugs have been fixed, but if a program worked with web2py 1.0, that program will still work today.

Here are some examples of web2py statements that illustrate its power and simplicity. The following code:

```
1 db.define_table('person', Field('name'), Field('image', 'upload'))
```

creates a database table called "person" with two fields: "name", a string; and "image", something that needs to be uploaded (the actual image). If the table

already exists but does not match this definition, it is altered appropriately.

Given the table defined above, the following code:

```
1 form = crud.create(db.person)
```

creates an insert form for this table that allows users to upload images. It also validates a submitted form, renames the uploaded image in a secure way, stores the image in a file, inserts the corresponding record in the database, prevents double submission, and eventually modifies the form itself by adding error messages if the data submitted by the user does not pass validation.

The following code:

```
1 @auth.requires_permission('read','person')
2 def f(): ....
```

prevents visitors from accessing the function `f` unless the visitor is a member of a group whose members have permissions to "read" records of table "person". If the visitor is not logged in, he gets directed to a login page (provided by default by web2py).

The following code embeds a page component.

```
1 {{=LOAD('other_controller','function.load',ajax=True, ajax_trap=True)}}
```

This instructs web2py to load in a view the content generated by the other controller function (this works with any function). It loads the content via Ajax, embeds it into the current page (using the current layout, not the layout of the other_controller function), and traps all forms contained in the loaded content so that they are also submitted via Ajax without reloading the page. It can also LOAD content from non-web2py applications.

The LOAD helper allows very modular design of applications; it is discussed in some detail in the last chapter of this book.

1.1 *Principles*

Python programming typically follows these basic principles:

- Don't repeat yourself (DRY).
- There should be only one way of doing things.
- Explicit is better than implicit.

web2py fully embraces the first two principles by forcing the developer to use sound software engineering practices that discourage repetition of code. web2py guides the developer through almost all the tasks common in web application development (creating and processing forms, managing sessions, cookies, errors, etc.).

web2py differs from other frameworks with regard to the third principle, which sometimes conflicts with the other two. In particular, web2py does not import user applications, but executes them in a predefined context. This context exposes the Python keywords, as well as the web2py keywords.

To some this may appear as magic, but it should not. In practice simply some modules are already imported without you doing so. web2py is trying to avoid the annoying characteristic of other frameworks that force the developer to import the same modules at the top of every model and controller. web2py, by importing its own modules, saves time and prevents mistakes, thus following the spirit of "don't repeat yourself" and "there should be only one way of doing things".

If the developer wishes to use other Python modules or third-party modules, those modules must be imported explicitly, as in any other Python program.

1.2 Web Frameworks

At its most fundamental level, a web application consists of a set of programs (or functions) that are executed when the corresponding URL is visited. The output of the program is returned to the visitor and rendered by the browser.

The purpose of web frameworks is to allow developers to build new app quickly, easily and without mistakes. This done by providing APIs and tools that reduce and simplify the amount of coding that is required.

The two classic approaches for developing web applications are:

- Generating HTML (14; 15) programmatically.
- Embedding code into HTML pages.

The first model is the one followed, for example, by early CGI scripts. The second model is followed, for example, by PHP (16) (where the code is in PHP, a C-like language), ASP (where the code is in Visual Basic), and JSP (where the code is in Java).

Here we present an example of a PHP program that, when executed, retrieves data from a database and returns an HTML page showing the selected records:

```

1 <html><body><h1>Records</h1><?
2   mysql_connect(localhost,username,password);
3   @mysql_select_db(database) or die( "Unable to select database");
4   $query="SELECT * FROM contacts";
5   $result=mysql_query($query);
6   mysql_close();
7   $i=0;
8   while ($i < mysql_numrows($result)) {
9     $name=mysql_result($result,$i,"name");
10    $phone=mysql_result($result,$i,"phone");
11    echo "<b>$name</b><br>Phone:$phone<br /><br /><hr /><br />";
12    $i++;
13  }
14 ?></body></html>
```

The problem with this approach is that code is embedded into HTML, but the very same code also needs to generate additional HTML and to generate SQL statements to query the database, entangling multiple layers of the application and making it difficult to read and maintain. The situation is even worse for Ajax applications, and the complexity grows with the number of pages (files) that make up the application.

The functionality of the above example can be expressed in web2py with two lines of Python code:

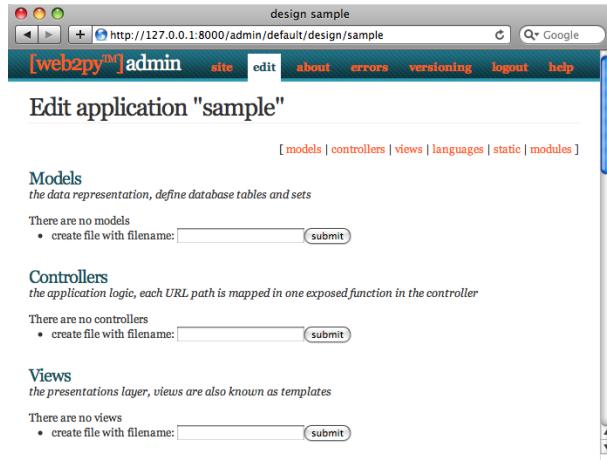
```
1 def index():
2     return HTML(BODY(H1('Records'), db().select(db.contacts.ALL)))
```

In this simple example, the HTML page structure is represented programmatically by the `HTML`, `BODY`, and `H1` objects; the database `db` is queried by the `select` command; finally, everything is serialized into HTML. Notice that `db` is not a keyword but a user defined variable. We will use this name consistently to refer to a database connection to avoid confusion.

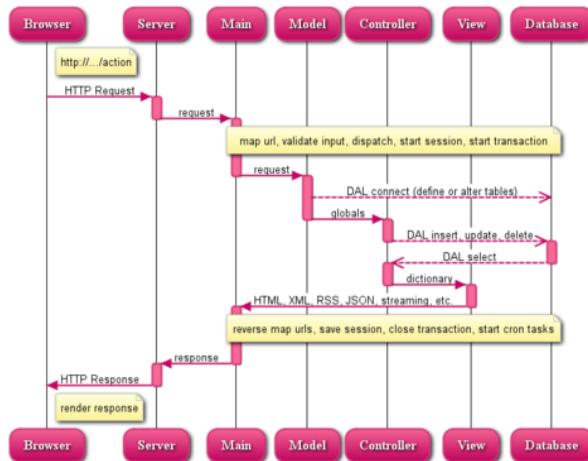
Web frameworks are typically categorized as one of two types: A "glued" framework is built by assembling (gluing together) several third-party components. A "full-stack" framework is built by creating components designed specifically to be tightly integrated and work together. web2py is a full-stack framework. Almost all of its components are built from scratch and are designed to work together, but they function just as well outside of the complete web2py framework. For example, the Database Abstraction Layer (DAL) or the template language can be used independently of the web2py framework by importing `gluon.sql` or `gluon.template` into your own Python applications. `gluon` is the name of the web2py module that contains system libraries. Some web2py libraries, such as building and processing forms from database tables, have dependencies on other portions of web2py. web2py can also work with third-party Python libraries, including other template languages and DALs, but they will not be as tightly integrated as the original components.

1.3 Model-View-Controller

web2py encourages the developer to separate data representation (the model), data presentation (the view) and the application workflow (the controller). Let's consider again the previous example and see how to build a web2py application around it. Here is an example of the web2py MVC edit interface:



The typical workflow of a request in web2py is described in the following diagram:



In the diagram:

- The Server can be the web2py built-in web server or a third-party server, such as Apache. The Server handles multi-threading.
- "main" is the main WSGI application. It performs all common tasks and wraps user applications. It deals with cookies, sessions, transactions, url routing and reverse routing, and dispatching.

It can serve and stream static files if the web server is not doing it already.

- The Models, Views and Controller components make up the user application.
- Multiple applications can be hosted in the same web2py instance.
- The dashed arrows represent communication with the database engine(s). The database queries can be written in raw SQL (discouraged) or by using the web2py Database Abstraction Layer (recommended), so that web2py application code is not dependent on the specific database engine.
- The dispatcher maps the requested URL to a function call in the controller. The output of the function can be a string or a dictionary of symbols (a

hash table). The data in the dictionary is rendered by a view. If the visitor requests an HTML page (the default), the dictionary is rendered into an HTML page. If the visitor requests the same page in XML, web2py tries to find a view that can render the dictionary in XML. The developer can create views to render pages in any of the already supported protocols (HTML, XML, JSON, RSS, CSV, RTF) or in additional custom protocols.

- All calls are wrapped into a transaction, and any uncaught exception causes the transaction to be rolled back. If the request succeeds, the transaction is committed.
- web2py also handles sessions and session cookies automatically, and when a transaction is committed, the session is also stored, unless specified otherwise.
- It is possible to register recurrent tasks (via cron) to run at scheduled times and/or after the completion of certain actions. In this way it is possible to run long and compute-intensive tasks in the background without slowing down navigation.

Here is a minimal and complete MVC application, consisting of three files:

"db.py" is the model:

```

1 db = DAL('sqlite://storage.sqlite')
2 db.define_table('contacts',
3     Field('name'),
4     Field('phone'))
```

It connects to the database (in this example a SQLite database stored in the `storage.sqlite` file) and defines a table called `contacts`. If the table does not exist, web2py creates it and, transparently and in the background, generates SQL code in the appropriate SQL dialect for the specific database engine used. The developer can see the generated SQL but does not need to change the code if the database back-end, which defaults to SQLite, is replaced with MySQL, PostgreSQL, MSSQL, FireBird, Oracle, DB2, Informix, Interbase, Ingres, or Google Big Tables in the Google App Engine.

Once a table is defined and created, web2py also generates a fully functional web-based database administration interface, called **appadmin**, to access the database and the tables.

"default.py" is the controller:

```
1 def contacts():
2     return dict(records=db().select(db.contacts.ALL))
```

In web2py, URLs are mapped to Python modules and function calls. In this case, the controller contains a single function (or "action") called `contacts`. An action may return a string (the returned web page) or a Python dictionary (a set of key:value pairs). If the function returns a dictionary, it is passed to a view with the same name as the controller/function, which in turn renders the page. In this example, the function `contacts` performs a database `select` and returns the resulting records as a value associated with the dictionary key `records`.

"default/contacts.html" is the view:

```
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Records</h1>
3 {{for record in records:}}
4 {{=record.name}}: {{=record.phone}}<br />
5 {{pass}}
```

This view is called automatically by web2py after the associated controller function (action) is executed. The purpose of this view is to render the variables in the returned dictionary `records=...` into HTML. The view file is written in HTML, but it embeds Python code delimited by the special `{{` and `}}` delimiters. This is quite different from the PHP code example, because the only code embedded into the HTML is "presentation layer" code. The "layout.html" file referenced at the top of the view is provided by web2py and constitutes the basic layout for all web2py applications. The layout file can easily be modified or replaced.

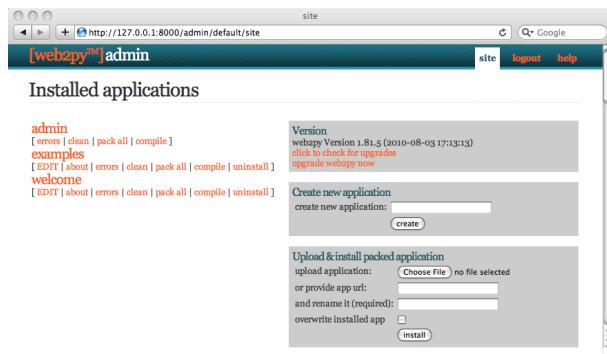
1.4 Why web2py

web2py is one of many web application frameworks, but it has compelling and unique features. web2py was originally developed as a teaching tool, with the following primary motivations:

- Easy for users to learn server-side web development without compromising functionality. For this reason, web2py requires no installation and no configuration, has no dependencies (except for the source code distribution, which requires Python 2.5 and its standard library modules), and exposes most of its functionality via a Web browser interface.
- web2py has been stable from day one because it follows a top-down design; i.e., its API was designed before it was implemented. Even as new functionality has been added, web2py has never broken backwards compatibility, and it will not break compatibility when additional functionality is added in the future.
- web2py proactively addresses the most important security issues which plague many modern web applications, as determined by OWASP (19) below.
- web2py is lightweight. Its core libraries, including the Database Abstraction Layer, the template language, and all the helpers amount to 1.4MB. The entire source code including sample applications and images amounts to 10.4MB.
- web2py has a small footprint and is very fast. It uses the Rocket (22) WSGI web server developed By Timothy Farrell. It is 30% faster than Apache with mod_proxy. Our tests also indicate that, on an average PC, it serves an average dynamic page without database access in about 10ms. The DAL has very low overhead, typically less than 3%.

(17; 18) WSGI (Web Server Gateway Interface) is an emerging Python standard for communication between a web server and Python applications).

Here is a screenshot of the main web2py **admin** interface:



1.5 Security

The Open Web Application Security Project (19) (OWASP) is a free and open worldwide community focused on improving the security of application software.

OWASP has listed the top ten security issues that put web applications at risk. That list is reproduced here, along with a description of how each issue is addressed by web2py:

- "Cross Site Scripting (XSS): XSS flaws occur whenever an application takes user supplied data and sends it to a web browser without first validating or encoding that content. XSS allows attackers to execute scripts in the victim's browser which can hijack user sessions, deface web sites, possibly introduce worms, etc." *web2py, by default, escapes all variables rendered in the view, preventing XSS.*
- "Injection Flaws: Injection flaws, particularly SQL injection, are common in web applications. Injection occurs when user-supplied data is sent to an interpreter as part of a command or query. The attacker's hostile data tricks the interpreter into executing unintended commands or changing data." *web2py includes a Database Abstraction Layer that makes SQL injection impossible. Normally, SQL statements are not written by the developer. Instead,*

SQL is generated dynamically by the DAL, ensuring that all inserted data is properly escaped.

- "Malicious File Execution: Code vulnerable to remote file inclusion (RFI) allows attackers to include hostile code and data, resulting in devastating attacks, such as total server compromise." *web2py allows only exposed functions to be executed, preventing malicious file execution. Imported functions are never exposed; only actions are exposed. web2py uses a Web-based administration interface which makes it very easy to keep track of what is exposed and what is not.*
- "Insecure Direct Object Reference: A direct object reference occurs when a developer exposes a reference to an internal implementation object, such as a file, directory, database record, or key, as a URL or form parameter. Attackers can manipulate those references to access other objects without authorization." *web2py does not expose any internal objects; moreover, web2py validates all URLs, thus preventing directory traversal attacks. web2py also provides a simple mechanism to create forms that automatically validate all input values.*
- "Cross Site Request Forgery (CSRF): A CSRF attack forces a logged-on victim's browser to send a pre-authenticated request to a vulnerable web application, which then forces the victim's browser to perform a hostile action to the benefit of the attacker. CSRF can be as powerful as the web application that it attacks." *web2py prevents CSRF as well as accidental double submission of forms by assigning a one-time random token to each form. Moreover web2py uses UUID for session cookie.*
- "Information Leakage and Improper Error Handling: Applications can unintentionally leak information about their configuration, internal workings, or violate privacy through a variety of application problems. Attackers use this weakness to steal sensitive data, or conduct more serious attacks." *web2py includes a ticketing system. No error can result in code being exposed to the users. All errors are logged and a ticket is issued to the user that allows error tracking. Errors and source code are accessible only to the administrator.*
- "Broken Authentication and Session Management: Account credentials and session tokens are often not properly protected. Attackers compro-

mise passwords, keys, or authentication tokens to assume other users' identities." *web2py provides a built-in mechanism for administrator authentication, and it manages sessions independently for each application. The administrative interface also forces the use of secure session cookies when the client is not "localhost". For applications, it includes a powerful Role Based Access Control API.*

- "Insecure Cryptographic Storage: Web applications rarely use cryptographic functions properly to protect data and credentials. Attackers use weakly protected data to conduct identity theft and other crimes, such as credit card fraud." *web2py uses the MD5 or the HMAC+SHA-512 hash algorithms to protect stored passwords. Other algorithms are also available.*
- "Insecure Communications: Applications frequently fail to encrypt network traffic when it is necessary to protect sensitive communications." *web2py includes the SSL-enabled (21) Rocket WSGI server, but it can also use Apache or Lighttpd and mod_ssl to provide SSL encryption of communications.*
- "Failure to Restrict URL Access: Frequently an application only protects sensitive functionality by preventing the display of links or URLs to unauthorized users. Attackers can use this weakness to access and perform unauthorized operations by accessing those URLs directly." *web2py maps URL requests to Python modules and functions. web2py provides a mechanism for declaring which functions are public and which require authentication and authorization. The included Role Based Access Control API allow developers to restrict access to any function based on login, group membership or group based permissions. The permissions are very granular and can be combined with CRUD to allow, for example, to give access to specific tables and/or records.*

web2py was reviewed for security and you can find the result of the review in ref. (20).

1.6 In the box

You can download *web2py* from the official web site:

¹ <http://www.web2py.com>

web2py is composed of the following components:

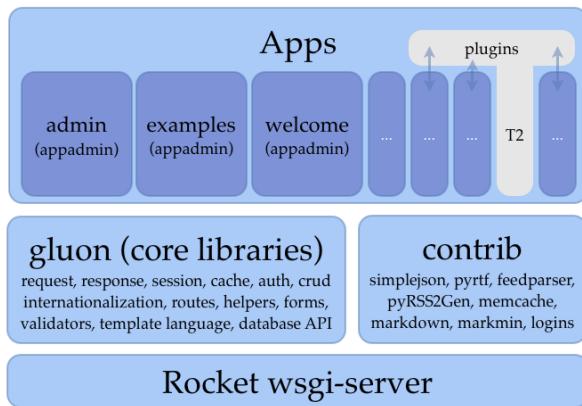
- **libraries**: provide core functionality of web2py and are accessible programmatically.
- **web server**: the Rocket WSGI web server.
- the **admin** application: used to create, design, and manage other web2py applications. **admin** provide a complete web-based Integrated Development Environment (IDE) for building web2py applications. It also includes other functionality, such as web-based testing and a web-based shell.
- the **examples** application: contains documentation and interactive examples. **examples** is a clone of the official web2py.com web site, and includes epydoc documentation.
- the **welcome** application: the basic scaffolding template for any other application. By default it includes a pure CSS cascading menu and user authentication (discussed in Chapter 8).

web2py is distributed in source code, and in binary form for Microsoft Windows and for Mac OS X.

The source code distribution can be used in any platform where Python runs and includes the above-mentioned components. To run the source code, you need Python 2.5 pre-installed on the system. You also need one of the supported database engines installed. For testing and light-demand applications, you can use the SQLite database, included with Python 2.5.

The binary versions of web2py (for Windows and Mac OS X) include a Python 2.5 interpreter and the SQLite database. Technically, these two are not components of web2py. Including them in the binary distributions enables you to run web2py out of the box.

The following image depicts the overall web2py structure:



1.7 License

web2py is licensed under the GPL version 2 License. The full text of the license is available in ref. (31).

The license includes but it is not limited to the following articles:

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

[...]

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License.

[...]

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

- web2py includes some third-party code (for example the Python interpreter, the Rocket web server, and some JavaScript libraries). Their respective authors and licenses are acknowledged in the official website (1) and in the code itself.
- Applications developed with web2py, as long as they do not include web2py source code, are not considered derivative works. This means they are not bound by the GPLv2 license, and you can distribute the applications you developed under any license you choose, including a closed-source and/or

commercial license.

License Commercial Exception

The web2py license also includes a commercial exception:

You may distribute an application you developed with web2py together with an unmodified official binary distribution of web2py, as downloaded from the official website (1), as long as you make it clear in the license of your application which files belong to the application and which files belong to web2py.

1.8 Acknowledgments

web2py was originally developed by and copyrighted by Massimo Di Pierro. The first version (1.0) was released in October, 2007. Since then it has been adopted by many users, some of whom have also contributed bug reports, testing, debugging, patches, and proofreading of this book.

Some of the major contributors are, in alphabetical order by first name:

Alexey Nezhdanov, Alvaro Justen, Attila Csipa, Bill Ferrett, Boris Manojlovic, Brian Meredyk, Bruno Rocha, Carsten Haese, Chris Clark, Chris Steel, Christian Foster Howes, Christopher Smiga, CJ Lazell, Craig Younkins, Daniel Lin, David Harrison Denes Lengyel, Douglas Soares de Andrade, Fran Boon, Francisco Gama, Fred Yanowski, Graham Dumpleton, Gyuris Szabolcs, Hamdy Abdel-Badeea, Hans Donner, Hans Murx, Hans C. v. Stockhausen, Ian Reinhardt Geiser, Jonathan Benn, Jonathan Lundell, Josh Goldfoot, Jose Jachuf, Keith Yang, Kyle Smith, Limodou, Marcel Leuthi, Marcello Della Longa, Mariano Reingart, Mark Larsen, Mark Moore, Markus Gritsch, Martin Hufsky, Mateusz Banach, Michael Willis, Michele Comitini, Miguel Lopez, Nathan Freeze, Niall Sweeny, Niccolo Polo, Nicolas Bruxer, Ondrej Such, Pai, Phylo

Arkar Lwin, Ramjee Ganti, Robin Bhattacharyya, Ruijun Luo (Iceberg), Scott Roberts, Sergey Podlesnyi, Sharriff Aina, Sriram, Durbha, Sterling Hankins, Stuart Rackham, Telman Yusupov, Thadeus Burgess, Tim Michelsen, Timothy Farrell, Vidul Nikolaev Petrov, Yair Eshel, Yarko Tymciurak, Younghyun Jo, Zahariash.

I am sure I forgot somebody, so I apologize.

I particularly thank Jonathan, Nathan, Thadeus, Tim, Iceberg, Denes, Hans and Fran for their major contributions to web2py and Alvaro, Bruno, Denes, Felipe, Graham, Jonathan, Hans, Kyle, Mark, Michele, Richard, Robin, Roman, Scott, Shane, Sharriff, Sriram, Sterling, Stuart, Thadeus and Yarko for proofreading various versions of this book. Their contribution was invaluable. If you find any errors in this book, they are exclusively my fault, probably introduced by a last-minute edit. I also thank Ryan Steffen of Wiley Custom Learning Solutions for help with publishing the first edition of this book. web2py contains code from the following authors, whom I would like to thank:

Guido van Rossum for Python (2), Peter Hunt, Richard Gordon, Timothy Farrell for the Rocket (22) web server, Christopher Dolivet for EditArea (23), Bob Ippolito for simplejson (25), Simon Cusack and Grant Edwards for pyRTF (26), Dalke Scientific Software for pyRSS2Gen (27), Mark Pilgrim for feedparser (28), Trent Mick for markdown2 (29), Allan Saddi for fcgi.py, Evan Martin for the Python memcache module (30), John Resig for jQuery (32).

The logo used on the cover of this book was designed by Peter Kirchner at Young Designers.

I thank Helmut Epp (provost of DePaul University), David Miller (Dean of the College of Computing and Digital Media of DePaul University), and Es-tia Eichten (Member of MetaCryption LLC), for their continuous trust and support.

Finally, I wish to thank my wife, Claudia, and my son, Marco, for putting up

with me during the many hours I have spent developing web2py, exchanging emails with users and collaborators, and writing this book. This book is dedicated to them.

1.9 *About this Book*

This book includes the following chapters, besides this introduction:

- Chapter 2 is a minimalist introduction to Python. It assumes knowledge of both procedural and object-oriented programming concepts such as loops, conditions, function calls and classes, and covers basic Python syntax. It also covers examples of Python modules that are used throughout the book. If you already know Python, you may skip Chapter 2.
- Chapter 3 shows how to start web2py, discusses the administrative interface, and guides the reader through various examples of increasing complexity: an application that returns a string, a counter application, an image blog, and a full blown wiki application that allows image uploads and comments, provides authentication, authorization, web services and an RSS feed. While reading this chapter, you may need to refer to Chapter 2 for general Python syntax and to the following chapters for a more detailed reference about the functions that are used.
- Chapter 4 covers more systematically the core structure and libraries: URL mapping, request, response, sessions, caching, cron, internationalization and general workflow.
- Chapter 5 is a reference for the template language used to build views. It shows how to embed Python code into HTML, and demonstrates the use of helpers (objects that can generate HTML).
- Chapter 6 covers the Database Abstraction Layer, or DAL. The syntax of the DAL is presented through a series of examples.
- Chapter 7 covers forms, form validation and form processing. FORM is the low level helper for form building. SQLFORM is the high level form

builder. In Chapter 7 we also discuss the Create/Read/Update/Delete (CRUD) API.

- Chapter 8 covers authentication, authorization and the extensible Role-Based Access Control mechanism available in web2py. Mail configuration and CAPTCHA are also discussed here, since they are used for authentication. In the third edition of the book we have added extensive coverage of integration with third-party authentication mechanisms such as OpenID, OAuth, Google, Facebook, LinkedIn, etc.
- Chapter 9 is about creating web services in web2py. We provide examples of integration with the Google Web Toolkit via Pyjamas, and with Adobe Flash via PyAMF.
- Chapter 10 is about web2py and jQuery recipes. web2py is designed mainly for server-side programming, but it includes jQuery, since we have found it to be the best open-source JavaScript library available for effects and Ajax. In this chapter, we discuss how to effectively use jQuery with web2py.
- Chapter 11 is about production deployment of web2py applications. We mainly address three possible production scenarios: on a Linux web server or a set of servers (which we consider the main deployment alternative), running as a service on a Microsoft Windows environment, and deployment on the Google Applications Engine (GAE). In this chapter, we also discuss security and scalability issues.
- Chapter 12 contains a variety of other recipes to solve specific tasks, including upgrades, geocoding, pagination, the Twitter API, and more.
- Chapter 13 is new in the third edition of the book and discusses web2py components and plugins as a way to build modular applications. We provide an example of a plugin that implements many commonly used functionality, such as charting, comments, tagging, and wiki.

This book only covers basic web2py functionalities and the API that ships with web2py. This book does not cover web2py appliances (i.e. ready made applications).

You can download web2py appliances from the corresponding web site (34).

You can find additional topics discussed on AlterEgo (35), the interactive web2py FAQ.

This book has been written using the markmin syntax and automatically converted to HTML, LaTeX and PDF.

1.10 Elements of Style

PEP8 (36) contains good style practices when programming with Python. You will find that web2py does not always follow these rules. This is not because of omissions or negligence; it is our belief that the users of web2py should follow these rules and we encourage it. We chose not to follow some of those rules when defining web2py helper objects in order to minimize the probability of name conflict with objects defined by the user.

For example, the class that represents a `<div>` is called `DIV`, while according to the Python style reference it should have been called `Div`. We believe that, for this specific example that using an all-upper-case "DIV" is a more natural choice. Moreover, this approach leaves programmers free to create a class called "Div" if they choose to do so. Our syntax also maps naturally into the DOM notation of most browsers (including, for example, Firefox).

According to the Python style guide, all-upper-case strings should be used for constants and not variables. Continuing with our example, even considering that `DIV` is a class, it is a special class that should never be modified by the user because doing so would break other web2py applications. Hence, we believe this qualifies the `DIV` class as something that should be treated as a constant, further justifying our choice of notation.

In summary, the following conventions are followed:

- HTML helpers and validators are all upper case for the reasons discussed above (for example `DIV`, `A`, `FORM`, `URL`).

- The translator object `T` is upper case despite the fact that it is an instance of a class and not a class itself. Logically the translator object performs an action similar to the HTML helpers, it affects rendering part of the presentation. Also, `T` needs to be easy to locate in the code and must have a short name.
- DAL classes follow the Python style guide (first letter capitalized), for example `Table`, `Field`, `Query`, `Row`, `Rows`, etc.

In all other cases we believe we have followed, as much as possible, the Python Style Guide (PEP8). For example all instance objects are lower-case (`request`, `response`, `session`, `cache`), and all internal classes are capitalized.

In all the examples of this book, web2py keywords are shown in bold, while strings and comments are shown in italic.

2

The Python Language

2.1 About Python

Python is a general-purpose high-level programming language. Its design philosophy emphasizes programmer productivity and code readability. It has a minimalist core syntax with very few basic commands and simple semantics, but it also has a large and comprehensive standard library, including an Application Programming Interface (API) to many of the underlying operating system (OS) functions. Python code, while minimalist, defines built-in objects such as linked lists (`list`), tuples (`tuple`), hash tables (`dict`), and arbitrarily long integers (`long`).

Python supports multiple programming paradigms, including object-oriented (`class`), imperative (`def`), and functional (`lambda`) programming. Python has a dynamic type system and automatic memory management using reference counting (similar to Perl, Ruby, and Scheme).

Python was first released by Guido van Rossum in 1991. The language has an open, community-based development model managed by the non-profit Python Software Foundation. There are many interpreters and compilers that

implement the Python language, including one in Java (Jython) but, in this brief review, we refer to the reference C implementation created by Guido.

You can find many tutorials, the official documentation and library references of the language on the official Python website (2)

For additional Python references, we can recommend the books in ref. (37) and ref. (38).

You may skip this chapter if you are already familiar with the Python language.

2.2 *Starting up*

The binary distributions of web2py for Microsoft Windows or Apple OS X come packaged with the Python interpreter built into the distribution file itself.

You can start it on Windows with the following command (type at the DOS prompt):

```
1 web2py.exe -S welcome
```

On Apple OS X, enter the following command type in a Terminal window (assuming you're in the same folder as web2py.app):

```
1 ./web2py.app/Contents/MacOS/web2py -S welcome
```

On a Linux or other Unix box, chances are that you have Python already installed. If so, at a shell prompt type:

```
1 python web2py.py -S welcome
```

If you do not have Python 2.5 (or later 2.x) already installed, you will have to download and install it before running web2py.

The `-S welcome` command line option instructs web2py to run the interactive shell as if the commands were executed in a controller for the **welcome** application, the web2py scaffolding application. This exposes almost all web2py classes, objects and functions to you. This is the only difference between the web2py interactive command line and the normal Python command line.

The admin interface also provides a web-based shell for each application. You can access the one for the "welcome" application at.

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/admin/shell/index/welcome
```

You can try all the examples in this chapter using the normal shell or the web-based shell.

2.3 *help, dir*

The Python language provides two commands to obtain documentation about objects defined in the current scope, both built-in and user-defined.

We can ask for `help` about an object, for example "1":

```
1 >>> help(1)
2 Help on int object:
3
4 class int(object)
5     |   int(x[, base]) -> integer
6     |
7     |   Convert a string or number to an integer, if possible. A floating point
8     |   argument will be truncated towards zero (this does not include a string
9     |   representation of a floating point number!) When converting a string, use
10    |   the optional base. It is an error to supply a base when converting a
11    |   non-string. If the argument is outside the integer range a long object
12    |   will be returned instead.
13    |
14    |   Methods defined here:
15    |
16    |       __abs__(...)
17    |           x.__abs__() <=> abs(x)
18 ...
```

and, since "1" is an integer, we get a description about the `int` class and all its methods. Here the output has been truncated because it is very long and detailed.

Similarly, we can obtain a list of methods of the object "1" with the command `dir`:

```

1 >>> dir(1)
2 ['__abs__', '__add__', '__and__', '__class__', '__cmp__', '__coerce__',
3 '__delattr__', '__div__', '__divmod__', '__doc__', '__float__',
4 '__floordiv__', '__getattribute__', '__getnewargs__', '__hash__', '__hex__',
5 '__index__', '__init__', '__int__', '__invert__', '__long__', '__lshift__',
6 '__mod__', '__mul__', '__neg__', '__new__', '__nonzero__', '__oct__',
7 '__or__', '__pos__', '__pow__', '__radd__', '__rand__', '__rdiv__',
8 '__rdivmod__', '__reduce__', '__reduce_ex__', '__repr__', '__rfloordiv__',
9 '__rlshift__', '__rmod__', '__rmul__', '__ror__', '__rpow__', '__rrshift__',
10 '__rshift__', '__rsub__', '__rtruediv__', '__rxor__', '__setattr__',
11 '__str__', '__sub__', '__truediv__', '__xor__']

```

2.4 Types

Python is a dynamically typed language, meaning that variables do not have a type and therefore do not have to be declared. Values, on the other hand, do have a type. You can query a variable for the type of value it contains:

```

1 >>> a = 3
2 >>> print type(a)
3 <type 'int'>
4 >>> a = 3.14
5 >>> print type(a)
6 <type 'float'>
7 >>> a = 'hello python'
8 >>> print type(a)
9 <type 'str'>

```

Python also includes, natively, data structures such as lists and dictionaries.

2.4.1 str

Python supports the use of two different types of strings: ASCII strings and Unicode strings. ASCII strings are delimited by '...', "..." or by """...""". Triple quotes delimit multiline strings. Unicode strings start with a `u` followed by the string containing Unicode characters. A Unicode string can be converted into an ASCII string by choosing an encoding for example:

```

1 >>> a = 'this is an ASCII string'
2 >>> b = u'This is a Unicode string'
3 >>> a = b.encode('utf8')

```

After executing these three commands, the resulting `a` is an ASCII string storing UTF8 encoded characters. By design, web2py uses UTF8 encoded strings internally.

It is also possible to write variables into strings in various ways:

```

1 >>> print 'number is ' + str(3)
2 number is 3
3 >>> print 'number is %s' % (3)
4 number is 3
5 >>> print 'number is %(number)s' % dict(number=3)
6 number is 3

```

The last notation is more explicit and less error prone, and is to be preferred.

Many Python objects, for example numbers, can be serialized into strings using `str` or `repr`. These two commands are very similar but produce slightly different output. For example:

```

1 >>> for i in [3, 'hello']:
2     print str(i), repr(i)
3 3 3
4 hello 'hello'

```

For user-defined classes, `str` and `repr` can be defined/redefined using the special operators `__str__` and `__repr__`. These are briefly described later on;

for more, refer to the official Python documentation (39). `repr` always has a default value.

Another important characteristic of a Python string is that, like a list, it is an iterable object.

```

1 >>> for i in 'hello':
2         print i
3 h
4 e
5 l
6 l
7 o

```

2.4.2 list

The main methods of a Python list are `append`, `insert`, and `delete`:

```

1 >>> a = [1, 2, 3]
2 >>> print type(a)
3 <type 'list'>
4 >>> a.append(8)
5 >>> a.insert(2, 7)
6 >>> del a[0]
7 >>> print a
8 [2, 7, 3, 8]
9 >>> print len(a)
10 4

```

Lists can be sliced:

```

1 >>> print a[:3]
2 [2, 7, 3]
3 >>> print a[1:]
4 [7, 3, 8]
5 >>> print a[-2:]
6 [3, 8]

```

and concatenated:

```

1 >>> a = [2, 3]
2 >>> b = [5, 6]

```

```

3 >>> print a + b
4 [2, 3, 5, 6]

```

A list is iterable; you can loop over it:

```

1 >>> a = [1, 2, 3]
2 >>> for i in a:
3     print i
4
5 1
6 2
7 3

```

The elements of a list do not have to be of the same type; they can be any type of Python object.

2.4.3 tuple

A tuple is like a list, but its size and elements are immutable, while in a list they are mutable. If a tuple element is an object, the object attributes are mutable. A tuple is delimited by round brackets.

```

1 >>> a = (1, 2, 3)

```

So while this works for a list:

```

1 >>> a = [1, 2, 3]
2 >>> a[1] = 5
3 >>> print a
4 [1, 5, 3]

```

the element assignment does not work for a tuple:

```

1 >>> a = (1, 2, 3)
2 >>> print a[1]
3 2
4 >>> a[1] = 5
5 Traceback (most recent call last):
6   File "<stdin>", line 1, in <module>
7 TypeError: 'tuple' object does not support item assignment

```

A tuple, like a list, is an iterable object. Notice that a tuple consisting of a single element must include a trailing comma, as shown below:

```

1 >>> a = (1)
2 >>> print type(a)
3 <type 'int'>
4 >>> a = (1,)
5 >>> print type(a)
6 <type 'tuple'>
```

Tuples are very useful for efficient packing of objects because of their immutability, and the brackets are often optional:

```

1 >>> a = 2, 3, 'hello'
2 >>> x, y, z = a
3 >>> print x
4 2
5 >>> print z
6 hello
```

2.4.4 dict

A Python dictionary is a hash table that maps a key object to a value object. For example:

```

1 >>> a = {'k': 'v', 'k2': 3}
2 >>> a['k']
3 v
4 >>> a['k2']
5 3
6 >>> a.has_key('k')
7 True
8 >>> a.has_key('v')
9 False
```

Keys can be of any hashable type (int, string, or any object whose class implements the `__hash__` method). Values can be of any type. Different keys and values in the same dictionary do not have to be of the same type. If the keys are alphanumeric characters, a dictionary can also be declared with the alternative syntax:

```

1 >>> a = dict(k='v', h2=3)
2 >>> a['k']
3 v
4 >>> print a
5 {'k':'v', 'h2':3}

```

Useful methods are `has_key`, `keys`, `values` and `items`:

```

1 >>> a = dict(k='v', k2='3')
2 >>> print a.keys()
3 ['k', 'k2']
4 >>> print a.values()
5 ['v', 3]
6 >>> print a.items()
7 [('k', 'v'), ('k2', 3)]

```

The `items` method produces a list of tuples, each containing a key and its associated value.

Dictionary elements and list elements can be deleted with the command `del`:

```

1 >>> a = [1, 2, 3]
2 >>> del a[1]
3 >>> print a
4 [1, 3]
5 >>> a = dict(k='v', h2=3)
6 >>> del a['h2']
7 >>> print a
8 {'k':'v'}

```

Internally, Python uses the `hash` operator to convert objects into integers, and uses that integer to determine where to store the value.

```

1 >>> hash("hello world")
2 -1500746465

```

2.5 About Indentation

Python uses indentation to delimit blocks of code. A block starts with a line ending in colon, and continues for all lines that have a similar or higher

indentation as the next line. For example:

```

1 >>> i = 0
2 >>> while i < 3:
3     print i
4     i = i + 1
5 >>>
6 0
7 1
8 2

```

It is common to use four spaces for each level of indentation. It is a good policy not to mix tabs with spaces, which can result in (invisible) confusion.

2.6 for...in

In Python, you can loop over iterable objects:

```

1 >>> a = [0, 1, 'hello', 'python']
2 >>> for i in a:
3     print i
4 0
5 1
6 hello
7 python

```

One common shortcut is `xrange`, which generates an iterable range without storing the entire list of elements.

```

1 >>> for i in xrange(0, 4):
2     print i
3 0
4 1
5 2
6 3

```

This is equivalent to the C/C++/C#/Java syntax:

```

1 for(int i=0; i<4; i=i+1) { print(i); }

```

Another useful command is `enumerate`, which counts while looping:

```

1 >>> a = [0, 1, 'hello', 'python']
2 >>> for i, j in enumerate(a):
3     print i, j
4 0 0
5 1 1
6 2 hello
7 3 python

```

There is also a keyword `range(a, b, c)` that returns a list of integers starting with the value `a`, incrementing by `c`, and ending with the last value smaller than `b`, `a` defaults to `0` and `c` defaults to `1`. `xrange` is similar but does not actually generate the list, only an iterator over the list; thus it is better for looping.

You can jump out of a loop using `break`

```

1 >>> for i in [1, 2, 3]:
2     print i
3     break
4 1

```

You can jump to the next loop iteration without executing the entire code block with `continue`

```

1 >>> for i in [1, 2, 3]:
2     print i
3     continue
4     print 'test'
5 1
6 2
7 3

```

2.7 while

The `while` loop in Python works much as it does in many other programming languages, by looping an indefinite number of times and testing a condition before each iteration. If the condition is `False`, the loop ends.

```

1 >>> i = 0

```

```

2 >>> while i < 10:
3     i = i + 1
4 >>> print i
5 10

```

There is no loop...until construct in Python.

2.8 def...return

Here is a typical Python function:

```

1 >>> def f(a, b=2):
2     return a + b
3 >>> print f(4)
4 6

```

There is no need (or way) to specify types of the arguments or the return type(s).

Function arguments can have default values, and functions can return multiple objects:

```

1 >>> def f(a, b=2):
2     return a + b, a - b
3 >>> x, y = f(5)
4 >>> print x
5 7
6 >>> print y
7 3

```

Function arguments can be passed explicitly by name:

```

1 >>> def f(a, b=2):
2     return a + b, a - b
3 >>> x, y = f(b=5, a=2)
4 >>> print x
5 7
6 >>> print y
7 -3

```

Functions can take a variable number of arguments:

```

1 >>> def f(*a, **b):
2     return a, b
3 >>> x, y = f(3, 'hello', c=4, test='world')
4 >>> print x
5 (3, 'hello')
6 >>> print y
7 {'c':4, 'test':'world'}
```

Here arguments not passed by name (3, 'hello') are stored in list a, and arguments passed by name (c and test) are stored in the dictionary b.

In the opposite case, a list or tuple can be passed to a function that requires individual positional arguments by unpacking them:

```

1 >>> def f(a, b):
2     return a + b
3 >>> c = (1, 2)
4 >>> print f(*c)
5 3
```

and a dictionary can be unpacked to deliver keyword arguments:

```

1 >>> def f(a, b):
2     return a + b
3 >>> c = {'a':1, 'b':2}
4 >>> print f(**c)
5 3
```

2.9 if...elif...else

The use of conditionals in Python is intuitive:

```

1 >>> for i in range(3):
2     if i == 0:
3         print 'zero'
4     elif i == 1:
5         print 'one'
6     else:
7         print 'other'
```

```

8 zero
9 one
10 other

```

"elif" means "else if". Both `elif` and `else` clauses are optional. There can be more than one `elif` but only one `else` statement. Complex conditions can be created using the `not`, `and` and `or` operators.

```

1 >>> for i in range(3):
2     if i == 0 or (i == 1 and i + 1 == 2):
3         print '0 or 1'

```

2.10 try...except...else...finally

Python can throw - pardon, raise - Exceptions:

```

1 >>> try:
2     a = 1 / 0
3     except Exception, e
4     print 'oops: %s' % e
5 else:
6     print 'no problem here'
7 finally:
8     print 'done'
9 oops: integer division or modulo by zero
10 done

```

If the exception is raised, it is caught by the `except` clause, which is executed, while the `else` clause is not. If no exception is raised, the `except` clause is not executed, but the `else` one is. The `finally` clause is always executed.

There can be multiple `except` clauses for different possible exceptions:

```

1 >>> try:
2     raise SyntaxError
3     except ValueError:
4     print 'value error'
5     except SyntaxError:
6     print 'syntax error'
7 syntax error

```

The `else` and `finally` clauses are optional.

Here is a list of built-in Python exceptions + HTTP (defined by web2py)

```
1 BaseException
2     +-+ HTTP (defined by web2py)
3     +-+ SystemExit
4     +-+ KeyboardInterrupt
5     +-+ Exception
6         +-+ GeneratorExit
7         +-+ StopIteration
8         +-+ StandardError
9             |     +-+ ArithmeticError
10            |     |     +-+ FloatingPointError
11            |     |     +-+ OverflowError
12            |     |     +-+ ZeroDivisionError
13            |     +-+ AssertionError
14            |     +-+ AttributeError
15            |     +-+ EnvironmentError
16            |     |     +-+ IOError
17            |     |     +-+ OSError
18            |     |     +-+ WindowsError (Windows)
19            |     |     +-+ VMSError (VMS)
20            +-+ EOFError
21            +-+ ImportError
22            +-+ LookupError
23                |     +-+ IndexError
24                |     |     +-+ KeyError
25                |     +-+ MemoryError
26                |     +-+ NameError
27                |     |     +-+ UnboundLocalError
28                +-+ ReferenceError
29                +-+ RuntimeError
30                    |     +-+ NotImplemented
31                +-+ SyntaxError
32                    |     +-+ IndentationError
33                    |     |     +-+ TabError
34                +-+ SystemError
35                +-+ TypeError
36                +-+ ValueError
37                    |     +-+ UnicodeError
38                    |     |     +-+ UnicodeDecodeError
39                    |     |     +-+ UnicodeEncodeError
40                    |     |     +-+ UnicodeTranslateError
41                +-+ Warning
42                    +-+ DeprecationWarning
43                    +-+ PendingDeprecationWarning
44                    +-+ RuntimeWarning
```

```

45      +-- SyntaxWarning
46      +-- UserWarning
47      +-- FutureWarning
48      +-- ImportWarning
49      +-- UnicodeWarning

```

For a detailed description of each of them, refer to the official Python documentation. web2py exposes only one new exception, called `HTTP`. When raised, it causes the program to return an HTTP error page (for more on this refer to Chapter 4).

Any object can be raised as an exception, but it is good practice to raise objects that extend one of the built-in exception classes.

2.11 class

Because Python is dynamically typed, Python classes and objects may seem odd. In fact, you do not need to define the member variables (attributes) when declaring a class, and different instances of the same class can have different attributes. Attributes are generally associated with the instance, not the class (except when declared as "class attributes", which is the same as "static member variables" in C++/Java).

Here is an example:

```

1 >>> class MyClass(object): pass
2 >>> myinstance = MyClass()
3 >>> myinstance.myvariable = 3
4 >>> print myinstance.myvariable
5 3

```

Notice that `pass` is a do-nothing command. In this case it is used to define a class `MyClass` that contains nothing. `MyClass()` calls the constructor of the class (in this case the default constructor) and returns an object, an instance of the class. The `(object)` in the class definition indicates that our class extends the

built-in object class. This is not required, but it is good practice.

Here is a more complex class:

```
1 >>> class MyClass(object):
2 >>>     z = 2
3 >>>     def __init__(self, a, b):
4 >>>         self.x = a, self.y = b
5 >>>     def add(self):
6 >>>         return self.x + self.y + self.z
7 >>> myinstance = MyClass(3, 4)
8 >>> print myinstance.add()
9 9
```

Functions declared inside the class are methods. Some methods have special reserved names. For example, `__init__` is the constructor. All variables are local variables of the method except variables declared outside methods. For example, `z` is a *class variable*, equivalent to a C++ *static member variable* that holds the same value for all instances of the class.

Notice that `__init__` takes 3 arguments and `add` takes one, and yet we call them with 2 and 0 arguments respectively. The first argument represents, by convention, the local name used inside the method to refer to the current object. Here we use `self` to refer to the current object, but we could have used any other name. `self` plays the same role as `*this` in C++ or `this` in Java, but `self` is not a reserved keyword.

This syntax is necessary to avoid ambiguity when declaring nested classes, such as a class that is local to a method inside another class.

2.12 Special Attributes, Methods and Operators

Class attributes, methods, and operators starting with a double underscore are usually intended to be private, although this is a convention that is not enforced by the interpreter.

Some of them are reserved keywords and have a special meaning.

Here, as an example, are three of them:

- `__len__`
- `__getitem__`
- `__setitem__`

They can be used, for example, to create a container object that acts like a list:

```

1 >>> class MyList(object)
2 >>>     def __init__(self, *a): self.a = a
3 >>>     def __len__(self): return len(self.a)
4 >>>     def __getitem__(self, i): return self.a[i]
5 >>>     def __setitem__(self, i, j): self.a[i] = j
6 >>> b = MyList(3, 4, 5)
7 >>> print b[1]
8 4
9 >>> a[1] = 7
10 >>> print b.a
11 [3, 7, 5]
```

Other special operators include `__getattr__` and `__setattr__`, which define the get and set attributes for the class, and `__sum__` and `__sub__`, which overload arithmetic operators. For the use of these operators we refer the reader to more advanced books on this topic. We have already mentioned the special operators `__str__` and `__repr__`.

2.13 File Input/Output

In Python you can open and write in a file with:

```

1 >>> file = open('myfile.txt', 'w')
2 >>> file.write('hello world')
```

Similarly, you can read back from the file with:

```

1 >>> file = open('myfile.txt', 'r')
2 >>> print file.read()
3 hello world

```

Alternatively, you can read in binary mode with "rb", write in binary mode with "wb", and open the file in append mode "a", using standard C notation.

The read command takes an optional argument, which is the number of bytes. You can also jump to any location in a file using seek.

You can read back from the file with read

```

1 >>> print file.seek(6)
2 >>> print file.read()
3 world

```

and you can close the file with:

```
>>> file.close()
```

although often this is not necessary, because a file is closed automatically when the variable that refers to it goes out of scope.

When using web2py, you do not know where the current directory is, because it depends on how web2py is configured. The variable request.folder contains the path to the current application. Paths can be concatenated with the command os.path.join, discussed below.

2.14 lambda

There are cases when you may need to dynamically generate an unnamed function. This can be done with the `lambda` keyword:

```

1 >>> a = lambda b: b + 2
2 >>> print a(3)
3 5

```

The expression "`lambda [a]:[b]`" literally reads as "a function with arguments [a] that returns [b]". Even if the function is unnamed, it can be stored into a variable, and thus it acquires a name. Technically this is different than using `def`, because it is the variable referring to the function that has a name, not the function itself.

Who needs lambdas? Actually they are very useful because they allow to re-factor a function into another function by setting default arguments, without defining an actual new function but a temporary one. For example:

```

1 >>> def f(a, b): return a + b
2 >>> g = lambda a: f(a, 3)
3 >>> g(2)
4 5

```

Here is a more complex and more compelling application. Suppose you have a function that checks whether its argument is prime:

```

1 def isprime(number):
2     for p in range(2, number):
3         if number % p:
4             return False
5     return True

```

This function is obviously time consuming.

Suppose you have a caching function `cache.ram` that takes three arguments: a key, a function and a number of seconds.

```

1 value = cache.ram('key', f, 60)

```

The first time it is called, it calls the function `f()`, stores the output in a dictionary in memory (let's say "d"), and returns it so that value is:

```

1 value = d['key']=f()

```

The second time it is called, if the key is in the dictionary and not older than the number of seconds specified (60), it returns the corresponding value without performing the function call.

```
1 value = d['key']
```

How would you cache the output of the function `isprime` for any input? Here is how:

```
1 >>> number = 7
2 >>> print cache.ram(str(number), lambda: isprime(number), seconds)
3 True
4 >>> print cache.ram(str(number), lambda: isprime(number), seconds)
5 True
```

The output is always the same, but the first time `cache.ram` is called, `isprime` is called; the second time it is not.

The existence of lambda allows re-factoring an existing function in terms of a different set of arguments. `cache.ram` and `cache.disk` are web2py caching functions.

2.15 exec, eval

Unlike Java, Python is a truly interpreted language. This means it has the ability to execute Python statements stored in strings. For example:

```
1 >>> a = "print 'hello world'"
2 >>> exec(a)
3 'hello world'
```

What just happened? The function `exec` tells the interpreter to call itself and execute the content of the string passed as argument. It is also possible to execute the content of a string within a context defined by the symbols in a dictionary:

```
1 >>> a = "print b"
2 >>> c = dict(b=3)
3 >>> exec(a, {}, c)
4 3
```

Here the interpreter, when executing the string `a`, sees the symbols defined in `c` (`b` in the example), but does not see `c` or `a` themselves. This is different than a restricted environment, since `exec` does not limit what the inner code can do; it just defines the set of variables visible to the code.

A related function is `eval`, which works very much like `exec` except that it expects the argument to evaluate to a value, and it returns that value.

```

1 >>> a = "3*4"
2 >>> b = eval(a)
3 >>> print b
4 12

```

2.16 import

The real power of Python is in its library modules. They provide a large and consistent set of Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) to many system libraries (often in a way independent of the operating system).

For example, if you need to use a random number generator, you can do:

```

1 >>> import random
2 >>> print random.randint(0, 9)
3 5

```

This prints a random integer between 0 and 9 (including 9), 5 in the example. The function `randint` is defined in the module `random`. It is also possible to import an object from a module into the current namespace:

```

1 >>> from random import randint
2 >>> print randint(0, 9)

```

or import all objects from a module into the current namespace:

```

1 >>> from random import *
2 >>> print randint(0, 9)

```

or import everything in a newly defined namespace:

```
1 >>> import random as myrand
2 >>> print myrand.randint(0, 9)
```

In the rest of this book, we will mainly use objects defined in modules `os`, `sys`, `datetime`, `time` and `cPickle`.

All of the web2py objects are accessible via a module called gluon, and that is the subject of later chapters. Internally, web2py uses many Python modules (for example `thread`), but you rarely need to access them directly.

In the following subsections we consider those modules that are most useful.

2.16.1 os

This module provides an interface to the operating system API. For example:

```
1 >>> import os
2 >>> os.chdir('..')
3 >>> os.unlink('filename_to_be_deleted')
```

Some of the os functions, such as `chdir`, MUST NOT be used in web2py because they are not thread-safe.

`os.path.join` is very useful; it allows the concatenation of paths in an OS-independent way:

```
1 >>> import os
2 >>> a = os.path.join('path', 'sub_path')
3 >>> print a
4 path/sub_path
```

System environment variables can be accessed via:

```
1 >>> print os.environ
```

which is a read-only dictionary.

2.16.2 sys

The `sys` module contains many variables and functions, but the one we use the most is `sys.path`. It contains a list of paths where Python searches for modules. When we try to import a module, Python looks for it in all the folders listed in `sys.path`. If you install additional modules in some location and want Python to find them, you need to append the path to that location to `sys.path`.

```
>>> import sys  
>>> sys.path.append('path/to/my/modules')
```

When running web2py, Python stays resident in memory, and there is only one `sys.path`, while there are many threads servicing the HTTP requests. To avoid a memory leak, it is best to check if a path is already present before appending:

```
1 >>> path = 'path/to/my/modules'  
2 >>> if not path in sys.path:  
3     sys.path.append(path)
```

2.16.3 datetime

The use of the `datetime` module is best illustrated by some examples:

```
1 >>> import datetime  
2 >>> print datetime.datetime.today()  
3 2008-07-04 14:03:90  
4 >>> print datetime.date.today()  
5 2008-07-04
```

Occasionally you may need to time-stamp data based on the UTC time as opposed to local time. In this case you can use the following function:

```

1 >>> import datetime
2 >>> print datetime.datetime.utcnow()
3 2008-07-04 14:03:90

```

The `datetime` module contains various classes: `date`, `datetime`, `time` and `timedelta`. The difference between two `date` or two `datetime` or two `time` objects is a `timedelta`:

```

1 >>> a = datetime.datetime(2008, 1, 1, 20, 30)
2 >>> b = datetime.datetime(2008, 1, 2, 20, 30)
3 >>> c = b - a
4 >>> print c.days
5 1

```

In web2py, `date` and `datetime` are used to store the corresponding SQL types when passed to or returned from the database.

2.16.4 time

The `time` module differs from `date'` and `datetime'` because it represents time as seconds from the epoch (beginning of 1970).

```

1 >>> import time
2 >>> t = time.time()
3 1215138737.571

```

Refer to the Python documentation for conversion functions between time in seconds and time as a `datetime`.

2.16.5 cPickle

This is a very powerful module. It provides functions that can serialize almost any Python object, including self-referential objects. For example, let's build a weird object:

```
1 >>> class MyClass(object): pass
2 >>> myinstance = MyClass()
3 >>> myinstance.x = 'something'
4 >>> a = [1 ,2, {'hello':'world'}, [3, 4, [myinstance]]]
```

and now:

```
1 >>> import cPickle
2 >>> b = cPickle.dumps(a)
3 >>> c = cPickle.loads(b)
```

In this example, b is a string representation of a, and c is a copy of a generated by de-serializing b. cPickle can also serialize to and de-serialize from a file:

```
1 >>> cPickle.dumps(a, open('myfile.pickle', 'wb'))
2 >>> c = cPickle.loads(open('myfile.pickle', 'rb'))
```

3

Overview

3.1 Startup

web2py comes in binary packages for Windows and Mac OS X. There is also a source code version that runs on Windows, Mac, Linux, and other Unix systems. The Windows and OS X binary versions include the necessary Python interpreter. The source code package assumes that Python is already installed on the computer. web2py requires no installation. To get started, unzip the downloaded zip file for your specific operating system and execute the corresponding web2py file.

On Windows, run:

```
1 web2py.exe
```

On OS X, run:

```
1 open web2py.app
```

On Unix and Linux, run from source by typing:

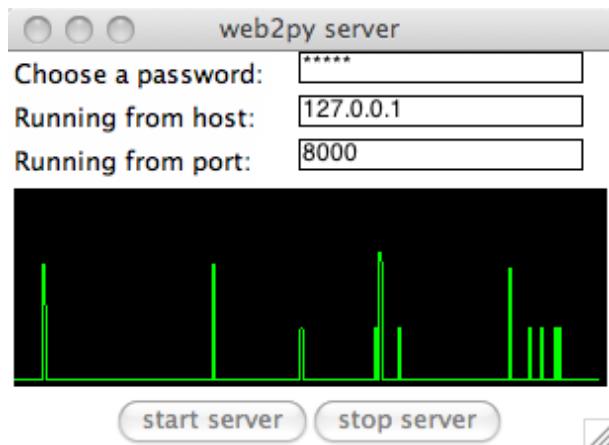
```
1 python2.5 web2py.py
```

The web2py program accepts various command line options which are discussed later.

By default, at startup, web2py displays a startup window:



and then displays a GUI widget that asks you to choose a one-time administrator password, the IP address of the network interface to be used for the web server, and a port number from which to serve requests. By default, web2py runs its web server on 127.0.0.1:8000 (port 8000 on localhost), but you can run it on any available IP address and port. You can query the IP address of your network interface by opening a command line and typing ipconfig on Windows or ifconfig on OS X and Linux. From now on we assume web2py is running on localhost (127.0.0.1:8000). Use 0.0.0.0:80 to run web2py publicly on any of your network interfaces.



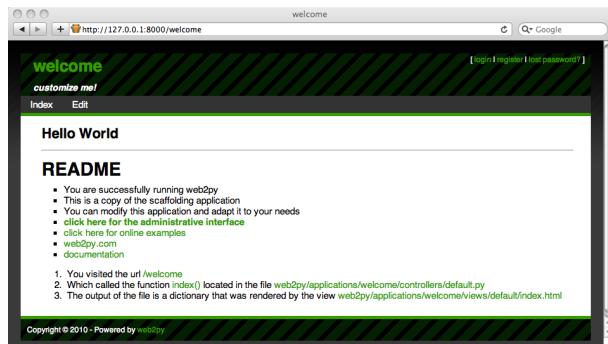
If you do not provide an administrator password, the administration interface is disabled. This is a security measure to prevent publicly exposing the admin interface.

The administrative interface, **admin**, is only accessible from localhost unless you run web2py behind Apache with mod_proxy. If **admin** detects a proxy, the session cookie is set to secure and **admin** login does not work unless the communication between the client and the proxy goes over HTTPS; this is a security measure. All communications between the client and **admin** must always be local or encrypted; otherwise an attacker would be able to perform a man-in-the middle attack or a replay attack and execute arbitrary code on the server.

After the administration password has been set, web2py starts up the web browser at the page:

¹ <http://127.0.0.1:8000/>

If the computer does not have a default browser, open a web browser and enter the URL.

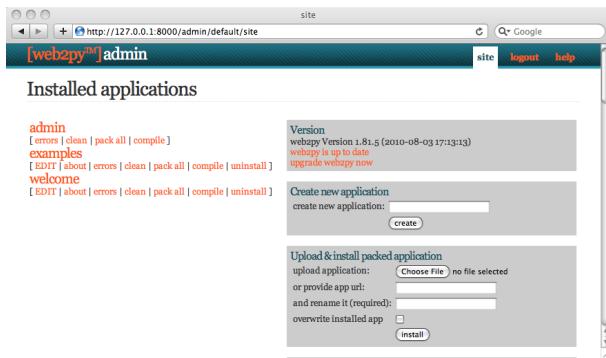


Clicking on "administrative interface" takes you to the login page for the administration interface.



The administrator password is the password you chose at startup. Notice that there is only one administrator, and therefore only one administrator password. For security reasons, the developer is asked to choose a new password every time web2py starts unless the `<recycle>` option is specified. This is distinct from the authentication mechanism in web2py applications.

After the administrator logs into web2py, the browser is redirected to the "site" page.



This page lists all installed web2py applications and allows the administrator to manage them. web2py comes with three applications:

- An **admin** application, the one you are using right now.
- An **examples** application, with the online interactive documentation and a replica of the web2py official website.
- A **welcome** application. This is the basic template for any other web2py application. It is referred to as the scaffolding application. This is also the application that welcomes a user at startup.

Ready-to-use web2py applications are referred to as web2py *appliances*. You can download many freely available appliances from (34). web2py users are encouraged to submit new appliances, either in open-source or closed-source (compiled and packed) form.

From the **admin** application's *site* page, you can perform the following operations:

- **install** an application by completing the form on the bottom right of the page. Give a name to the application, select the file containing a packaged application or the URL where the application is located, and click "submit".
- **uninstall** an application by clicking the corresponding button. There is a confirmation page.

- **create** a new application by choosing a name and clicking "submit".
- **package** an application for distribution by clicking on the corresponding button. A downloaded application is a tar file containing everything, including the database. You should not untar this file; it is automatically unpackaged by web2py when installed with **admin**.
- **clean up** an application's temporary files, such as sessions, errors and cache files.
- **EDIT** an application.

*When you create a new application using **admin**, it starts as a clone of the "welcome" scaffolding app with a "models/db.py" that creates a SQLite database, connects to it, instantiates Auth, Crud and Service, configures them. It also provides a "controller/default.py" which exposes actions "index", "download", "user" for user management, and "call" for services. In the following, we assume that these files have been removed; we will be creating apps from scratch.*

3.2 Say Hello

Here, as an example, we create a simple web app that displays the message "Hello from MyApp" to the user. We will call this application "myapp". We will also add a counter that counts how many times the same user visits the page.

You can create a new application simply by typing its name in the form on the top right of the **site** page in **admin**.

The screenshot shows a modal dialog titled "Create new application". Inside the dialog, there is a text input field labeled "create new application:" with the value "myapp" entered. Below the input field is a "create" button.

After you press [submit], the application is created as a copy of the built-in welcome application.

Installed applications

admin	[errors clean pack all compile]	Version web2py Version 1.0 click to check for updates upgrade web2py now
examples	[EDIT about errors clean pack all compile uninstall]	Create new application create new applic
myapp	[EDIT about errors clean pack all compile uninstall]	Upload & install upload application or provide app url
welcome	[EDIT about errors clean pack all compile uninstall]	

To run the new application, visit:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/myapp
```

Now you have a copy of the welcome application.

To edit an application, click on the *edit* button for the newly created application.

design myapp

new application "myapp" created

Edit application "myapp"

Models
the data representation, define database tables and sets

- [database administration]
 - db.py [edit | delete]
 - menu.py [edit | delete]
 - create file with filename: [submit]

Controllers
the application logic, each URL path is mapped in one exposed function in the controller

- [shell | test | crontab]
- appadmin.py [edit | delete | test] exposes index, insert, download, csv, select, update, state, cache
- default.py [edit | delete | test] exposes index, user, download, call

The **EDIT** page tells you what is inside the application. Every web2py applica-

cation consists of certain files, most of which fall into one of five categories:

- **models**: describe the data representation.
- **controllers**: describe the application logic and workflow.
- **views**: describe the data presentation.
- **languages**: describe how to translate the application presentation to other languages.
- **modules**: Python modules that belong to the application.
- **static files**: static images, CSS files (40; 41; 42), JavaScript files (43; 44), etc.

Everything is neatly organized following the Model-View-Controller design pattern. Each section in the *edit* page corresponds to a subfolder in the application folder.

Notice that section headings will toggle their content. Folder names under static files are also collapsible.

*Each file listed in the section corresponds to a file physically located in the subfolder. Any operation performed on a file via the **admin** interface (create, edit, delete) can be performed directly from the shell using your favorite editor.*

The application contains other types of files (database, session files, error files, etc.), but they are not listed on the *edit* page because they are not created or modified by the administrator; they are created and modified by the application itself.

The controllers contain the logic and workflow of the application. Every URL gets mapped into a call to one of the functions in the controllers (actions). There are two default controllers: "appadmin.py" and "default.py". **appadmin** provides the database administrative interface; we do not need it now. "default.py" is the controller that you need to edit, the one that is called by default when no controller is specified in the URL. Edit the "index" function as follows:

```

1 def index():
2     return "Hello from MyApp"

```

Here is what the online editor looks like:

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL `http://127.0.0.1:8000/admin/default/edit/myapp/controllers/default.py`. The title bar says "[web2py] admin". The main content area is titled "Editing file "myapp/controllers/default.py"" and contains the Python code for the default controller. The code includes comments explaining the purpose of each method: index (the default action), download (for files), and generic (for rendering generic HTML). The code also shows how to use the internationalization operator T and the flash function.

```

1 # -*- coding: utf-8 -*-
2
3 ##### This is a samples controller
4 ## - index is the default action of any application
5 ## - auth is automatically created for all applications
6 ## - download is for downloading files uploaded in the db (does streaming)
7 ## - call exposes all registered services (none by default)
8 #####
9 #####
10
11 def index():
12     """
13     example action using the internationalization operator T and flash
14     rendered by views/default/index.html or views/generic.html
15     """
16     response.flash = T('Welcome to web2py')

```

Save it and go back to the *edit* page. Click on the *index* link to visit the newly created page.

When you visit the URL

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/myapp/default/index
```

the index action in the default controller of the myapp application is called. It returns a string that the browser displays for us. It should look like this:



Now, edit the "index" function as follows:

```
1 def index():
2     return dict(message="Hello from MyApp")
```

Also from the *edit* page, edit the view default/index (the new file associated with the action) and, in this file, write:

```
1 <html>
2     <head></head>
3     <body>
4         <h1>{{=message}}</h1>
5     </body>
6 </html>
```

Now the action returns a dictionary defining a `message`. When an action returns a dictionary, web2py looks for a view with the name

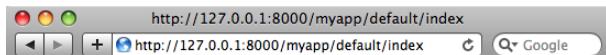
`[controller]/[function].[extension]` and executes it. Here `[extension]` is the requested extension. If no extension is specified, it defaults to "html", and that is what we will assume here. Under this assumption, the view is an HTML file that embeds Python code using special `{{ }}` tags. In particular, in the example, the `{{=message}}` instructs web2py to replace the tagged code with the value of the `message` returned by the action. Notice that `message` here is not a web2py keyword but is defined in the action. So far we have not used any web2py keywords.

If web2py does not find the requested view, it uses the "generic.html" view that comes with every application.

If an extension other than "html" is specified ("json" for example), and the view file "[controller]/[function].json" is not found, web2py looks for the view "generic.json". web2py comes with generic.html, generic.json, generic.xml, and generic.rss. These generic views can be modified for each application individually, and additional views can be added easily.

Read more on this topic in Chapter 9.

If you go back to "EDIT" and click on index, you will now see the following HTML page:



Hello form MyApp

3.3 Let's Count

Let's now add a counter to this page that will count how many times the same visitor displays the page. web2py automatically and transparently tracks visitors using sessions and cookies. For each new visitor, it creates a session and assigns a unique "session_id". The session is a container for variables that are stored server-side. The unique id is sent to the browser via a cookie. When the visitor requests another page from the same application, the browser sends the cookie back, it is retrieved by web2py, and the corresponding session is restored.

To use the session, modify the default controller:

```

1 def index():
2     if not session.counter:
3         session.counter = 1
4     else:
5         session.counter += 1
6     return dict(message="Hello from MyApp", counter=session.counter)

```

Notice that `counter` is not a web2py keyword but `session` is. We are asking web2py to check whether there is a `counter` variable in the session and, if not,

to create one and set it to 1. If the counter is there, we ask web2py to increase the counter by 1. Finally we pass the value of the counter to the view.

A more compact way to code the same function is this:

```
1 def index():
2     session.counter = (session.counter or 0) + 1
3     return dict(message="Hello from MyApp", counter=session.counter)
```

Now modify the view to add a line that displays the value of the counter:

```
1 <html>
2     <head></head>
3     <body>
4         <h1>{{=message}}</h1>
5         <h2>Number of visits: {{=counter}}</h2>
6     </body>
7 </html>
```

When you visit the index page again (and again) you should get the following HTML page:



The counter is associated with each visitor, and is incremented each time the visitor reloads the page. Different visitors see different counters.

3.4 Say My Name

Now create two pages (first and second), where the first page creates a form, asks the visitor's name, and redirects to the second page, which greets the visitor by name.



Write the corresponding actions in the default controller:

```

1 def first():
2     return dict()
3
4 def second():
5     return dict()
  
```

Then create a view "default/first.html" for the first action:

Models
Controllers
Views
the presentations layer, views are also known as templates

- `__init__.py` [edit | delete]
- `appadmin.html` [edit | delete] extends `layout.html`
- `default/index.html` [edit | delete]
- `default/user.html` [edit | delete] extends `layout.html`
- `generic.html` [edit | delete] extends `layout.html`
- `generic.json` [edit | delete]
- `generic.load` [edit | delete]
- `generic.rss` [edit | delete]
- `generic.xml` [edit | delete]
- `layout.html` [edit | delete] includes `web2py_ajax.html`
- `web2py_ajax.html` [edit | delete]
- create file with filename:

and enter:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 What is your name?
3 <form action="second">
4   <input name="visitor_name" />
5   <input type="submit" />
6 </form>
```

Finally, create a view "default/second.html" for the second action:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Hello {{=request.vars.visitor_name}}</h1>
```

In both views we have extended the basic "layout.html" view that comes with web2py. The layout view keeps the look and feel of the two pages coherent. The layout file can be edited and replaced easily, since it mainly contains HTML code.

If you now visit the first page, type your name:



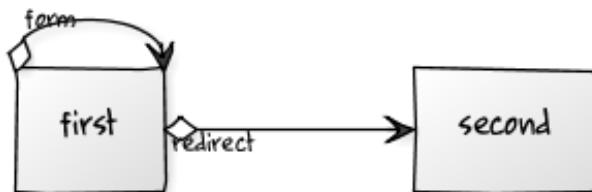
and submit the form, you will receive a greeting:



3.5 Postbacks

The mechanism for form submission that we used before is very common, but it is not good programming practice. All input should be validated and, in the above example, the burden of validation would fall on the second action. Thus the action that performs the validation is different from the action that generated the form. This tends to cause redundancy in the code.

A better pattern for form submission is to submit forms to the same action that generated them, in our example the "first". The "first" action should receive the variables, process them, store them server-side, and redirect the visitor to the "second" page, which retrieves the variables. This mechanism is called a *postback*.



Modify the default controller to implement self-submission:

```

1 def first():
2     if request.vars.visitor_name:
3         session.visitor_name = request.vars.visitor_name

```

```

4     redirect(URL('second'))
5     return dict()
6
7 def second():
8     return dict()

```

Then modify the "default/first.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 What is your name?
3 <form>
4     <input name="visitor_name" />
5     <input type="submit" />
6 </form>

```

and the "default/second.html" view needs to retrieve the data from the `session` instead of from the `request.vars`:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Hello {{=session.visitor_name or "anonymous"}}</h1>

```

From the point of view of the visitor, the self-submission behaves exactly the same as the previous implementation. We have not added validation yet, but it is now clear that validation should be performed by the first action.

This approach is better also because the name of the visitor stays in the session, and can be accessed by all actions and views in the applications without having to be passed around explicitly.

Note that if the "second" action is ever called before a visitor name is set, it will display "Hello anonymous" because `session.visitor_name` returns `None`. Alternatively we could have added the following code in the controller (inside the `second` function):

```

1 if not request.function=='first' and not session.visitor_name:
2     redirect(URL('first'))

```

This is a general mechanism that you can use to enforce authorization on controllers, though see Chapter 8 for a more powerful method.

With web2py we can move one step further and ask web2py to generate the form for us, including validation. web2py provides helpers (FORM, INPUT, TEXTAREA, and SELECT/OPTION) with the same names as the equivalent HTML tags. They can be used to build forms either in the controller or in the view.

For example, here is one possible way to rewrite the first action:

```

1 def first():
2     form = FORM(INPUT(_name='visitor_name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
3                  INPUT(_type='submit'))
4     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
5         session.visitor_name = form.vars.visitor_name
6         redirect(URL('second'))
7     return dict(form=form)

```

where we are saying that the FORM tag contains two INPUT tags. The attributes of the input tags are specified by the named arguments starting with underscore. The requires argument is not a tag attribute (because it does not start by underscore) but it sets a validator for the value of visitor_name.

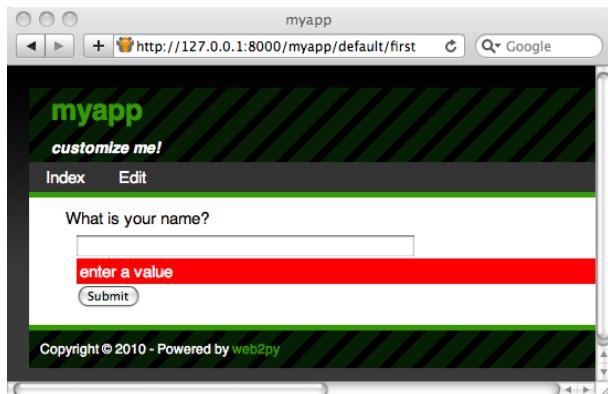
The `form` object can be easily serialized in HTML by embedding it in the "default/first.html" view.

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 What is your name?
3 {{=form}}

```

The `form.accepts` method applies the validators. If the self-submitted form passes validation, it stores the variables in the session and redirects as before. If the form does not pass validation, error messages are inserted into the form and shown to the user, as below:

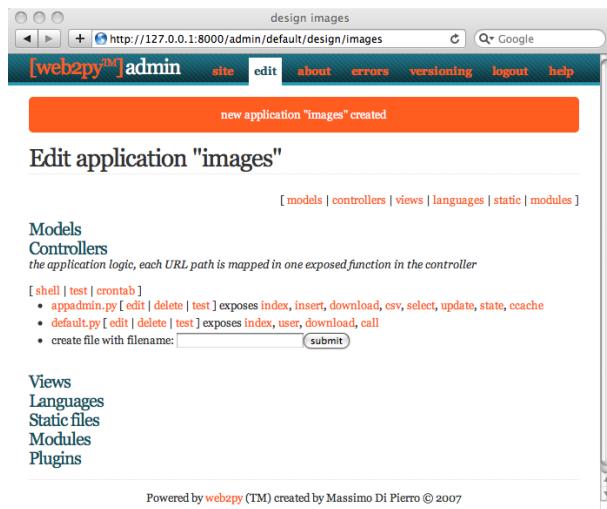


In the next section we will show how forms can be generated automatically from a model.

3.6 An Image Blog

Here, as another example, we wish to create a web application that allows the administrator to post images and give them a name, and allows the visitors of the web site to view the named images and submit comments.

As before, create the new application from the **site** page in **admin** and navigate to the *edit* page:



We start by creating a model, a representation of the persistent data in the application (the images to upload, their names, and the comments). First, you need to create/edit a model file which, for lack of imagination, we call "db.py". We assume the code below will replace any existing code in "db.py". Models and controllers must have a .py extension since they are Python code. If the extension is not provided, it is appended by web2py. Views instead have a .html extension since they mainly contain HTML code.

Edit the "db.py" file by clicking the corresponding "edit" button:



and enter the following:

```

1 db = DAL("sqlite://storage.sqlite")
2
3 db.define_table('image',
4     Field('title'),
5     Field('file', 'upload'))
6
7 db.define_table('comment',
8     Field('image_id', db.image),
9     Field('author'),
10    Field('email'),
11    Field('body', 'text'))
12
13 db.image.title.requires = IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, db.image.title)
14 db.comment.image_id.requires = IS_IN_DB(db, db.image.id, '%(title)s')
15 db.comment.author.requires = IS_NOT_EMPTY()
16 db.comment.email.requires = IS_EMAIL()
17 db.comment.body.requires = IS_NOT_EMPTY()
18
19 db.comment.image_id.writable = db.comment.image_id.readable = False

```

Let's analyze this line by line.

Line 1 defines a global variable called `db` that represents the database connection. In this case it is a connection to a SQLite database stored in the file "applications/images/databases/storage.sqlite". In the SQLite case, if the database does not exist, it is created. You can change the name of the file, as well as the name of the global variable `db`, but it is convenient to give them the same name, to make it easy to remember.

Lines 3-5 define a table "image". `define_table` is a method of the `db` object. The first argument, "image", is the name of the table we are defining. The other arguments are the fields belonging to that table. This table has a field called "title", a field called "file", and a field called "id" that serves as the table primary key ("id" is not explicitly declared because all tables have an id field by default). The field "title" is a string, and the field "file" is of type "upload". "upload" is a special type of field used by the web2py Data Abstraction Layer (DAL) to store the names of uploaded files. web2py knows how to upload files (via streaming if they are large), rename them safely, and store them.

When a table is defined, web2py takes one of several possible actions: a) if

the table does not exist, the table is created; b) if the table exists and does not correspond to the definition, the table is altered accordingly, and if a field has a different type, web2py tries to convert its contents; c) if the table exists and corresponds to the definition, web2py does nothing.

This behavior is called "migration". In web2py migrations are automatic, but can be disabled for each table by passing `migrate=False` as the last argument of `define_table`.

Lines 7-11 define another table called "comment". A comment has an "author", an "email" (we intend to store the email address of the author of the comment), a "body" of type "text" (we intend to use it to store the actual comment posted by the author), and an "image_id" field of type reference that points to `db.image` via the "id" field.

In lines 13 `db.image.title` represents the field "title" of table "image". The attribute `requires` allows you to set requirements/constraints that will be enforced by web2py forms. Here we require that the "title" is unique

```
IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, db.image.title)
```

The objects representing these constraints are called validators. Multiple validators can be grouped in a list. Validators are executed in the order they appear. `IS_NOT_IN_DB(a, b)` is a special validator that checks that the value of a field `b` for a new record is not already in `a`.

Line 14 requires that the field "image_id" of table "comment" is in `db.image.id`. As far as the database is concerned, we had already declared this when we defined the table "comment". Now we are explicitly telling the model that this condition should be enforced by web2py, too, at the form processing level when a new comment is posted, so that invalid values do not propagate from input forms to the database. We also require that the "image_id" be represented by the "title", '%(title)s', of the corresponding record.

Line 18 indicates that the field "image_id" of table "comment" should not be

shown in forms, `writable=False` and not even in readonly forms, `readable=False`.

The meaning of the validators in lines 15-17 should be obvious.

Notice that the validator

```
1 db.comment.image_id.requires = IS_IN_DB(db, db.image.id, '%(title)s')
```

could be omitted (and would be automatic) if we were to specify a format for representing an image:

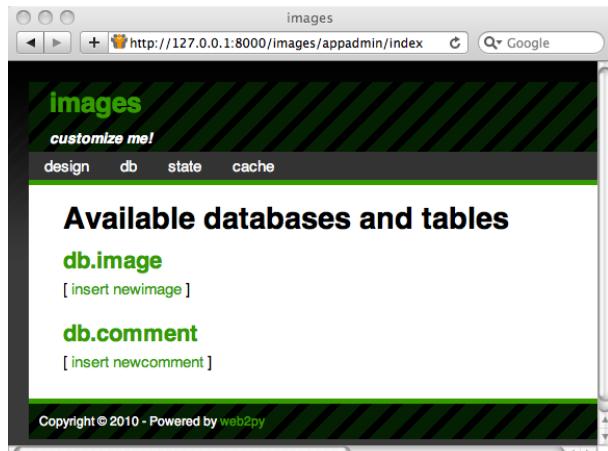
```
1 db.define_table('image', ..., format='%(title)s')
```

where the format can be a string or a function that takes a record and returns a string.

Once a model is defined, if there are no errors, web2py creates an application administration interface to manage the database. You access it via the "database administration" link in the *edit* page or directly:

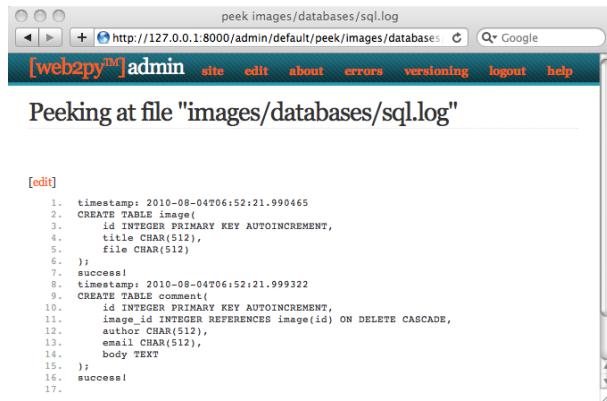
```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/appadmin
```

Here is a screenshot of the **appadmin** interface:



This interface is coded in the controller called "appadmin.py" and the corresponding view "appadmin.html". From now on, we will refer to this interface simply as **appadmin**. It allows the administrator to insert new database records, edit and delete existing records, browse tables, and perform database joins.

The first time **appadmin** is accessed, the model is executed and the tables are created. The web2py DAL translates Python code into SQL statements that are specific to the selected database back-end (SQLite in this example). You can see the generated SQL from the *edit* page by clicking on the "sql.log" link under "models". Notice that the link is not present until the tables have been created.

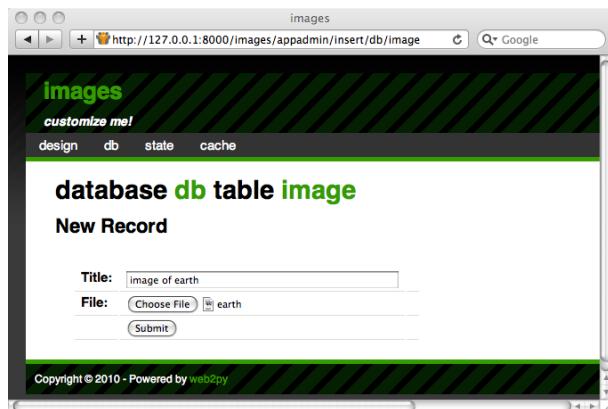


A screenshot of a web browser window titled "peek images/databases/sql.log". The address bar shows the URL "http://127.0.0.1:8000/admin/default/peek/images/databases/sql.log". The browser has a standard toolbar with back, forward, and search buttons. Below the toolbar is a navigation menu with links: [web2py™]admin, site, edit, about, errors, versioning, logout, and help. The main content area displays the text "Peeking at file \"images/databases/sql.log\"". Below this, there is a code editor window showing the generated SQL code:

```
[edit]
1. timestamp: 2010-08-04T06:52:21.990465
2. CREATE TABLE image(
3.     id INTEGER PRIMARY KEY AUTOINCREMENT,
4.     title CHAR(512),
5.     file CHAR(512)
6. );
7. success!
8. timestamp: 2010-08-04T06:52:21.999322
9. CREATE TABLE comment(
10.    id INTEGER PRIMARY KEY AUTOINCREMENT,
11.    image_id INTEGER REFERENCES image(id) ON DELETE CASCADE,
12.    author CHAR(512),
13.    email CHAR(512),
14.    body TEXT
15. );
16. success!
17.
```

If you were to edit the model and access **appadmin** again, web2py would generate SQL to alter the existing tables. The generated SQL is logged into "sql.log".

Now go back to **appadmin** and try to insert a new image record:



web2py has translated the `db.image.file` "upload" field into an upload form for the file. When the form is submitted and an image file is uploaded, the file is renamed in a secure way that preserves the extension, it is saved with the new name under the application "uploads" folder, and the new name is stored in the `db.image.file` field. This process is designed to prevent directory traversal attacks.

Notice that each field type is rendered by a *widget*. Default widgets can be overridden.

When you click on a table name in **appadmin**, web2py performs a select of all records on the current table, identified by the DAL query

```
1 db.image.id > 0
```

and renders the result.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL `http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/appadmin/select/db?query=db.image.id>0`. The interface is titled "images". At the top, there are fields for "Query" (set to `db.image.id>0`), "Update", and "Delete", each with a checkbox and a "submit" button. Below this, a note explains the query syntax using conditions like `db.table1.field1=='value'`, joins, and logical operators. A section titled "1 selected" displays a single record with columns "image.id", "image.title", and "image.file", containing the values 1, image of earth, and file respectively. At the bottom, there's an "Import/Export" section with a "export as csv file" link, a "Choose File" input field showing "no file selected", and an "import" button.

You can select a different set of records by editing the SQL query and pressing "apply".

To edit or delete a single record, click on the record id number.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL `http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/appadmin/insert/db/comment`. The interface has a header with "Images" and "customize me!". It includes navigation links for "design", "db", "state", and "cache". The main content area is titled "database db table comment" and "New Record". It contains four form fields: "Image Id" (with a dropdown menu showing "image of earth"), "Author" (text input "Me"), "Email" (text input "you@example.com"), and "Body" (text area containing "picture of the planet earth from space"). A "Submit" button is at the bottom of the form.

Because of the `IS_IN_DB` validator, the reference field "image_id" is rendered

by a drop-down menu. The items in the drop-down are stored as keys (`db.image.id`), but are represented by their `db.image.title`, as specified by the validator.

Validators are powerful objects that know how to represent fields, filter field values, generate errors, and format values extracted from the field.

The following figure shows what happens when you submit a form that does not pass validation:

A screenshot of a web form with four fields: 'Image Id', 'Author', 'Email', and 'Body'. The 'Image Id' field contains 'image of earth' and has a dropdown arrow. The 'Author' field has a red background and the error message 'enter a value'. The 'Email' field has a red background and the error message 'enter a valid email address'. The 'Body' field has a red background and the error message 'enter a value'.

Image Id:	image of earth
Author:	enter a value
Email:	enter a valid email address
Body:	enter a value

The same forms that are automatically generated by **appadmin** can also be generated programmatically via the `SQLFORM` helper and embedded in user applications. These forms are CSS-friendly, and can be customized.

Every application has its own **appadmin**; therefore, **appadmin** itself can be modified without affecting other applications.

So far, the application knows how to store data, and we have seen how to access the database via **appadmin**. Access to **appadmin** is restricted to the administrator, and it is not intended as a production web interface for the application; hence the next part of this walk-through. Specifically we want to

create:

- An "index" page that lists all available images sorted by title and links to detail pages for the images.
- A "show/[id]" page that shows the visitor the requested image and allows the visitor to view and post comments.
- A "download/[name]" action to download uploaded images.

This is represented schematically here:



Go back to the *edit* page and edit the "default.py" controller, replacing its contents with the following:

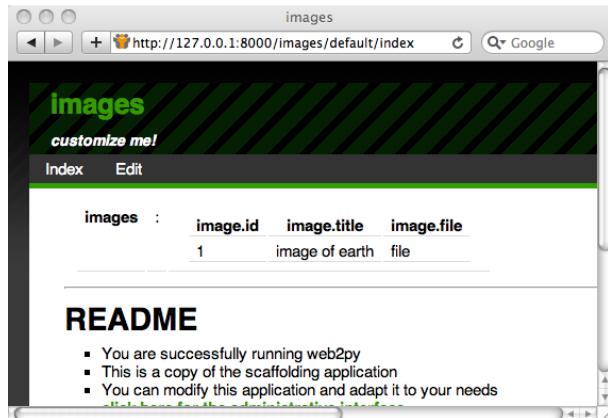
```

1 def index():
2     images = db().select(db.image.ALL, orderby=db.image.title)
3     return dict(images=images)
  
```

This action returns a dictionary. The keys of the items in the dictionary are interpreted as variables passed to the view associated to the action. If there is no view, the action is rendered by the "generic.html" view that is provided with every web2py application.

The index action performs a select of all fields (`db.image.ALL`) from table image, ordered by `db.image.title`. The result of the select is a Rows object containing the records. Assign it to a local variable called `images` returned by the action to the view. `images` is iterable and its elements are the selected rows. For each row the columns can be accessed as dictionaries: `images[0]['title']` or equivalently as `images[0].title`.

If you do not write a view, the dictionary is rendered by "views/generic.html" and a call to the index action would look like this:



You have not created a view for this action yet, so web2py renders the set of records in plain tabular form.

Proceed to create a view for the index action. Return to admin, edit "default-index.html" and replace its content with the following:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Current Images</h1>
3 <ul>
4 {{for image in images:}}
5 {{=LI(A(image.title, _href=URL("show", args=image.id)))}}
6 {{pass}}
7 </ul>

```

The first thing to notice is that a view is pure HTML with special {...} tags. The code embedded in {...} is pure Python code with one caveat: indentation is irrelevant. Blocks of code start with lines ending in colon (:) and end in lines beginning with the keyword pass. In some cases the end of a block is obvious from context and the use of pass is not required.

Lines 5-7 loop over the image rows and for each row image display:

```

1 LI(A(image.title, _href=URL('show', args=image.id))

```

This is a ... tag that contains an ... tag which

contains the `image.title`. The value of the hypertext reference (`href` attribute) is:

```
1 URL('show', args=image.id)
```

i.e., the URL within the same application and controller as the current request that calls the function called "show", passing a single argument to the function, `args=image.id`. `LI`, `A`, etc. are web2py helpers that map to the corresponding HTML tags. Their unnamed arguments are interpreted as objects to be serialized and inserted in the tag's innerHTML. Named arguments starting with an underscore (for example `_href`) are interpreted as tag attributes but without the underscore. For example `_href` is the `href` attribute, `_class` is the `class` attribute, etc.

As an example, the following statement:

```
1 {{=LI(A('something', _href=URL('show', args=123)))}}
```

is rendered as:

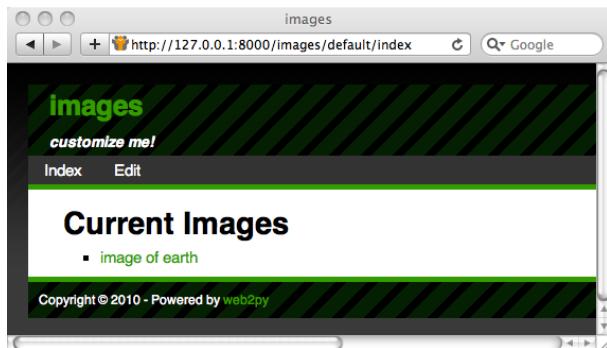
```
1 <li><a href="/images/default/show/123">something</a></li>
```

A handful of helpers (`INPUT`, `TEXTAREA`, `OPTION` and `SELECT`) also support some special named attributes not starting with underscore (`value`, and `requires`). They are important for building custom forms and will be discussed later.

Go back to the *edit* page. It now indicates that "default.py exposes index". By clicking on "index", you can visit the newly created page:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/index
```

which looks like:



If you click on the image name link, you are directed to:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/show/1
```

and this results in an error, since you have not yet created an action called "show" in controller "default.py".

Let's edit the "default.py" controller and replace its content with:

```
1 def index():
2     images = db().select(db.image.ALL, orderby=db.image.title)
3     return dict(images=images)
4
5 def show():
6     image = db(db.image.id==request.args(0)).select().first()
7     form = SQLFORM(db.comment)
8     form.vars.image_id = image.id
9     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
10         response.flash = 'your comment is posted'
11     comments = db(db.comment.image_id==image.id).select()
12     return dict(image=image, comments=comments, form=form)
13
14 def download():
15     return response.download(request, db)
```

The controller contains two actions: "show" and "download". The "show" action selects the image with the id parsed from the request args and all comments related to the image. "show" then passes everything to the view "default/show.html".

The image id referenced by:

```
1 URL('show', args=image.id)
```

in "default/index.html", can be accessed as: `request.args(0)` from the "show" action.

The "download" action expects a filename in `request.args(0)`, builds a path to the location where that file is supposed to be, and sends it back to the client. If the file is too large, it streams the file without incurring any memory overhead.

Notice the following statements:

- Line 7 creates an insert form SQLFORM for the `db.comment` table using only the specified fields.
- Line 8 sets the value for the reference field, which is not part of the input form because it is not in the list of fields specified above.
- Line 9 processes the submitted form (the submitted form variables are in `request.vars`) within the current session (the session is used to prevent double submissions, and to enforce navigation). If the submitted form variables are validated, the new comment is inserted in the `db.comment` table; otherwise the form is modified to include error messages (for example, if the author's email address is invalid). This is all done in line 9!.
- Line 10 is only executed if the form is accepted, after the record is inserted into the database table. `response.flash` is a web2py variable that is displayed in the views and used to notify the visitor that something happened.
- Line 11 selects all comments that reference the current image.

The "download" action is already defined in the "default.py" controller of the scaffolding application.

The "download" action does not return a dictionary, so it does not need a

view. The "show" action, though, should have a view, so return to **admin** and create a new view called "default/show.html".

Edit this new file and replace its content with the following:

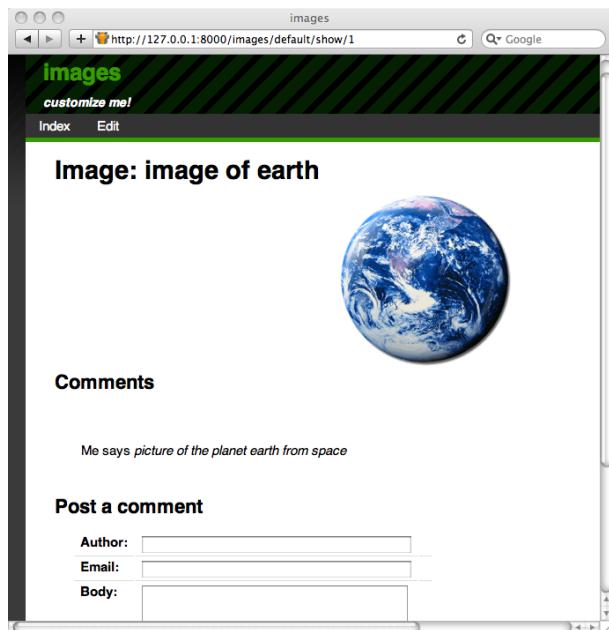
```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Image: {{=image.title}}</h1>
3 <center>
4 
6 </center>
7 {{if len(comments):}}
8   <h2>Comments</h2><br /><p>
9     {{for comment in comments:}}
10       <p>{{=comment.author}} says <i>{{=comment.body}}</i></p>
11       {{pass}}
12 {{else:}}
13   <h2>No comments posted yet</h2>
14   {{pass}}
15 <h2>Post a comment</h2>
16 {{=form}}

```

This view displays the **image.file** by calling the "download" action inside an **** tag. If there are comments, it loops over them and displays each one.

Here is how everything will appear to a visitor.



When a visitor submits a comment via this page, the comment is stored in the database and appended at the bottom of the page.

3.7 Adding CRUD

web2py also provides a CRUD (Create/Read/Update/Delete) API that simplifies forms even more. To use CRUD it is necessary to define it somewhere, such as in module "db.py":

```
1 from gluon.tools import Crud
2 crud = Crud(globals(), db)
```

These two lines are already in the scaffolding application.

The `crud` object provides high-level methods, for example:

```
1 form = crud.create(table)
```

that can be used to replace the programming pattern:

```
1 form = SQLFORM(table)
2 if form.accepts(request.post_vars,session):
3     session.flash = '...'
4     redirect('...')
```

Here, we rewrite the previous "show" action using crud and making some more improvements:

```
1 def show():
2     image = db.image(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
3     db.comment.image_id.default = image.id
4     form = crud.create(db.comment,
5                         message='your comment is posted',
6                         next=URL(args=image.id))
7     comments = db(db.comment.image_id==image.id).select()
8     return dict(image=image, comments=comments, form=form)
```

First of all notice we have used the syntax

```
1 db.image(request.args(0)) or redirect(...)
```

to fetch the required record. Since ‘table(id)’ returns None if the record is not found, we can use `or redirect(...)` in this case in one line.

The next argument of `crud.create` is the URL to redirect to after the form is accepted. The `message` argument is the one to be displayed upon acceptance. You can read more about CRUD in Chapter 7.

3.8 Adding Authentication

The web2py API for Role-Based Access Control is quite sophisticated, but for now we will limit ourselves to restricting access to the show action to authenticated users, deferring a more detailed discussion to Chapter 8.

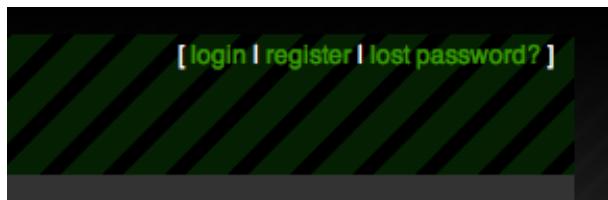
To limit access to authenticated users, we need to complete three steps. In a model, for example "db.py", we need to add:

```
1 from gluon.tools import Auth
2 auth = Auth(globals(), db)
3 auth.define_tables()
```

In our controller, we need to add one action:

```
1 def user():
2     return dict(form=auth())
```

This is sufficient to enable login, register, logout, etc. pages. The default layout will also show options to the corresponding pages in the top right corner.



We can now decorate the functions that we want to restrict, for example:

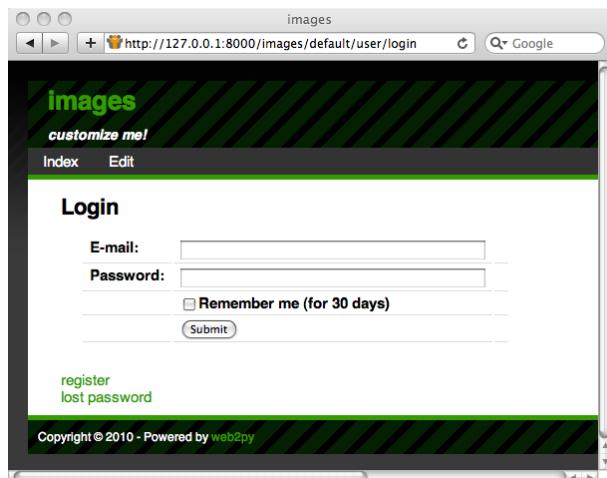
```
1 @auth.requires_login()
2 def show():
3     image = db.image(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
4     db.comment.image_id.default = image.id
5     form = crud.create(db.comment, next=URL(args=image.id),
6                         message='your comment is posted')
7     comments = db(db.comment.image_id==image.id).select()
8     return dict(image=image, comments=comments, form=form)
```

Any attempt to access

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/show/[image_id]
```

will require login. If the user is not logged it, the user will be redirected to

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/login
```



The user function also exposes, among others, the following actions:

```

1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/logout
2 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/register
3 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/profile
4 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/change_password
5 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/request_reset_password
6 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/retrieve_username
7 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/retrieve_password
8 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/verify_email
9 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/impersonate
10 http://127.0.0.1:8000/images/default/user/notAuthorized

```

Now, a first-time user needs to register in order to be able to log in and read or post comments.

Both the auth object and the user function are already defined in the scaffolding application. The auth object is highly customizable and can deal with email verification, registration approvals, CAPTCHA, and alternate login methods via plugins. Both the auth object and the user function are already defined in the scaffolding application. The auth object is highly customizable and can deal with email verification, registration approvals, CAPTCHA, and alternate login methods.

3.9 Configuring the Layout

You can configure the default layout by editing "views/layout.html" but you can also configure it without editing the HTML. In fact, the "static/base.css" stylesheet is well documented and described in Chapter 5. You can change color, columns, size, borders and background without editing the HTML. If you want to edit the menu, the title or the subtitle, you can do so in any model file. The scaffolding app, sets default values of these parameters in the file "models/menu.py":

```

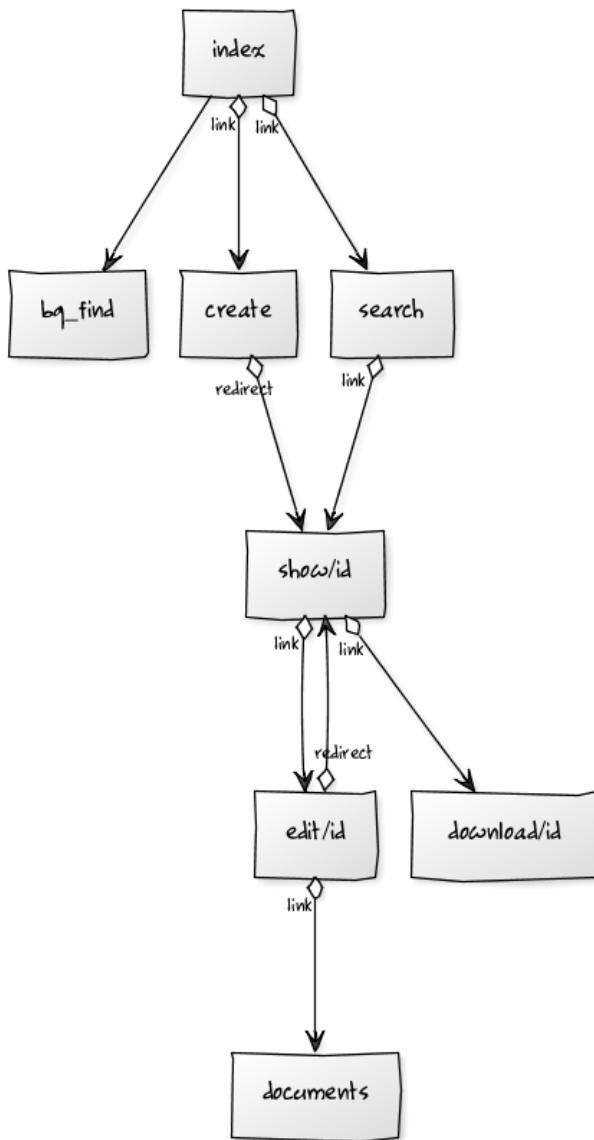
1 response.title = request.application
2 response.subtitle = T('customize me!')
3 response.meta.author = 'you'
4 response.meta.description = 'describe your app'
5 response.meta.keywords = 'bla bla bla'
6 response.menu = [ [ 'Index', False, URL('index') ] ]

```

3.10 A Wiki

In this section, we build a wiki, from scratch and without using the extended functionality provided by plugin_wiki which is described in chapter 13. The visitor will be able to create pages, search them (by title), and edit them. The visitor will also be able to post comments (exactly as in the previous applications), and also post documents (as attachments to the pages) and link them from the pages. As a convention, we adopt the Markmin syntax for our wiki syntax. We will also implement a search page with Ajax, an RSS feed for the pages, and a handler to search the pages via XML-RPC (46).

The following diagram lists the actions that we need to implement and the links we intend to build among them.



Start by creating a new scaffolding app, naming it "mywiki".

The model must contain three tables: page, comment, and document. Both

comment and document reference page because they belong to page. A document contains a file field of type upload as in the previous images application.

Here is the complete model:

```

1 db = DAL('sqlite://storage.sqlite')
2
3 from gluon.tools import *
4 auth = Auth(globals(),db)
5 auth.define_tables()
6 crud = Crud(globals(),db)
7
8 db.define_table('page',
9     Field('title'),
10    Field('body', 'text'),
11    Field('created_on', 'datetime', default=request.now),
12    Field('created_by', db.auth_user, default=auth.user_id),
13    format='%(title)s')
14
15 db.define_table('comment',
16     Field('page_id', db.page),
17     Field('body', 'text'),
18     Field('created_on', 'datetime', default=request.now),
19     Field('created_by', db.auth_user, default=auth.user_id))
20
21 db.define_table('document',
22     Field('page_id', db.page),
23     Field('name'),
24     Field('file', 'upload'),
25     Field('created_on', 'datetime', default=request.now),
26     Field('created_by', db.auth_user, default=auth.user_id),
27     format='%(name)s')
28
29 db.page.title.requires = IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, 'page.title')
30 db.page.body.requires = IS_NOT_EMPTY()
31 db.page.created_by.readable = db.page.created_by.writable = False
32 db.page.created_on.readable = db.page.created_on.writable = False
33
34 db.comment.body.requires = IS_NOT_EMPTY()
35 db.comment.page_id.readable = db.comment.page_id.writable = False
36 db.comment.created_by.readable = db.comment.created_by.writable = False
37 db.comment.created_on.readable = db.comment.created_on.writable = False
38
39 db.document.name.requires = IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, 'document.name')
40 db.document.page_id.readable = db.document.page_id.writable = False
41 db.document.created_by.readable = db.document.created_by.writable = False
42 db.document.created_on.readable = db.document.created_on.writable = False

```

Edit the controller "default.py" and create the following actions:

- index: list all wiki pages
- create: post another wiki page
- show: show a wiki page and its comments, and append comments
- edit: edit an existing page
- documents: manage the documents attached to a page
- download: download a document (as in the images example)
- search: display a search box and, via an Ajax callback, return all matching titles as the visitor types
- bg_find: the Ajax callback function. It returns the HTML that gets embedded in the search page while the visitor types.

Here is the "default.py" controller:

```

1 def index():
2     """ this controller returns a dictionary rendered by the view
3         it lists all wiki pages
4     >>> index().has_key('pages')
5     True
6     """
7     pages = db().select(db.page.id,db.page.title,orderby=db.page.title)
8     return dict(pages=pages)
9
10 @auth.requires_login()
11 def create():
12     "creates a new empty wiki page"
13     form = crud.create(db.page, next = URL('index'))
14     return dict(form=form)
15
16 def show():
17     "shows a wiki page"
18     this_page = db.page(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
19     db.comment.page_id.default = this_page.id
20     form = crud.create(db.comment) if auth.user else None
21     pagecomments = db(db.comment.page_id==this_page.id).select()
22     return dict(page=this_page, comments=pagecomments, form=form)
23
24 @auth.requires_login()
25 def edit():
26     "edit an existing wiki page"

```

```

27     this_page = db.page(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
28     form = crud.update(db.page, this_page,
29         next = URL('show', args=request.args))
30     return dict(form=form)
31
32 @auth.requires_login()
33 def documents():
34     "lists all documents attached to a certain page"
35     this_page = db.page(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
36     db.document.page_id.default = this_page.id
37     form = crud.create(db.document)
38     pagedocuments = db(db.document.page_id==this_page.id).select()
39     return dict(page=this_page, documents=pagedocuments, form=form)
40
41 def user():
42     return dict(form=auth())
43
44 def download():
45     "allows downloading of documents"
46     return response.download(request, db)
47
48 def search():
49     "an ajax wiki search page"
50     return dict(form=FORM(INPUT(_id='keyword', _name='keyword',
51         _onkeyup="ajax('bg_find', ['keyword'], 'target');"),
52         target_div=DIV(_id='target')))
53
54 def bg_find():
55     "an ajax callback that returns a <ul> of links to wiki pages"
56     pattern = '%' + request.vars.keyword.lower() + '%'
57     pages = db(db.page.title.lower().like(pattern))\
58         .select(orderby=db.page.title)
59     items = [A(row.title, _href=URL('show', args=row.id)) \
60             for row in pages]
61     return UL(*items).xml()

```

Lines 2-6 provide a comment for the index action. Lines 4-5 inside the comment are interpreted by python as test code (doctest). Tests can be run via the admin interface. In this case the tests verify that the index action runs without errors.

Lines 18, 27, and 35 try fetch a page record with the id in `request.args(0)`.

Line 13, 20 and 37 define and process create forms, for a new page and a new

comment and a new document respectively.

Line 28 defines and process an update form for a wiki page.

Some magic happens in line 51. The `onkeyup` attribute of the INPUT tag "keyword" is set. Every time the visitor releases a key, the JavaScript code inside the `onkeyup` attribute is executed, client-side. Here is the JavaScript code:

```
1 ajax('bg_find', ['keyword'], 'target');
```

`ajax` is a JavaScript function defined in the file "web2py_ajax.html" which is included by the default "layout.html". It takes three parameters: the URL of the action that performs the synchronous callback ("bg_find"), a list of the IDs of variables to be sent to the callback ([`"keyword"`]), and the ID where the response has to be inserted (`"target"`).

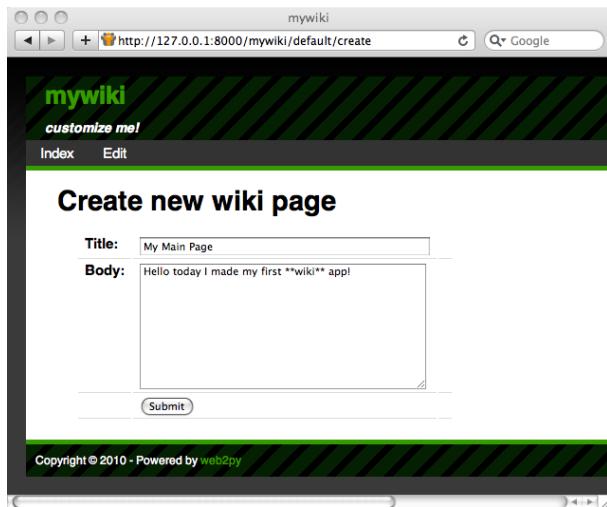
As soon as you type something in the search box and release a key, the client calls the server and sends the content of the 'keyword' field, and, when the sever responds, the response is embedded in the page itself as the inner-HTML of the 'target' tag.

The 'target' tag is a DIV defined in line 52. It could have been defined in the view as well.

Here is the code for the view "default/create.html":

```
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Create new wiki page</h1>
3 {{=form}}
```

If you visit the `create` page, you see the following:



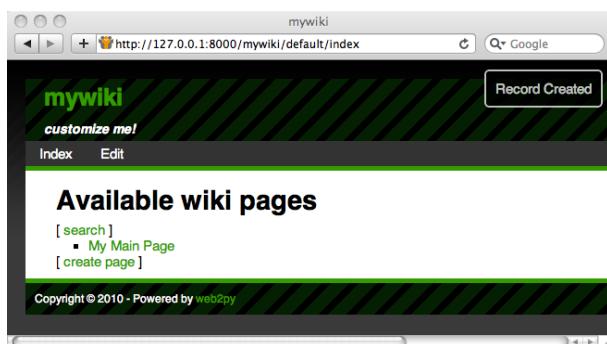
Here is the code for the view "default/index.html":

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Available wiki pages</h1>
3 [ {{=A('search', _href=URL('search'))}} ]<br />
4 <ul>{{for page in pages:}}
5     {{=LI(A(page.title, _href=URL('show', args=page.id)))}}
6 {{/pass}}</ul>
7 [ {{=A('create page', _href=URL('create'))}} ]

```

It generates the following page:



Here is the code for the view "default/show.html":

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>{{=page.title}}</h1>
3 [ {{=A('edit', _href=URL('edit', args=request.args))}}
4 | {{=A('documents', _href=URL('documents', args=request.args))}} ]<br />
5 {{=MARKMIN(page.body)}}
6 <h2>Comments</h2>
7 {{for comment in comments:}}
8   <p>{{=db.auth_user[comment.created_by].first_name}} on {{=comment.created_on}}
9     says <i>{{=comment.body}}</i></p>
10 {{pass}}
11 <h2>Post a comment</h2>
12 {{=form}}

```

If you wish to use markdown syntax instead of markmin syntax:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.markdown import WIKI

```

and use `WIKI` it instead of the `MARKMIN` helper. Alternatively, you can choose to accept raw HTML instead of markmin syntax. In this case you would replace:

```

1 {{=MARKMIN(page.body)}}

```

with:

```

1 {{=XML(page.body)}}

```

(so that the XML does not get escaped, as by default web2py behavior).

This can be done better with:

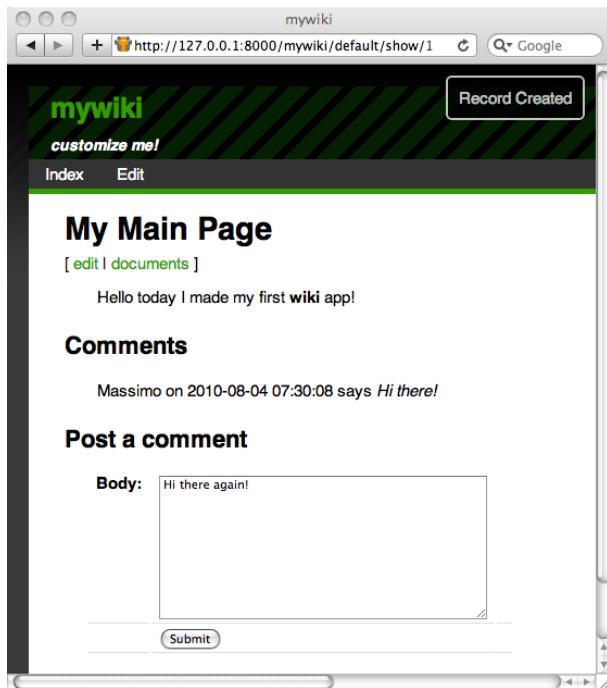
```

1 {{=XML(page.body, sanitize=True)}}

```

By setting `sanitize=True`, you tell web2py to escape unsafe XML tags such as "`<script>`", and thus prevent XSS vulnerabilities.

Now if, from the index page, you click on a page title, you can see the page that you have created:



Here is the code for the view "default/edit.html":

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Edit wiki page</h1>
3 [ {{=A('show', _href=URL('show', args=request.args))}} ]<br />
4 {{=form}}

```

It generates a page that looks almost identical to the create page.

Here is the code for the view "default/documents.html":

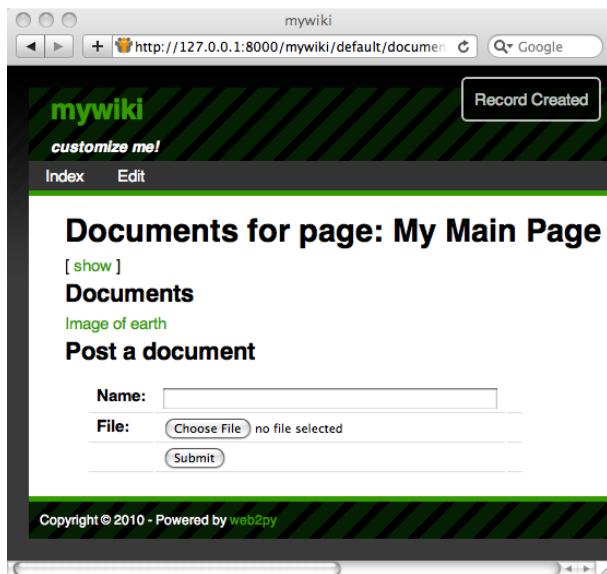
```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Documents for page: {{=page.title}}</h1>
3 [ {{=A('show', _href=URL('show', args=request.args))}} ]<br />
4 <h2>Documents</h2>
5 {{for document in documents:}}
6   {{=A(document.name, _href=URL('download', args=document.file))}}
7   <br />
8 {{pass}}
9 <h2>Post a document</h2>

```

```
10 {{=form}}
```

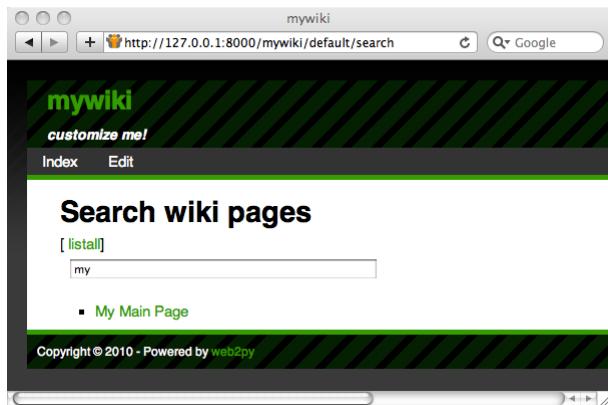
If, from the "show" page, you click on documents, you can now manage the documents attached to the page.



Finally here is the code for the view "default/search.html":

```
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Search wiki pages</h1>
3 [ {{=A('listall', _href=URL('index'))}}]<br />
4 {{=form}}<br />{{=target_div}}
```

which generates the following Ajax search form:



You can also try to call the callback action directly by visiting, for example, the following URL:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/mywiki/default/bg_find?keyword=wiki
```

If you look at the page source you see the HTML returned by the callback:

```
1 <ul><li><a href="/mywiki/default/show/4">I made a Wiki</a></li></ul>
```

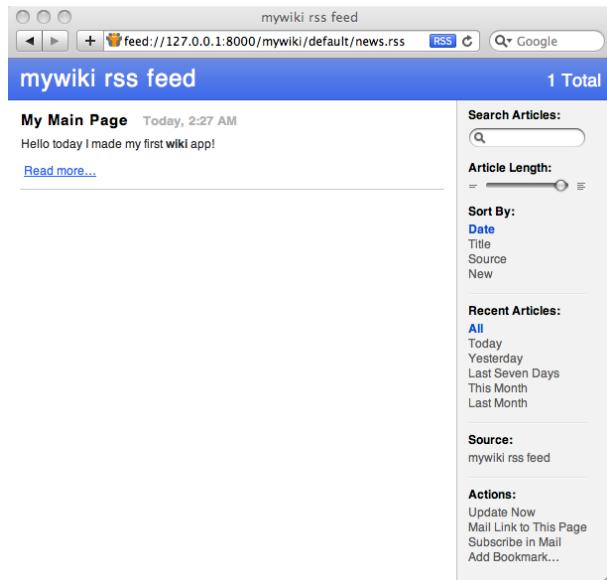
Generating an RSS feed from the stored pages using web2py is easy because web2py includes gluon.contrib.rss2. Just append the following action to the default controller:

```
1 def news():
2     "generates rss feed form the wiki pages"
3     pages = db().select(db.page.ALL, orderby=db.page.title)
4     return dict(
5         title = 'mywiki rss feed',
6         link = 'http://127.0.0.1:8000/mywiki/default/index',
7         description = 'mywiki news',
8         created_on = request.now,
9         items = [
10             dict(title = row.title,
11                  link = URL('show', args=row.id),
12                  description = MARKMIN(row.body).xml(),
13                  created_on = row.created_on
14                  ) for row in pages])
```

and when you visit the page

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/mywiki/default/news.rss
```

you see the feed (the exact output depends on the feed reader). Notice that the dict is automatically converted to RSS, thanks to the.rss extension in the URL.



web2py also includes feedparser to read third-party feeds.

Finally, let's add an XML-RPC handler that allows searching the wiki programmatically:

```
1 service=Service(globals())
2
3 @service.xmlrpc
4 def find_by(keyword):
5     "finds pages that contain keyword for XML-RPC"
6     return db(db.page.title.lower().like('%' + keyword + '%'))\
7         .select().as_list()
8
9 def call():
10    "exposes all registered services, including XML-RPC"
11    return service()
```

Here, the handler action simply publishes (via XML-RPC), the functions specified in the list. In this case, `find_by`. `find_by` is not an action (because it takes an argument). It queries the database with `.select()` and then extracts the records as a list with `.response` and returns the list.

Here is an example of how to access the XML-RPC handler from an external Python program.

```

1 >>> import xmlrpclib
2 >>> server = xmlrpclib.ServerProxy(
3     'http://127.0.0.1:8000/mywiki/default/call/xmlrpc')
4 >>> for item in server.find_by('wiki'):
5     print item.created_on, item.title

```

The handler can be accessed from many other programming languages that understand XML-RPC, including C, C++, C# and Java.

3.11 More on admin

The administrative interface provides additional functionality that we briefly review here.

3.11.1 site

This page lists all installed applications. There are two forms at the bottom.

The first of them allows creating a new application by specifying its name.

The second form allows uploading an existing application from either a local file or a remote URL. When you upload an application, you need to specify a name for it. This can be its original name, but does not need to be. This allows installing multiple copies of the same application. You can try, for example, to upload the KPAX content management system from:

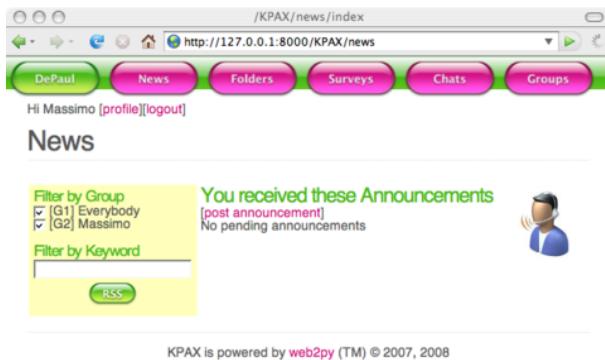
```
1 http://web2py.com/appliances/default/download/app.source.221663266939.tar
```

Uploaded applications can be .tar files (old convention) and .w2p files (new convention). The latter ones are gzipped tar files. They can be uncompressed manually with `tar zxvf [filename]` although this is never necessary.

The screenshot shows two adjacent web forms. The top form is titled 'Create new application' and has a single input field labeled 'create new application:' followed by a 'create' button. The bottom form is titled 'Upload & install packed application' and includes fields for 'upload application:' (with a 'Choose File' button showing 'no file selected'), 'or provide app url:' (with a text input containing 'http://web2py.com/applica'), 'and rename it (required):' (with a text input containing 'kpax'), and 'overwrite installed app' (with an unchecked checkbox). It also features an 'install' button.

Upon successful upload, web2py displays the MD5 checksum of the uploaded file. You can use it to verify that the file was not corrupted during upload. The KPAX name will appear in the list of installed applications.

Click on the KPAX name on admin to get it up and running.



Application files are stored as w2p files (tar gzipped), but you are not intended to tar or untar them manually; web2py does it for you.

For each application the *site* page allows you to:

- Uninstall the application.
- Jump to the *about* page (read below).
- Jump to the *edit* page (read below).
- Jump to the *errors* page (read below).
- Clean up temporary files (sessions, errors, and cache.disk files).
- Pack all. This returns a tar file containing a complete copy of the application. We suggest that you clean up temporary files before packing an application.
- Compile the application. If there are no errors, this option will bytecode-compile all models, controllers and views. Because views can extend and include other views in a tree, before bytecode compilation, the view tree for every controller is collapsed into a single file. The net effect is that a bytecode-compiled application is faster, because there is no more parsing of templates or string substitutions occurring at runtime.

- Pack compiled. This option is only present for bytecode-compiled applications. It allows packing the application without source code for distribution as closed source. Note that Python (as any other programming language) can technically be decompiled; therefore compilation does not provide complete protection of the source code. Nevertheless, decompilation can be difficult and can be illegal.
- Remove compiled. It simply removes the byte-code compiled models, views and controllers from the application. If the application was packaged with source code or designed locally, there is no harm in removing the bytecode-compiled files, and the application will continue to work. If the application was installed from a packed compiled file, then this is not safe, because there is no source code to revert to, and the application will no longer work.

All the functionality available from the web2py admin site page is also accessible programmatically via the API defined in the module gluon/admin.py. Simply open a python shell and import this module.

3.11.2 *about*

The *about* tab allows editing the description of the application and its license. These are written respectively in the ABOUT and LICENSE files in the application folder.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL <http://127.0.0.1:8000/admin/default/about/welcome>. The page title is "about welcome". The header includes a back button, forward button, a search bar with "Google", and a menu bar with links for [web2py™]admin, site, edit, about, errors, versioning, logout, and help. The main content area has two sections: "About welcome" and "[edit]" and "License for welcome" and "[edit]". Both sections have a note: "Write something about this app. Developed with web2py." and "This is a sample license. You can write here anything you want as long as you do not violate web2py copyright, trademark and license.". At the bottom, there is a footer with the text "Powered by web2py (TM) created by Massimo Di Pierro © 2007" and a small logo.

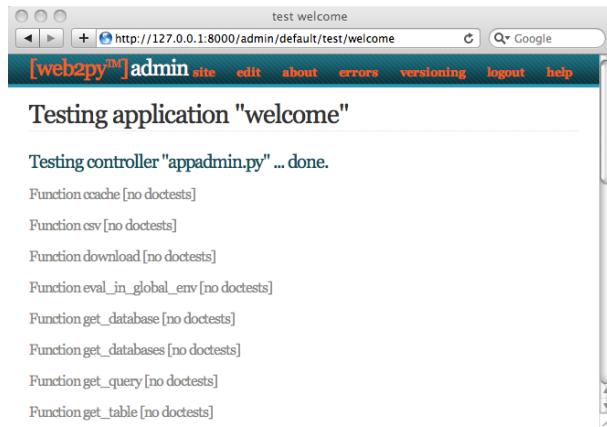
You can use MARKMIN, or gluon.contrib.markdown.WIKI syntax for these files as described in ref. (29).

3.11.3 edit

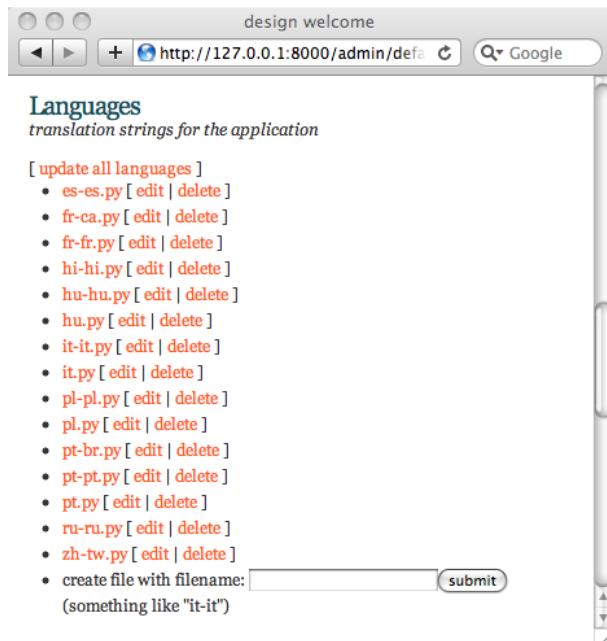
You have used the *edit* page already in this chapter. Here we want to point out a few more functionalities of the *edit* page.

- If you click on any file name, you can see the content of the file with syntax highlighting.
- If you click on edit, you can edit the file via a web interface.
- If you click on delete, you can delete the file (permanently).
- If you click on test, web2py will run tests. Tests are written by the developer using Python doctests, and each function should have its own tests.
- You can add language files, scan the app to discover all strings, and edit string translations via the web interface.
- If the static files are organized in folders and subfolders, the folder hierarchy can be toggled by clicking on a folder name.

The image below shows the output of the test page for the welcome application.



The image below show the languages tab for the welcome application.



The image below shows how to edit a language file, in this case the "it" (Italian) language for the welcome application.



shell

If you click on the "shell" link under the controllers tab in *edit*, web2py will open a web based Python shell and will execute the models for the current application. This allows you to interactively talk to your application.



crontab

Also under the controllers tab in *edit* there is a "crontab" link. By clicking on this link you will be able to edit the web2py crontab file. This follows the same syntax as the unix crontab but does not rely on unix. In fact, it

only requires web2py, and it works on Windows. It allows you to register actions that need to be executed in background at scheduled times. For more information about this, see the next chapter.

3.11.4 errors

When programming web2py, you will inevitably make mistakes and introduce bugs. web2py helps in two ways: 1) it allows you to create tests for every function that can be run in the browser from the *edit* page; and 2) when an error manifests itself, a ticket is issued to the visitor and the error is logged.

Purposely introduce an error in the images application as shown below:

```

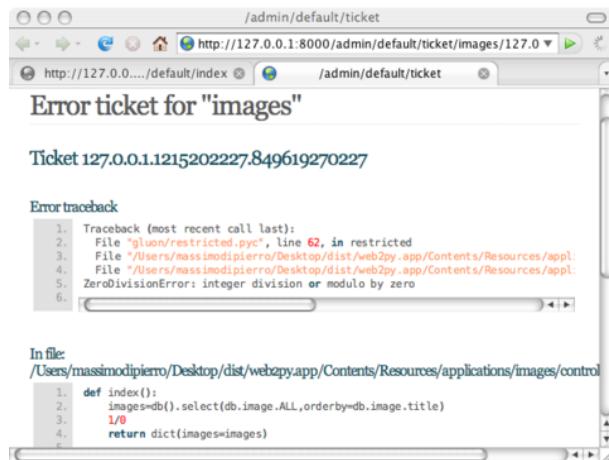
1 def index():
2     images = db().select(db.image.ALL,orderby=db.image.title)
3     1/0
4     return dict(images=images)

```

When you access the index action, you get the following ticket:



Only the administrator can access the ticket:



The ticket shows the traceback, and the content of the file that caused the problem. If the error occurs in a view, web2py shows the view converted from HTML into Python code. This allows to easily identify the logical structure of the file.

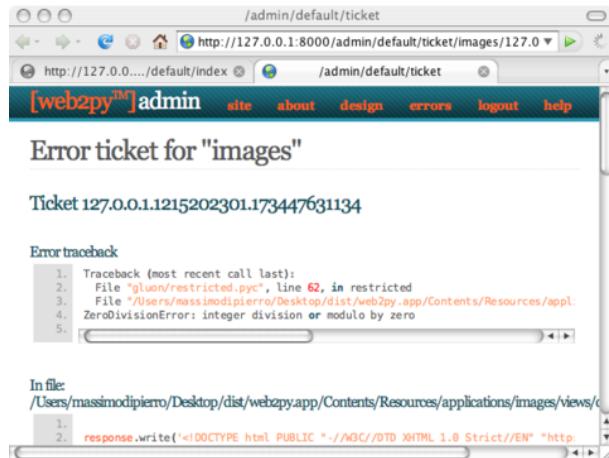
Notice that everywhere **admin** shows syntax-highlighted code (for example, in error reports, web2py keywords are shown in orange). If you click on a web2py keyword, you are redirected to a documentation page about the keyword.

If you fix the divide-by-zero bug in the index action and introduce one in the index view:

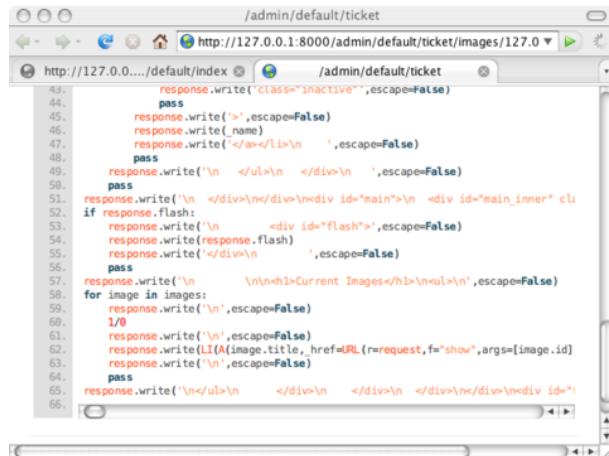
```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2
3 <h1>Current Images</h1>
4 <ul>
5 {{for image in images:}}
6 {{1/0}}
7 {{=LI(A(image.title, _href=URL("show", args=image.id)))}}
8 {{pass}}
9 </ul>
```

you get the following ticket:



Note that web2py has converted the view from HTML into a Python file, and the error described in the ticket refers to the generated Python code and NOT to the original view file. you get the following ticket:



This may seem confusing at first, but in practice it makes debugging easier, because the Python indentation highlights the logical structure of the code that you embedded in the views.

The code is shown at the bottom of the same page.

All tickets are listed under admin in the *errors* page for each application:

Delete Ticket	Date and Time
<input type="checkbox"/> 127.0.0.1.1215202227.849619270227	2008-07-04 15:10:27
<input type="checkbox"/> 127.0.0.1.1215202301.173447631134	2008-07-04 15:11:41

Powered by web2py (TM) created by Massimo Di Pierro © 2007, 2008

3.11.5 Mercurial

If you are running from source and you have the Mercurial version control libraries installed:

```
1 easy_install mercurial
```

then the administrative interface shows one more menu item called "mercurial". It automatically creates a local Mercurial repository for the application. Pressing the "commit" button in the page will commit the current application.

This feature is experimental and will be improved in the future.

3.12 More on appadmin

appadmin is not intended to be exposed to the public. It is designed to help you by providing an easy access to the database. It consists of only two files: a controller "appadmin.py" and a view "appadmin.html" which are used by all actions in the controller.

The **appadmin** controller is relatively small and readable; it provides an example on designing a database interface.

appadmin shows which databases are available and which tables exist in each database. You can insert records and list all records for each table individually. **appadmin** paginates output 100 records at a time.

Once a set of records is selected, the header of the pages changes, allowing you to update or delete the selected records.

To update the records, enter an SQL assignment in the Query string field:

```
1 title = 'test'
```

where string values must be enclosed in single quotes. Multiple fields can be separated by commas.

To delete a record, click the corresponding checkbox to confirm that you are sure.

appadmin can also perform joins if the SQL FILTER contains a SQL condition that involves two or more tables. For example, try:

```
1 db.image.id == db.comment.image_id
```

web2py passes this along to the DAL, and it understands that the query links two tables; hence, both tables are selected with an INNER JOIN. Here is the output:

Rows in table

Query:

Update:

Delete:

The "query" is a condition like "db.table1.field1=='value'". Something like "db.table1.field1==db.table2.field2" results in a SQL JOIN.
Use (...)&(...) for AND, (...)|(...) for OR, and -(...) for NOT to build more complex queries.
"update" is an optional expression like "field1='newvalue'". You cannot update or delete the results of a JOIN

1 selected								
	comment_id	comment.image_id	comment.author	comment.email	comment.body	image_id	image.title	image.file
1	1	Me	you@example.com	picture of th...	1	image of earth	file	

If you click on the number of an id field, you get an edit page for the record with the corresponding id.

If you click on the number of a reference field, you get an edit page for the referenced record.

You cannot update or delete rows selected by a join, because they involve records from multiple tables and this would be ambiguous.

4

The Core

4.1 Command Line Options

It is possible to skip the GUI and start web2py directly from the command line by typing something like:

```
1 python web2py.py -a 'your password' -i 127.0.0.1 -p 8000
```

When web2py starts, it creates a file called "parameters_8000.py" where it stores the hashed password. If you use "<ask>" as the password, web2py prompts you for it.

For additional security, you can start web2py with:

```
1 python web2py.py -a '<recycle>' -i 127.0.0.1 -p 8000
```

In this case web2py reuses the previously stored hashed password. If no password is provided, or if the "parameters_8000.py" file is deleted, the web-based administrative interface is disabled.

On some Unix/Linux systems, if the password is

```
1 <pam_user:some_user>
```

web2py uses the PAM password of the Operating System account of `some_user` to authenticate the administrator, unless blocked by the PAM configuration.

web2py normally runs with CPython (the C implementation of the Python interpreter created by Guido van Rossum), but it can also run with Jython (the Java implementation of the interpreter). The latter possibility allows the use of web2py in the context of a J2EE infrastructure. To use Jython, simply replace "python web2py.py..." with "jython web2py.py". Details about installing Jython, zxJDBC modules required to access the databases can be found in Chapter 12.

The "web2py.py" script can take many command-line arguments specifying the maximum number of threads, enabling of SSL, etc. For a complete list type:

```
1 >>> python web2py.py -h
2 Usage: python web2py.py
3
4 web2py Web Framework startup script. ATTENTION: unless a password
5 is specified (-a 'passwd'), web2py will attempt to run a GUI.
6 In this case command line options are ignored.
7
8 Options:
9   --version           show program's version number and exit
10  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
11  -i IP, --ip=IP        ip address of the server (127.0.0.1)
12  -p PORT, --port=PORT  port of server (8000)
13  -a PASSWORD, --password=PASSWORD
14                           password to be used for administration
15                           use -a "<recycle>" to reuse the last
16                           password
17  -u UPGRADE, --upgrade=UPGRADE
18                           -u yes: upgrade applications and exit
19  -c SSL_CERTIFICATE, --ssl_certificate=SSL_CERTIFICATE
20                           file that contains ssl certificate
21  -k SSL_PRIVATE_KEY, --ssl_private_key=SSL_PRIVATE_KEY
22                           file that contains ssl private key
23  -d PID_FILENAME, --pid_filename=PID_FILENAME
24                           file to store the pid of the server
25  -l LOG_FILENAME, --log_filename=LOG_FILENAME
```

```

26           file to log connections
27 -n NUMTHREADS, --numthreads=NUMTHREADS
28                   number of threads
29 -s SERVER_NAME, --server_name=SERVER_NAME
30             server name for the web server
31 -q REQUEST_QUEUE_SIZE, --request_queue_size=REQUEST_QUEUE_SIZE
32                   max number of queued requests when server unavailable
33 -o TIMEOUT, --timeout=TIMEOUT
34                   timeout for individual request (10 seconds)
35 -z SHUTDOWN_TIMEOUT, --shutdown_timeout=SHUTDOWN_TIMEOUT
36                   timeout on shutdown of server (5 seconds)
37 -f FOLDER, --folder=FOLDER
38                   folder from which to run web2py
39 -v, --verbose      increase --test verbosity
40 -Q, --quiet       disable all output
41 -D DEBUGLEVEL, --debug=DEBUGLEVEL
42                   set debug output level (0-100, 0 means all,
43                   100 means none; default is 30)
44 -S APPNAME, --shell=APPNAME
45                   run web2py in interactive shell or IPython
46                   (if installed) with specified appname
47 -P, --plain        only use plain python shell; should be used
48                   with --shell option
49 -M, --import_models auto import model files; default is False;
50                   should be used with --shell option
51 -R PYTHON_FILE, --run=PYTHON_FILE
52                   run PYTHON_FILE in web2py environment;
53                   should be used with --shell option
54 -T TEST_PATH, --test=TEST_PATH
55                   run doctests in web2py environment;
56                   TEST_PATH like a/c/f (c,f optional)
57 -W WINSERVICE, --winservice=WINSERVICE
58                   -W install|start|stop as Windows service
59 -C, --cron         trigger a cron run manually; usually invoked
60                   from a system crontab
61 -N, --no-cron      do not start cron automatically
62 -L CONFIG, --config=CONFIG
63                   config file
64 -F PROFILER_FILENAME, --profiler=PROFILER_FILENAME
65                   profiler filename
66 -t, --taskbar      use web2py gui and run in taskbar
67                   (system tray)
68 --nogui           text-only, no GUI
69 -A ARGS, --args=ARGS should be followed by a list of arguments to be passed
70                   to script, to be used with -S, -A must be the last
71                   option
72 --interfaces=INTERFACES
73                   allows multiple interfaces to be served

```

Lower-case options are used to configure the web server. The `-L` option tells web2py to read configuration options from a file, `-W` installs web2py as a windows service, while `-S`, `-P` and `-M` options start an interactive Python shell. The `-T` option finds and runs controller doctests in a web2py execution environment. For example, the following example runs doctests from all controllers in the "welcome" application:

```
1 python web2py.py -vT welcome
```

if you run web2py as Windows Service, `-W`, it is not convenient to pass the configuration using command line arguments. For this reason, in the web2py folder there is a sample "options_std.py" configuration file for the internal web server:

```
1 import socket, os
2 ip = '127.0.0.1'
3 port = 8000
4 password = '<recycle>' ### <recycle> means use the previous password
5 pid_filename = 'httpserver.pid'
6 log_filename = 'httpserver.log'
7 ssl_certificate = " ### path to certificate file
8 ssl_private_key = " ### path to private key file
9 numthreads = 10
10 server_name = socket.gethostname()
11 request_queue_size = 5
12 timeout = 10
13 shutdown_timeout = 5
14 folder = os.getcwd()
```

This file contains the web2py defaults. If you edit this file, you need to import it explicitly with the `-L` command-line option. It only works if you run web2py as a Windows Service.

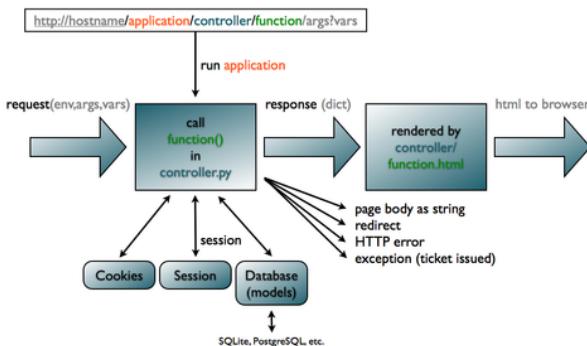
4.2 Dispatching

web2py maps a URL of the form:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/a/c/f.html
```

to the function `f()` in controller "c.py" in application "a". If `f` is not present, web2py defaults to the `index` controller function. If `c` is not present, web2py defaults to the "default.py" controller, and if `a` is not present, web2py defaults to the `init` application. If there is no `init` application, web2py tries to run the `welcome` application. This is shown schematically in the image below:

(The names of the default application, controller and function can be overridden in `routes.py`; see *Default Application, Controller and Function* below.



By default, any new request also creates a new session. In addition, a session cookie is returned to the client browser to keep track of the session.

The extension `.html` is optional; `.html` is assumed as default. The extension determines the extension of the view that renders the output of the controller function `f()`. It allows the same content to be served in multiple formats (`html`, `xml`, `json`, `rss`, etc.).

Functions that take arguments or start with a double underscore are not publicly exposed and can only be called by other functions.

There is an exception made for URLs of the form:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/a/static/filename
```

There is no controller called "static". web2py interprets this as a request for the file called "filename" in the subfolder "static" of the application "a".

When static files are downloaded, web2py does not create a session, nor does it issue a cookie or execute the models. web2py always streams static files in chunks of 1MB, and sends PARTIAL CONTENT when the client sends a RANGE request for a subset of the file. web2py also supports the IF_MODIFIED_SINCE protocol, and does not send the file if it is already stored in the browser's cache and if the file has not changed since that version.

web2py maps GET/POST requests of the form:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/a/c/f.html/x/y/z?p=1&q=2
```

to function `f` in controller "c.py" in application `a`, and it stores the URL parameters in the `request` variable as follows:

```
1 request.args = ['x', 'y', 'z']
```

and:

```
1 request.vars = {'p':1, 'q':2}
```

and:

```
1 request.application = 'a'
2 request.controller = 'c'
3 request.function = 'f'
```

In the above example, both `request.args[i]` and `request.args(i)` can be used to retrieve the *i*-th element of the `request.args`, but while the former raises an exception if the list does not have such an index, the latter returns None in this case.

```
1 request.url
```

stores the full URL of the current request (not including GET variables).

```
1 request.ajax
```

defaults False but it is True if web2py determines that the action was called by an Ajax request.

If the request is an Ajax request and it is initiated by a web2py component, the name of the component can be found in:

```
1 request.cid
```

Components are discussed in detail in Chapter 13.

If the HTTP request is a GET, then `request.env.request_method` is set to "GET"; if it is a POST, `request.env.request_method` is set to "POST". URL query variables are stored in the `request.vars` Storage dictionary; they are also stored in `request.get_vars` (following a GET request) or `request.post_vars` (following a POST request). web2py stores WSGI and web2py environment variables in `request.env`, for example:

```
1 request.env.path_info = 'a/c/f'
```

and HTTP headers into environment variables, for example:

```
1 request.env.http_host = '127.0.0.1:8000'
```

Notice that web2py validates all URLs to prevent directory traversal attacks.

URLs are only allowed to contain alphanumeric characters, underscores, slashes; the args may contain non-consecutive dots. Spaces are replaced by underscores before validation. If the URL syntax is invalid, web2py returns an HTTP 400 error message (47; 48).

If the URL corresponds to a request for a static file, web2py simply reads and returns (streams) the requested file.

If the URL does not request a static file web2py processes the request in the following order:

- Parses cookies.
- Creates an environment in which to execute the function.
- Initializes `request`, `response`, `cache`.
- Opens the existing `session` or creates a new one.
- Executes the models belonging to the requested application.
- Executes the requested controller action function.
- If the function returns a dictionary, executes the associated view.
- On success, commits all open transactions.
- Saves the session.
- Returns an HTTP response.

Notice that the controller and the view are executed in different copies of the same environment; therefore, the view does not see the controller, but it sees the models and it sees the variables returned by the controller action function.

If an exception (other than HTTP) is raised, web2py does the following:

- Stores the traceback in an error file and assigns a ticket number to it.
- Rolls back all open transactions.
- Returns an error page reporting the ticket number.

If the exception is an HTTP exception, this is assumed to be the intended behavior (for example, an HTTP redirect), and all open database transactions are committed. The behavior after that is specified by the HTTP exception itself. The HTTP exception class is not a standard Python exception; it is defined by web2py.

4.3 Libraries

The web2py libraries are exposed to the user applications as global objects. For example (`request`, `response`, `session`, `cache`), classes (`helpers`, `validators`, `DAL API`), and functions (`T` and `redirect`).

These objects are defined in the following core files:

```

1 web2py.py
2 gluon/__init__.py    gluon/highlight.py    gluon/restricted.py  gluon/streamer.py
3 gluon/admin.py        gluon/html.py        gluon/rewrite.py    gluon/template.py
4 gluon/cache.py        gluon/http.py        gluon/rocket.py    gluon/storage.py
5 gluon/cfs.py         gluon/import_all.py  gluon/sanitizer.py gluon/tools.py
6 gluon/compileapp.py  gluon/languages.py   gluon/serializers.py gluon/utils.py
7 gluon/contenttype.py gluon/main.py       gluon/settings.py  gluon/validators.py
8 gluon/dal.py          gluon/myregex.py   gluon/shell.py    gluon/widget.py
9 gluon/decoder.py     gluon/newcron.py   gluon/sql.py      gluon/winservice.py
10 gluon/fileutils.py   gluon/portalocker.py gluon/sqlhtml.py  gluon/xmlrpc.py
11 gluon/globals.py    gluon/reserved_sql_keywords.py

```

The tar gzipped scaffolding app that ship with web2py is

```
1 welcome.w2p
```

It is created upon installation and overwritten on upgrade.

The first time you start web2py, two new folders are created: `deposit` and `applications`. The "welcome" app is zipped into a "welcome.w2p" file to be used as scaffolding app. The `deposit` folder is used as temporary storage for installing and uninstalling applications.

web2py unit-tests are in

```
1 gluon/tests/
```

There are handlers for connecting with various web servers:

```

1 cghandler.py
2 gaehandler.py

```

```

3 fcgihandler.py
4 wsgihandler.py
5 modpythonhandler.py
6 gluon/contrib/gateways/__init__.py
7 gluon/contrib/gateways/fcgi.py

```

(fcgi.py was developed by Allan Saddi)

There are two example files:

```

1 options_std.py
2 routes.example.py

```

The former is an optional configuration file that can be passed to web2py.py with the -L option. The second is an example of a URL mapping file. It is loaded automatically when renamed "routes.py".

The files

```

1 app.yaml
2 index.yaml

```

are configuration files necessary for deployment on the Google App Engine. You probably do not need to modify them, but you can read more about them on the Google Documentation pages.

There are also additional libraries, usually developed by a third party:

feedparser (28) by Mark Pilgrim for reading RSS and Atom feeds:

```

1 gluon/contrib/__init__.py
2 gluon/contrib/feedparser.py

```

markdown2 (29) by Trent Mick for wiki markup:

```

1 gluon/contrib/markdown/__init__.py
2 gluon/contrib/markdown/markdown2.py

```

markmin markup:

```
1 gluon/contrib/markmin.py
```

pysimplesoap is a lightweight SOAP server implementation created by Mariano Reingart:

```
1 gluon/contrib/pysimplesoap/
```

memcache (30) Python API by Evan Martin:

```
1 gluon/contrib/memcache/__init__.py  
2 gluon/contrib/memcache.py
```

gql, a port of the DAL to the Google App Engine:

```
1 gluon/contrib/gql.py
```

memdb, a port of the DAL on top of memcache:

```
1 gluon/contrib/memdb.py
```

gae_memcache is an API to use memcache on the Google App Engine:

```
1 gluon/contrib/gae_memcache.py
```

pyrtf (26) for generating Rich Text Format (RTF) documents, developed by Simon Cusack and revised by Grant Edwards:

```
1 gluon/contrib/pyrtf  
2 gluon/contrib/pyrtf/__init__.py  
3 gluon/contrib/pyrtf/Constants.py  
4 gluon/contrib/pyrtf/Elements.py  
5 gluon/contrib/pyrtf/PropertySets.py  
6 gluon/contrib/pyrtf/README  
7 gluon/contrib/pyrtf/Renderer.py  
8 gluon/contrib/pyrtf/Styles.py
```

PyRSS2Gen (27) developed by Dalke Scientific Software, to generate RSS feeds:

```
1 gluon/contrib/rss2.py
```

simplejson (25) by Bob Ippolito, the standard library for parsing and writing JSON objects:

```
1 gluon/contrib/simplejson/__init__.py
2 gluon/contrib/simplejson/decoder.py
3 gluon/contrib/simplejson/encoder.py
4 gluon/contrib/simplejson/jsonfilter.py
5 gluon/contrib/simplejson/scanner.py
```

AuthorizeNet (93) provides API to accept credit card payments via Authorize.net network

```
1 gluon/contrib/AuthorizeNet.py
```

PAM (72) authentication API created by Chris AtLee:

```
1 gluon/contrib/pam.py
```

A Bayesian classifier to populate the database with dummy data for testing purposes:

```
1 gluon/contrib/populate.py
```

A file that allows interaction with the taskbar in windows, when web2py is running as a service:

```
1 gluon/contrib/taskbar_widget.py
```

Optional **login_methods** and **login_forms** to be used for authentication:

```
1 gluon/contrib/login_methods/__init__.py
2 gluon/contrib/login_methods/basic_auth.py
3 gluon/contrib/login_methods/cas_auth.py
4 gluon/contrib/login_methods/email_auth.py
5 gluon/contrib/login_methods/extended_login_form.py
6 gluon/contrib/login_methods/gae_google_account.py
7 gluon/contrib/login_methods/ldap_auth.py
8 gluon/contrib/login_methods/linkedin_account.py
9 gluon/contrib/login_methods/oauth20_account.py
10 gluon/contrib/login_methods/openid_auth.py
11 gluon/contrib/login_methods/pam_auth.py
12 gluon/contrib/login_methods/rpx_account.py
```

web2py also contains a folder with useful scripts:

```

1 scripts/setup-web2py-fedora.sh
2 scripts/setup-web2py-ubuntu.sh
3 scripts/cleancss.py
4 scripts/cleanhtml.py
5 scripts/contentparser.py
6 scripts/repair.py
7 scripts/sessions2trash.py
8 scripts/sync_languages.py
9 scripts/tickets2db.py
10 ...

```

The first two are particularly useful because they attempt a complete installation and setup of a web2py production environment from scratch. These are discussed in Chapter 12, but they are more or less self-documenting.

Finally web2py includes these files required to build the binary distributions.

```

1 Makefile
2 setup_exe.py
3 setup_app.py

```

These are setup scripts for **py2exe** and **py2app** respectively and they are only required to build the binary distributions of web2py. YOU SHOULD NEVER NEED TO RUN THEM.

In summary, web2py libraries provide the following functionality:

- Map URLs into function calls.
- Handle passing and returning parameters via HTTP.
- Perform validation of those parameters.
- Protect the applications from most security issues.
- Handle data persistence (database, session, cache, cookies).
- Perform string translations for various supported languages.
- Generate HTML programmatically (e.g. from database tables).
- Generate SQL via a Database Abstraction Layer (DAL).

- Generate Rich Text Format (RTF) output.
- Generate Comma-Separated Value (CSV) output from database tables.
- Generate Really Simple Syndication (RSS) feeds.
- Generate JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) serialization strings for Ajax.
- Translate wiki markup (Markdown) to HTML.
- Expose XML-RPC web services.
- Upload and download large files via streaming.

web2py applications contain additional files, particularly third-party JavaScript libraries, such as jQuery, calendar, EditArea and nicEdit. Their authors are acknowledged in the files themselves.

4.4 *Applications*

Applications developed in web2py are composed of the following parts:

- **models** describe a representation of the data as database tables and relations between tables.
- **controllers** describe the application logic and workflow.
- **views** describe how data should be presented to the user using HTML and JavaScript.
- **languages** describe how to translate strings in the application into various supported languages.
- **static files** do not require processing (e.g. images, CSS stylesheets, etc).
- **ABOUT** and **README** documents are self-explanatory.
- **errors** store error reports generated by the application.
- **sessions** store information related to each particular user.
- **databases** store SQLite databases and additional table information.

- **cache** store cached application items.
- **modules** are other optional Python modules.
- **private** files are accessed by the controllers but not directly by the developer.
- **uploads** files are accessed by the models but not directly by the developer (e.g., files uploaded by users of the application).
- **tests** is a directory for storing test scripts, fixtures and mocks.

Models, views, controllers, languages, and static files are accessible via the web administration [design] interface. ABOUT, README, and errors are also accessible via the administration interface through the corresponding menu items. Sessions, cache, modules and private files are accessible to the applications but not via the administration interface.

Everything is neatly organized in a clear directory structure that is replicated for every installed web2py application, although the user never needs to access the filesystem directly:

```

1 __init__.py  ABOUT      LICENSE   models   views
2 controllers  modules    private    tests    cron
3 cache        errors     upload    sessions static

```

"`__init__.py`" is an empty file which is required in order to allow Python (and web2py) to import the modules in the `modules` directory.

Notice that the **admin** application simply provides a web interface to web2py applications on the server file system. web2py applications can also be created and developed from the command-line; you don't have to use the browser **admin** interface. A new application can be created manually by replicating the above directory structure under,e.g., "applications/newapp/" (or simply untar the `welcome.w2p` file into your new application directory). Application files can also be created and edited from the command-line without having to use the web **admin** interface.

4.5 API

Models, controllers, and views are executed in an environment where the following objects are already imported for us:

Global Objects:

```
1 request, response, session, cache
```

Navigation:

```
1 redirect, HTTP
```

Internationalization:

```
1 T
```

Helpers:

```
1 XML, URL, BEAUTIFY
2
3 A, B, BEAUTIFY, BODY, BR, CENTER, CODE, DIV, EM, EMBED,
4 FIELDSET, FORM, H1, H2, H3, H4, H5, H6, HEAD, HR, HTML,
5 I, IFRAME, IMG, INPUT, LABEL, LEGEND, LI, LINK, OL, UL,
6 MARKMIN, MENU, META, OBJECT, ON, OPTION, P, PRE, SCRIPT,
7 OPTGROUP, SELECT, SPAN, STYLE, TABLE, TAG, TD, TEXTAREA,
8 TH, THEAD, TBODY, TFOOT, TITLE, TR, TT, URL, XHTML,
9 xmlescape, embed64
```

Validators:

```
1 CLEANUP, CRYPT, IS_ALPHANUMERIC, IS_DATE_IN_RANGE, IS_DATE,
2 IS_DATETIME_IN_RANGE, IS_DATETIME, IS_DECIMAL_IN_RANGE,
3 IS_EMAIL, IS_EMPTY_OR, IS_EXPR, IS_FLOAT_IN_RANGE, IS_IMAGE,
4 IS_IN_DB, IS_IN_SET, IS_INT_IN_RANGE, IS_IPV4, IS_LENGTH,
5 IS_LIST_OF, IS_LOWER, IS_MATCH, IS_EQUAL_TO, IS_NOT_EMPTY,
6 IS_NOT_IN_DB, IS_NULL_OR, IS_SLUG, IS_STRONG, IS_TIME,
7 IS_UPLOAD_FILENAME, IS_UPPER, IS_URL
```

Database:

```
1 DAL, Field
```

For backward compatibility `SQLDB=DAL` and `SQLField=Field`. We encourage you to use the new syntax `DAL` and `Field`, instead of the old syntax.

Other objects and modules are defined in the libraries, but they are not automatically imported since they are not used as often.

The core API entities in the web2py execution environment are `request`, `response`, `session`, `cache`, `URL`, `HTTP`, `redirect` and `T` and are discussed below.

A few objects and functions, including **Auth**, **Crud** and **Service**, are defined in "gluon/tools.py" and they need to be imported as necessary:

```
1 from gluon.tools import Auth, Crud, Service
```

4.6 request

The `request` object is an instance of the ubiquitous web2py class that is called `gluon.storage.Storage`, which extends the Python `dict` class. It is basically a dictionary, but the item values can also be accessed as attributes:

```
1 request.vars
```

is the same as:

```
1 request['vars']
```

Unlike a dictionary, if an attribute (or key) does not exist, it does not raise an exception. Instead, it returns `None`. `request` has the following items/attributes, some of which are also an instance of the `Storage` class:

- **request.cookies**: a `Cookie.SimpleCookie()` object containing the cookies passed with the HTTP request. It acts like a dictionary of cookies. Each cookie is a `Morsel` object.

- **request.env**: a Storage object containing the environment variables passed to the controller, including HTTP header variables from the HTTP request and standard WSGI parameters. The environment variables are all converted to lower case, and dots are converted to underscores for easier memorization.
- **request.application**: the name of the requested application (parsed from `request.env.path_info`).
- **request.controller**: the name of the requested controller (parsed from the `request.env.path_info`).
- **request.function**: the name of the requested function (parsed from the `request.env.path_info`).
- **request.extension**: the extension of the requested action. It defaults to "html". If the controller function returns a dictionary and does not specify a view, this is used to determine the extension of the view file that will render the dictionary (parsed from the `request.env.path_info`).
- **request.folder**: the application directory. For example if the application is "welcome", `request.folder` is set to the absolute path "/path/to/welcome". In your programs, you should always use this variable and the `os.path.join` function to build paths to the files you need to access. Although web2py always uses absolute paths, it is a good rule never to explicitly change the current working folder (whatever that is) since this is not a thread-safe practice.
- **request.now**: a `datetime.datetime` object storing the time-stamp of the current request.
- **request.args**: A list of the URL path components following the controller function name; equivalent to `request.env.path_info.split('/')[3:]`
- **request.vars**: a `gluon.storage.Storage` object containing the HTTP GET and HTTP POST query variables.
- **request.get_vars**: a `gluon.storage.Storage` object containing only the HTTP GET query variables.
- **request.post_vars**: a `gluon.storage.Storage` object containing only the HTTP POST query variables.

- **request.client**: The ip address of the client as determined by, if present, `request.env.http_x_forwarded_for` or by `request.env.remote_addr` otherwise. While this is useful it should not be trusted because the `http_x_forwarded_for` can be spoofed.
- **request.body**: a read-only file stream that contains the body of the HTTP request. This is automatically parsed to get the `request.post_vars` and then rewinded. It can be read with `request.body.read()`.
- **request.ajax** is True if the function is being called via an Ajax request.
- **request.cid** is the `id` of the component that generated the Ajax request (if any). You can read more about components in Chapter 13.
- **request.wsgi** a hook that allows to call third party WSGI applications from inside actions.

As an example, the following call on a typical system:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/examples/default/status/x/y/z?p=1&q=2
```

results in the following table:

variable	value
request.application	examples
request.controller	default
request.function	index
request.extension	html
request.view	status
request.folder	applications/examples/
request.args	[‘x’, ‘y’, ‘z’]
request.vars	<Storage {‘p’: 1, ‘q’: 2}>
request.get_vars	<Storage {‘p’: 1, ‘q’: 2}>
request.post_vars	<Storage {}>
request.cid	None
request.wsgi	hook
request.env.content_length	0
request.env.content_type	
request.env.http_accept	text/xml;text/html;
request.env.http_accept_encoding	gzip, deflate
request.env.http_accept_language	en
request.env.http_cookie	session_id_examples=127.0.0.1.119725
request.env.http_host	127.0.0.1:8000
request.env.http_max_forwards	10
request.env.http_referer	http://web2py.com/
request.env.http_user_agent	Mozilla/5.0
request.env.http_via	1.1 web2py.com
request.env.http_x_forwarded_for	76.224.34.5
request.env.http_x_forwarded_host	web2py.com
request.env.http_x_forwarded_server	127.0.0.1
request.env.path_info	/examples/simple_examples/status
request.env.query_string	remote_addr:127.0.0.1
request.env.request_method	GET
request.env.script_name	
request.env.server_name	127.0.0.1
request.env.server_port	8000
request.env.server_protocol	HTTP/1.1
request.env.web2py_path	/Users/mdipierro/web2py
request.env.web2py_version	Version 1.83.1
request.env.web2py_runtime_gae	(optional, defined only if GAE detected)
request.env.wsgi_errors	<open file, mode ‘w’ at >
request.env.wsgi_input	
request.env.wsgi_multiprocess	False
request.env.wsgi_multithread	True
request.env.wsgi_run_once	False
request.env.wsgi_url_scheme	http
request.env.wsgi_version	10

Which environment variables are actually defined depends on the web server. Here we are assuming the built-in Rocket wsgi server. The set of variables is

not much different when using the Apache web server.

The `request.env.http_*` variables are parsed from the request HTTP header.

The `request.env.web2py_*` variables. These are not parsed from the web server environment, but are created by web2py in case your applications need to know about the web2py location and version, and whether it is running on the Google App Engine (because specific optimizations may be necessary).

Also notice the `request.env.wsgi_*` variables. They are specific to the wsgi adaptor.

4.7 response

`response` is another instance of the `Storage` class. It contains the following:

response.body: a `StringIO` object into which web2py writes the output page body. NEVER CHANGE THIS VARIABLE.

response.cookies: similar to `request.cookies`, but while the latter contains the cookies sent from the client to the server, the former contains cookies sent by the server to the client. The session cookie is handled automatically.

response.download(request, db): a method used to implement the controller function that allows downloading of uploaded files.

response.files: a list of CSS and JS required by the page. They will automatically be linked in the header of the standard "layout.html". To include a new CSS or JS file, just append it to this list. It will handle duplicates. The order is significative.

response.flash: optional parameter that may be included in the views. Normally used to notify the user about something that happened.

response.headers: a dict for HTTP response headers.

response.menu: optional parameter that may be included in the views, normally used to pass a navigation menu tree to the view. It can be rendered by the MENU helper.

response.meta: a storage object (like a dict) that contains optional meta storage information like `response.meta.author`, `response.meta.description`, and/or `response.meta.keywords`. The content of the meta variable is automatically placed in the proper META tag by the code in "web2py_ajax.html" with is included by default by "views/layout.html".

response.postprocessing: this is a list of functions, empty by default. These functions are used to filter the response object at the output of an action, before the output is rendered by the view. It can be used to implement support for other template languages.

response.render(view, vars): a method used to call the view explicitly inside the controller. `view` is an optional parameter which is the name of the view file, `vars` is a dictionary of named values passed to the view.

response.session_file: file stream containing the session.

response.session_file_name: name of the file where the session will be saved.

response.session_id: the id of the current session. It is determined automatically. NEVER CHANGE THIS VARIABLE.

response.session_id_name: the name of the session cookie for this application. NEVER CHANGE THIS VARIABLE.

response.status: the HTTP status code integer to be passed to the response. Default is 200 (OK).

response.stream(file, chunk_size): when a controller returns it, web2py streams the file content back to the client in blocks of size `chunk_size`.

response.subtitle: optional parameter that may be included in the views. It should contain the subtitle of the page.

response.title: optional parameter that may be included in the views. It should contain the title of the page and should be rendered by the HTML title TAG in the header.

response._vars: this variable is accessible only in a view, not in the action. It contains the value returned by the action to the view.

response.view: the name of the view template that must render the page. This is set by default to:

```
1 "%s/%s.%s" % (request.controller, request.function, request.extension)
```

or, if the above file cannot be located, to

```
1 "generic.%s" % (request.extension)
```

Change the value of this variable to modify the view file associated with a particular action.

response.xmlrpc(request, methods): when a controller returns it, this function exposes the methods via XML-RPC (46). This function is deprecated since a better mechanism is available and described in Chapter 9.

response.write(text): a method to write text into the output page body.

response.js can contain Javascript Code. This code will be executed if and only if the response is received by a web2py component as discussed in Chapter 13.

Since **response** is a `gluon.storage.Storage` object it can be used to store other attributes that you may want to pass to the view. While there is no technical restriction our recommendation is to store only variables that are to be rendered by all pages in the overall layout ("layout.html").

Anyway, we strongly suggest to stick to the variables listed here:

```

1 response.title
2 response.subtitle
3 response.flash
4 response.menu
5 response.meta.author
6 response.meta.description
7 response.meta.keywords
8 response.meta.*
```

because this will make it easier for you to replace the standard "layout.html" file that comes with web2py with another layout file, one that uses the same set of variables.

Old versions of web2py user `response.author` instead of `response.meta.author` and similar for the other meta attributes.

4.8 session

`session` is another instance of the `Storage` class. Whatever is stored into `session` for example:

```

1 session.myvariable = "hello"
```

can be retrieved at a later time:

```

1 a = session.myvariable
```

as long as the code is executed within the same session by the same user (provided the user has not deleted session cookies and the session did not

expire). Because `session` is a `Storage` object, trying to access an attribute/key that has not been set does not raise an exception; it returns `None` instead.

The session object has two important methods. One is `forget`:

```
1 session.forget()
```

It tells web2py not to save the session. This should be used in those controllers whose actions are called often and do not need to track user activity.

The other method is `connect`:

```
1 session.connect(request, response, db, masterapp=None)
```

where `db` is the name of an open database connection (as returned by the DAL). It tells web2py that you want to store the sessions in the database and not on the filesystem. web2py creates a table:

```
1 db.define_table('web2py_session',
2                 Field('locked', 'boolean', default=False),
3                 Field('client_ip'),
4                 Field('created_datetime', 'datetime', default=now),
5                 Field('modified_datetime', 'datetime'),
6                 Field('unique_key'),
7                 Field('session_data', 'text'))
```

and stores cPickled sessions in the `session_data` field.

The option `masterapp=None`, by default, tells web2py to try to retrieve an existing session for the application with name in `request.application`, in the running application.

If you want two or more applications to share sessions, set `masterapp` to the name of the master application.

You can check the state of your application at any time by printing the `request`, `session` and `response` system variables. One way to do it is to create a dedicated action:

```

1 def status():
2     return dict(request=request, session=session, response=response)

```

4.9 cache

cache a global object also available in the web2py execution environment. It has two attributes:

- **cache.ram**: the application cache in main memory.
- **cache.disk**: the application cache on disk.

cache is callable, this allows it to be used as a decorator for caching actions and views.

The following example caches the `time.ctime()` function in RAM:

```

1 def cache_in_ram():
2     import time
3     t = cache.ram('time', lambda: time.ctime(), time_expire=5)
4     return dict(time=t, link=A('click me', _href=request.url))

```

The output of `lambda: time.ctime()` is cached in RAM for 5 seconds. The string '`time`' is used as cache key.

The following example caches the `time.ctime()` function on disk:

```

1 def cache_on_disk():
2     import time
3     t = cache.disk('time', lambda: time.ctime(), time_expire=5)
4     return dict(time=t, link=A('click me', _href=request.url))

```

The output of `lambda: time.ctime()` is cached on disk (using the shelve module) for 5 seconds.

The next example caches the `time.ctime()` function to both RAM and disk:

```

1 def cache_in_ram_and_disk():
2     import time
3     t = cache.ram('time', lambda: cache.disk('time',
4                                         lambda: time.ctime(), time_expire=5),
5                                         time_expire=5)
6     return dict(time=t, link=A('click me', _href=request.url))

```

The output of `lambda: time.ctime()` is cached on disk (using the `shelve` module) and then in RAM for 5 seconds. `web2py` looks in RAM first and if not there it looks on disk. If it is not in RAM or on disk, `lambda: time.ctime()` is executed and the cache is updated. This technique is useful in a multiprocess environment. The two times do not have to be the same.

The following example is caching in RAM the output of the controller function (but not the view):

```

1 @cache(request.env.path_info, time_expire=5, cache_model=cache.ram)
2 def cache_controller_in_ram():
3     import time
4     t = time.ctime()
5     return dict(time=t, link=A('click me', _href=request.url))

```

The dictionary returned by `cache_controller_in_ram` is cached in RAM for 5 seconds. Note that the result of a database select cannot be cached without first being serialized. A better way is to cache the database directly using the `select` method `cache` argument.

The following example is caching the output of the controller function on disk (but not the view):

```

1 @cache(request.env.path_info, time_expire=5, cache_model=cache.disk)
2 def cache_controller_on_disk():
3     import time
4     t = time.ctime()
5     return dict(time=t, link=A('click to reload',
6                               _href=request.url))

```

The dictionary returned by `cache_controller_on_disk` is cached on disk for 5 seconds. Remember that `web2py` cannot cache a dictionary that contains un-pickleable objects.

It is also possible to cache the view. The trick is to render the view in the controller function, so that the controller returns a string. This is done by returning `response.render(d)` where `d` is the dictionary we intended to pass to the view:

The `time_expire` can be set to `0` to force a cache refresh and to `None` to prevent the content from ever expiring.

You can clear one or more cache variables with

```
1 cache.ram.clear(regex='...')
```

where `regex` is a regular expression matching all the keys you want removed from the cache.

The following example caches the output of the controller function in RAM (including the rendered view):

```
1 @cache(request.env.path_info, time_expire=5, cache_model=cache.ram)
2 def cache_controller_and_view():
3     import time
4     t = time.ctime()
5     d = dict(time=t, link=A('click to reload', _href=request.url))
6     return response.render(d)
```

`response.render(d)` returns the rendered view as a string which is now cached for 5 seconds. This is the best and fastest way of caching.

It is also possible to define other caching mechanisms such as memcache. Memcache is available via `gluon.contrib.memcache` and is discussed in more details in Chapter 11.

4.10 URL

The `URL` function is one of the most important functions in web2py. It generates internal URL paths for the actions and the static files.

Here is an example:

```
1 URL('f')
```

is mapped into

```
1 /[application]/[controller]/f
```

Notice that the output of the `URL` function depends on the name of the current application, the calling controller and other parameters. web2py supports URL mapping and reverse URL mapping. URL mapping allows to redefine the format of external URLs. If you use the `URL` function to generate all the internal URLs, then additions or changes to URL mappings will prevent broken links within the web2py application.

You can pass additional parameters to the `URL` function, i.e., extra terms in the URL path (`args`) and URL query variables (`vars`):

```
1 URL('f', args=['x', 'y'], vars=dict(z='t'))
```

is mapped into

```
1 /[application]/[controller]/f/x/y?z=t
```

The `args` attributes are automatically parsed, decoded, and finally stored in `request.args` by web2py. Similarly, the `vars` are parsed, decoded, and then stored in `request.vars`. `args` and `vars` provide the basic mechanism by which web2py exchanges information with the client's browser.

If `args` contains only one element, there is no need to pass it in a list.

You can also use the `URL` function to generate URLs to actions in other controllers and other applications:

```
1 URL('a', 'c', 'f', args=['x', 'y'], vars=dict(z='t'))
```

is mapped into

```
1 /a/c/f/x/y?z=t
```

It is also possible to specify application, controller and function using named arguments:

```
1 URL(a='a', c='c', f='f')
```

If the application name a is missing the current app is assumed.

```
1 URL('c', 'f')
```

If the controller name is missing, the current one is assumed.

```
1 URL('f')
```

Instead of passing the name of a controller function it is also possible to pass the function itself

```
1 URL(f)
```

For the reasons mentioned above, you should always use the `URL` function to generate URLs of static files for your applications. Static files are stored in the application's `static` subfolder (that's where they go when uploaded using the administrative interface). web2py provides a virtual '`static`' controller whose job is to retrieve files from the `static` subfolder, determine their content-type, and stream the file to the client. The following example generates the URL for the static file "`image.png`":

```
1 URL('static', 'image.png')
```

is mapped into

```
1 /[application]/static/image.png
```

You do not need to encode/escape the `args` and `vars` arguments; this is done automatically for you.

By default, the extension corresponding to the current request (`request.extension`) is appended to the function, unless `request.extension` is `html`, the default. This can be overridden by explicitly including an extension as part of the function name `URL(f='name.ext')` or with the `extension` argument:

```
1 URL(..., extension='css')
```

The current extension can be explicitly suppressed:

```
1 URL(..., extension=False)
```

4.11 HTTP and redirect

`web2py` defines only one new exception called `HTTP`. This exception can be raised anywhere in a model, a controller, or a view with the command:

```
1 raise HTTP(400, "my message")
```

It causes the control flow to jump away from the user's code, back to `web2py`, and return an HTTP response like:

```
1 HTTP/1.1 400 BAD REQUEST
2 Date: Sat, 05 Jul 2008 19:36:22 GMT
3 Server: Rocket WSGI Server
4 Content-Type: text/html
5 Via: 1.1 127.0.0.1:8000
6 Connection: close
7 Transfer-Encoding: chunked
8
9 my message
```

The first argument of `HTTP` is the HTTP status code. The second argument is the string that will be returned as the body of the response. Additional optional named arguments are used to build the response HTTP header. For example:

```
1 raise HTTP(400, 'my message', test='hello')
```

generates:

```

1 HTTP/1.1 400 BAD REQUEST
2 Date: Sat, 05 Jul 2008 19:36:22 GMT
3 Server: Rocket WSGI Server
4 Content-Type: text/html
5 Via: 1.1 127.0.0.1:8000
6 Connection: close
7 Transfer-Encoding: chunked
8 test: hello
9
10 my message

```

If you do not want to commit the open database transaction, rollback before raising the exception.

Any exception other than `HTTP` causes web2py to roll back any open database transaction, log the error traceback, issue a ticket to the visitor, and return a standard error page.

This means that only `HTTP` can be used for cross-page control flow. Other exceptions must be caught by the application, otherwise they are ticketed by web2py.

The command:

```
1 redirect('http://www.web2py.com')
```

is simply a shortcut for:

```

1 raise HTTP(303,
2     'You are being redirected <a href="%s">here</a>' % location,
3     Location='http://www.web2py.com')

```

The named arguments of the `HTTP` initializer method are translated into HTTP header directives, in this case, the redirection target location. `redirect` takes an optional second argument, which is the HTTP status code for the redirection (303 by default). Change this number to 307 for a temporary redirect or to 301 for a permanent redirect.

The most common way to user redirect is to redirect to other pages in the same app and (optionally) pass parameters:

```
1 redirect(URL('index', args=(1,2,3), vars=dict(a='b')))
```

4.12 T and Internationalization

The object T is the language translator. It constitutes a single global instance of the web2py class gluon.language.translator. All string constants (and only string constants) should be marked by T, for example:

```
1 a = T("hello world")
```

Strings that are marked with T are identified by web2py as needing language translation and they will be translated when the code (in the model, controller, or view) is executed. If the string to be translated is not a constant but a variable, it will be added to the translation file at runtime (except on GAE) to be translated later.

The T object can also contain interpolated variables, for example:

```
1 a = T("hello %(name)s", dict(name="Massimo"))
```

The first string is translated according to the requested language file and the name variable is replaced independently of the language.

Concatenating translation strings is not a good idea; this is why web2py does not allow you to do:

```
1 T("blah ") + name + T(" blah") # invalid!
```

but it does allow:

```
1 T("blah %(name)s blah", dict(name='Tim'))
```

or the alternative syntax

```
1 T("blah %(name)s blah") % dict(name='Tim')
```

In both cases the translation occurs before the variable name is substituted in the "%(name)s" slot. The following instead should NOT BE USED:

```
1 T("blah %(name)s blah" % dict(name='Tim'))
```

because translation would occur after substitution.

The requested language is determined by the "Accept-Language" field in the HTTP header, but this selection can be overwritten programmatically by requesting a specific file, for example:

```
1 T.force('it-it')
```

which reads the "languages/it-it.py" language file. Language files can be created and edited via the administrative interface.

Normally, string translation is evaluated lazily when the view is rendered; hence, the translator `force` method should not be called inside a view.

It is possible to disable lazy evaluation via

```
1 T.lazy = False
```

In this way, strings are translated immediately by the `T` operator based on the currently accepted or forced language.

A common issue is the following. The original application is in English. Suppose that there is a translation file (for example Italian, "it-it.py") and the HTTP client declares that it accepts both English (en) and Italian (it-it) in that order. The following unwanted situation occurs: web2py does not know the default is written in English (en). Therefore, it prefers translating everything into Italian (it-it) because it only found the Italian translation file. If it had not found the "it-it.py" file, it would have used the default language strings (English).

There are two solutions for this problem: create a translation language for English, which would be redundant and unnecessary, or better, tell web2py which languages should use the default language strings (the strings coded into the application). This can be done with:

```
1 T.set_current_language('en', 'en-en')
```

It stores in `T.current_languages` a list of languages that do not require translation and forces a reload of the language files.

Notice that "it" and "it-it" are different languages from the point of view of web2py. To support both of them, one would need two translation files, always lower case. The same is true for all other languages.

The currently accepted language is stored in

```
1 T.accepted_language
```

Mind that `T(...)` does not just translate strings but can also translated variables:

```
1 >>> a="test"
2 >>> print T(a)
```

In this case the word "test" is translated but, if not found and if the filesystem is writable, it will add it to the list of words to be translated in the language file.

4.13 Cookies

web2py uses the Python cookies modules for handling cookies.

Cookies from the browser are in `request.cookies` and cookies sent by the server are in `response.cookies`.

You can set a cookie as follows:

```
1 response.cookies['mycookie'] = 'somevalue'
2 response.cookies['mycookie']['expires'] = 24 * 3600
3 response.cookies['mycookie']['path'] = '/'
```

The second line tells the browser to keep the cookie for 24 hours. The third line tells the browser to send the cookie back to any application (URL path) at the current domain.

The cookie can be made secure with:

```
1 response.cookies['mycookie']['secure'] = True
```

A secure cookie is only sent back over HTTPS and not over HTTP.

The cookie can be retrieved with:

```
1 if request.cookies.has_key('mycookie'):
2     value = request.cookies['mycookie'].value
```

Unless sessions are disabled, web2py, under the hood, sets the following cookie and uses it to handle sessions:

```
1 response.cookies[response.session_id_name] = response.session_id
2 response.cookies[response.session_id_name]['path'] = "/"
```

4.14 Application `init`

When you deploy web2py, you will want to set a default application, i.e., the application that starts when there is an empty path in the URL, as in:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000
```

By default, when confronted with an empty path, web2py looks for an application called `init`. If there is no init application it looks for an application called `welcome`.

The name of the default application can be changed from `init` to another name by setting `default_application` in `routes.py`:

```
1 default_application = "myapp"
```

Note: `default_application` first appeared in web2py version 1.83.

Here are three ways to set the default application:

- Call your default application "init".
- Set `default_application` to your application's name in `routes.py`
- Make a symbolic link from "applications/init" to your application's folder.
- Use URL rewrite as discussed in the next section.

4.15 URL Rewrite

web2py has the ability to rewrite the URL path of incoming requests prior to calling the controller action (URL mapping), and conversely, web2py can rewrite the URL path generated by the `URL` function (reverse URL mapping). One reason to do this is for handling legacy URLs, another is to simplify paths and make them shorter.

To use this feature, create a new file in the "web2py" folder called "routes.py" and define two lists (or tuples) of 2-tuples `routes_in` and `routes_out`. Each tuple contains two elements: the pattern to be replaced and the string that replaces it. For example:

```
1 routes_in = (
2     ('/testme', '/examples/default/index'),
3 )
4 routes_out = (
5     ('/examples/default/index', '/testme'),
6 )
```

With these routes, the URL:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/testme
```

is mapped into:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/examples/default/index
```

To the visitor, all links to the page URL looks like `/testme`.

The patterns have the same syntax as Python regular expressions. For example:

```
1 ('.*\.php', '/init/default/index'),
```

maps all URLs ending into ".php" to the index page.

Sometimes you want to get rid of the application prefix from the URLs because you plan to expose only one application. This can be achieved with:

```
1 routes_in = (
2   ('/(?P<any>.*)', '/init/\g<any>'),
3 )
4 routes_out = (
5   ('/init/(?P<any>.*)', '/\g<any>'),
6 )
```

There is also an alternative syntax that can be mixed with the regular expression notation above. It consists of using `name` instead of `(?P<name>[\w_]+)` or `\g<name>`. For example:

```
1 routes_in = (
2   ('/$c/$f', '/init/$c/$f'),
3 )
4
5 routes_out = (
6   ('/init/$c/$f', '/$c/$f'),
7 )
```

would also eliminate the "/example" application prefix in all URLs.

Using the `$` notation, you can automatically map `routes_in` to `routes_out`, provided you don't use any regular expressions. For example:

```

1 routes_in = (
2   ('/$c/$f', '/init/$c/$f'),
3 )
4
5 routes_out = [(x, y) for (y, x) in routes_in]

```

If there are multiple routes, the first to match the URL is executed. If no pattern matches, the path is left unchanged.

You can use \$anything to match anything until the end of the line.

Here is a minimal "routes.py" for handling favicon and robots requests:

```

1 routes_in = (
2   ('/favicon.ico', '/examples/static/favicon.ico'),
3   ('/robots.txt', '/examples/static/robots.txt'),
4 )
5 routes_out = ()

```

Here is a more complex example that exposes a single app "myapp" without unnecessary prefixes but also exposes **admin**, **appadmin** and static:

```

1 routes_in = (
2   ('/admin/$anything', '/admin/$anything'),
3   ('/static/$anything', '/myapp/static/$anything'),
4   ('/appadmin/$anything', '/myapp/appadmin/$anything'),
5   ('/favicon.ico', '/myapp/static/favicon.ico'),
6   ('/robots.txt', '/myapp/static/robots.txt'),
7 )
8 routes_out = [(x, y) for (y, x) in routes_in[:-2]]

```

The general syntax for routes is more complex than the simple examples we have seen so far. Here is a more general and representative example:

```

1 routes_in = (
2   ('140|191|.d+\.d+:https://www.web2py.com:POST /(?P<any>.*).php',
3     '/test/default/index?vars=|g<any>'),
4 )

```

It maps https POST requests to host `www.web2py.com` from a remote IP matching the regular expression

```
1 140\.191\.\\d+\\.\\d+
```

requesting a page matching the regular expression

```
1 /(?P<any>.*)\\.php!
```

into

```
1 /test/default/index?vars=\\g<any>
```

where `\g<any>` is replaced by the matching regular expression.

The general syntax is

```
1 [remote address]:[protocol]://[host]:[method] [path]
```

The entire expression is matched as a regular expression, so `".` should always be escaped and any matching subexpression can be captured using `(?P<...>...)` according to Python regex syntax.

This allows to reroute requests based on the client IP address or domain, based on the type of the request, on the method, and the path. It also allows to map different virtual hosts into different applications. Any matched subexpression can be used to built the target URL and, eventually, passed as a GET variable.

All major web servers, such as Apache and lighttpd, also have the ability to rewrite URLs. In a production environment that may be an option instead of `routes.py`. Whatever you decide to do we strongly suggest that you do not hardcode internal URLs in your app and use the `URL` function to generate them. This will make your application more portable in case routes should change.

4.15.1 Application-Specific URL Rewrite

An application can set its own routes in an application-specific routes.py file located in the applications base folder. This is enabled by configuring routes_app in the base routes.py to determine from an incoming URL the name of the application to be selected. When this happens, the application-specific routes.py is used in place of the base routes.py.

The format of routes_app is identical to routes_in, except that the replacement pattern is simply the application name. If applying routes_app to the incoming URL does not result in an application name, or the resulting application-specific routes.py is not found, the base routes.py is used as usual.

Note: routes_app first appeared in web2py version 1.83.

4.16 Default Application, Controller and Function

The name of the default application, controller and function can be changed from **init**, **default**, and **index** respectively to another name by setting the appropriate value in routes.py:

```
1 default_application = "myapp"
2 default_controller = "admin"
3 default_function = "start"
```

Note: These items first appeared in web2py version 1.83.

4.17 Routes on Error

You can also use "routes.py" to redirect the visitor to special actions in case there is an error on server. You can specify this mapping globally, for each

app, for each error code, for each app and error code. Here is an example:

```

1 routes_onerror = [
2     ('init/400', '/init/default/login'),
3     ('init/*', '/init/static/fail.html'),
4     ('*/404', '/init/static/cantfind.html'),
5     ('*/*', '/init/error/index')
6 ]

```

For each tuple the first string is matched against "[appname]/[error code]". If a match is found the user is redirected to the URL in the second string of the matching tuple. In case a ticket was issued, the ticket is passed to the new URL as a GET variable called ticket.

Unmatched errors display a default error page. This default error page can also be customized here:

```

1 error_message = '<html><body><h1>Invalid request</h1></body></html>'
2 error_message_ticket = '''<html><body><h1>Internal error</h1>
3     Ticket issued: <a href="/admin/default/ticket/%(ticket)s"
4         target="_blank">%(ticket)s</a></body></html>'''

```

The first variable contains the error message when an invalid application is requested. The second variable contains the error message when a ticket is issued.

4.18 Cron

The web2py cron provides the ability for applications to execute tasks at preset times, in a platform independent manner.

For each application, cron functionality is defined by a crontab file "app/cron/crontab", following the syntax defined in ref. (45) (with some extensions that was web2py specific).

This means that every application can have a separate cron configuration and

that cron config can be changed from within web2py without affecting the host OS itself.

Here is an example:

```

1 0-59/1 * * * * root python /path/to/python/script.py
2 30      3 * * * root *applications/admin/cron/db_vacuum.py
3 */30    * * * * root **applications/admin/cron/something.py
4 @reboot root   *mycontroller/myfunction
5 @hourly root   *applications/admin/cron/expire_sessions.py

```

The last two lines in this example, use extensions to regular cron syntax to provide additional web2py functionality. web2py cron has some extra syntax to support web2py application specifics.

If the task/script is prefixed with an asterisk (*) and ends with ".py", it will be executed in the web2py environment. This means you will have all the controllers and models at your disposal. If you use two asterisks (**), the MODELS will not be executed. This is the recommended way of calling as it has less overhead and avoids potential locking problems.

Notice that scripts/functions executed in the web2py environment require a manual db.commit() at the end of the function or the transaction will be reverted. web2py does not generate tickets or meaningful tracebacks in shell mode (in which cron is run). Make sure that your web2py code runs without errors before you set it up as a cron task, as you will likely not be able to see them when run from cron.

Moreover, be careful how you use models. While the execution happens in a separate process, database locks have to be taken into account in order to avoid pages waiting for cron tasks that block the database. Use the ** syntax if you don't need to use the database in your cron task.

You can also call a controller function. There is no need to specify a path. The controller and function will be that of the invoking application. Take special care about the caveats listed above. Example:

```

1 */30 * * * * root *mycontroller/myfunction

```

If you specify @reboot in the first field in the crontab file, the given task will be executed only once, on web2py startup. You can use this feature if you want to pre-cache, check or initialize data for an application on web2py startup. Note that cron tasks are executed in parallel with the application — if the application is not ready to serve requests until the cron task is finished, you should implement checks to reflect this. Example:

```
1 @reboot * * * * root *mycontroller/myfunction
```

Depending on how you are invoking web2py, there are four modes of operation for web2py cron.

- Soft cron: available under all execution modes
- Hard cron: available if using the built-in web server (either directly or via Apache mod_proxy)
- External cron: available if you have access to the system's own cron service
- No cron

The default is hard cron if you are using the built-in web server; in all other cases the default is soft cron.

Soft cron is the default if you are using CGI, FASTCGI or WSGI. Your tasks will be executed in the first call (page load) to web2py after the time specified in crontab (but after processing the page, so no delay to the user is visible). Obviously, there is some uncertainty exactly when the task will be executed depending on the traffic the site receives. Also, the cron task may get interrupted if the web server has a page load timeout set. If these limitations are not acceptable, see "external cron". Soft cron is a reasonable last resort, but if your web server allows other cron methods, they should be preferred over soft cron.

Hard cron is the default if you are using the built-in web server (either directly or via Apache mod_proxy). Hard cron is executed in a parallel thread, so unlike soft cron there are no limitations with regard to run time or execution time precision.

External cron is not default in any scenario, but requires you to have access to the system cron facilities. It runs in a parallel process, so none of the limitations of soft cron apply. This is the recommended way of using cron under WSGI or FASTCGI.

Example of line to add to the system crontab, (usually /etc/crontab):

```
1 0-59/1 * * * * web2py cd /var/www/web2py/ && python web2py.py -C -D 1 >> /tmp/cron.
    output 2>&1
```

If you are running external cron, make sure you add the -N command line parameter to your web2py startup script or config so there is no collision of multiple types of cron.

In case you do not need any cron functionality within a particular process, you can use the -N command line parameter to disable it. Note that this might disable some maintenance tasks (like the automatic cleaning of session dirs). The most common use of this function:

- You already have set up external cron triggered from the system (most common with WSGI setups)
- If you want to debug your application without cron interfering either with actions or with output

4.19 Background Processes and Task Queues

While cron is useful to run tasks at regular time intervals it is not always the best solution to run a background task. For this purpose web2py provides the ability to run any python script as it were inside a controller:

```
1 python web2py.py -S app -M -N -R applications/app/private/myscript.py -A a b c
```

where -S app tells web2py to run "myscript.py" as "app", -M tells web2py to execute models, -N tells web2py not to run cron, and -A a b c passes optional

command line arguments `sys.argv=['a','b','c']` to "myscript.py".

A typical test case consists of processing a queue.

Consider this model

```
1 db.define_table('queue',
2     Field('status'),
3     Field('email'),
4     Field('subject'),
5     Field('message'))
```

and an application that enqueues messages to be send by

```
1 db.queue.insert(status='pending',
2                  email='you@example.com',
3                  subject='test',
4                  message='test')
```

The background processing script that sends the emails could be

```
1 # in file myscript.py
2 import time
3 while True:
4     rows = db(db.queue.status=='pending').select()
5     for row in rows:
6         if mail.send(to=row.email,
7                     subject=row.subject,
8                     message=row.message):
9             row.update_record(status='sent')
10        else:
11            row.update_record(status='failed')
12        db.commit()
13    time.sleep(60) # check every minute
```

Notice that the `mail` object is defined in the `db.py` file in the scaffolding app, because of the `-M` option it is visible here. It may need to be configured in `db.py` to work properly. Also notice that it is important to commit any change as soon as possible in order not to lock the database to other concurrent processes.

This type of background process should not be executed via cron (except perhaps for cron @reboot) because you need to be sure that no more of one instance is running at the same time. With cron it is possible that if the process starts at cron iteration 1 and is not completed by cron iteration 2, so cron starts it again, and again, and again thus jamming the mail server.

4.20 Third Party Modules

web2py is written in Python, so it can import and use any Python module, including third party modules. It just needs to be able to find them.

Modules can be installed in the official Python "site-packages" directory or anywhere your application can find them.

Modules in "site-packages" directory are, as the name suggests, site-level packages. Applications requiring site-packages are not portable unless these modules are installed separately. The advantage of having modules in "site-packages" is that multiple applications can share them. Let's consider, for example, the plotting package called "matplotlib". You can install it from the shell using the PEAK easy_install command:

```
1 easy_install py-matplotlib
```

and then you can import it into any model/controller/view with:

```
1 import matplotlib
```

web2py Windows binary distributions has a site-packages in the top-level folder. The Mac binary distribution has a site-packages folder in the folder:

`web2py.app/Contents/Resources/site-packages`

You can also install packages manually in the application "modules" folder. The advantage is that the module will be automatically copied and dis-

tributed with the application. If the application is called "test", you can import "mymodule" with: web2py also provides a `local_import` function. Here is an example of usage:

```
1 mymodule = local_import(mymodule)
```

The function looks for `mymodule` in the app local modules folder and imports it with the name on the left-hand side of equal.

This function takes three arguments: `name`, `reload` and `app`. When you specify `reload=True`, it will re-import the module upon each request; otherwise your python process will only import the module once. The default is `reload=False`. `app` is the name of the application from which to import the module, it defaults to `request.application`.

The reason for this function is that since one server can run many web2py instances you do not want to add their modules paths to `sys.path` else the lookup would become dependent on the order.

4.21 Execution Environment

While everything discussed here works fine, we recommend instead building your application using components, as described in chapter 13.

web2py model and controller files are not Python modules in that they cannot be imported using the Python `import` statement. The reason for this is that models and controllers are designed to be executed in a prepared environment that has been pre-populated with web2py global objects (`request`, `response`, `session`, `cache` and `T`) and helper functions. This is necessary because Python is a statically (lexically) scoped language, whereas the web2py environment is created dynamically. web2py provides the `exec_environment` function to allow you to access models and controllers directly. `exec_environment` creates a web2py execution environment, loads the file into it and then re-

turns a Storage object containing the environment. The Storage object also serves as a namespace mechanism. Any Python file designed to be executed in the execution environment can be loaded using `exec_environment`. Uses for `exec_environment` include:

- Accessing data (models) from other applications.
- Accessing global objects from other models or controllers.
- Executing controller functions from other controllers.
- Loading site-wide helper libraries.

This example reads rows from the `user` table in the `cas` application:

```
1 from gluon.shell import exec_environment
2 cas = exec_environment('applications/cas/models/db.py')
3 rows = cas.db().select(cas.db.user.ALL)
```

Another example: suppose you have a controller "other.py" that contains:

```
1 def some_action():
2     return dict(remote_addr=request.env.remote_addr)
```

Here is how you can call this action from another controller (or from the web2py shell):

```
1 from gluon.shell import exec_environment
2 other = exec_environment('applications/app/controllers/other.py', request=request)
3 result = other.some_action()
```

In line 2, `request=request` is optional. It has the effect of passing the current request to the environment of "other". Without this argument, the environment would contain a new and empty (apart from `request.folder`) request object. It is also possible to pass a response and a session object to `exec_environment`. Be careful when passing `request`, `response` and `session` objects — modification by the called action or coding dependencies in the called action could lead to unexpected side effects.

The function call in line 3 does not execute the view; it simply returns the dictionary unless `response.render` is called explicitly by "some_action".

One final caution: don't use `exec_environment` inappropriately. If you want the results of actions in another application, you probably should implement an XML-RPC API (implementing an XML-RPC API with web2py is almost trivial). Don't use `exec_environment` as a redirection mechanism; use the `redirect` helper.

4.22 Cooperation

There are many ways applications can cooperate:

- Applications can connect to the same database and thus share tables. It is not necessary that all tables in the database are defined by all applications, but they must be defined by those applications that use them. All applications that use the same table, but one, must define the table with `migrate=False`.
- Applications can embed components from other actions using the LOAD helper (described in Chapter 13).
- Applications can share sessions.
- Applications can call each other's actions remotely via XML-RPC.
- Applications can access each other's files via the filesystem (assuming they share the same filesystem).
- Applications can call each other's actions locally using `exec_environment` as discussed above.
- Applications can import each other's modules using the syntax:
- Applications can import any module in the `PYTHONPATH` search path, `sys.path`.

One app can load the session of another app using the command:

```
1 session.connect(request, response, masterapp='appname', db=db)
```

Here "appname" is the name of the master application, the one that sets the initial `session_id` in the cookie. `db` is a database connection to the database

that contains the session table (`web2py_session`). All apps that share sessions must use the same database for session storage.

One application can load a module from another app using

```
1 othermodule = local_import('othermodule',app='otherapp')
```

If a module function needs access to one of the core objects (request, response, session, cache, and T), the objects must be passed explicitly to the function. Do not let the module create another instance of the core objects. Otherwise, the function will not behave as expected.

4.23 WSGI

web2py and WSGI have love hate relationship. Our prospective is that WSGI was developed as a protocol to connect web servers to web applications in a portable way and we use it for that purpose. web2py at its core is a WSGI application: `gluon.main.wsgibase`. Some developers have pushed WSGI to its limits as a protocol for middleware communications and develop web applications as an onion with many layers (each layer being a WSGI middleware developed independently on the entire framework). web2py does not adopt this structure internally. This is because we feel the core functionality of a frameworks (handling cookies, session, errors, transactions, dispatching) can be better optimized for speed and security if they are handled by a single comprehensive layer.

Yet web2py allows you to use third party WSGI applications and middleware in three ways (and their combinations):

- You can edit the file "wsgihandler.py" and include any third party WSGI middleware.
- You can connect third party WSGI middleware to any specific action in your apps.

- You can call a third party WSGI app from your actions.

The only limitation is that you cannot use third party middleware to replace core web2py functions.

4.23.1 External Middleware

Consider the file "wsgibase.py":

```

1 #...
2 LOGGING = False
3 #...
4 if LOGGING:
5     application = gluon.main.appfactory(wsgiapp=gluon.main.wsgibase,
6                                         logfilename='httpserver.log',
7                                         profilerfilename=None)
8 else:
9     application = gluon.main.wsgibase

```

When LOGGING is set to True, `gluon.main.wsgibase` is wrapped by the middleware function `gluon.main.appfactory`. It provides logging to the "httpserver.log" file. In a similar fashion you can add any third party middleware. We refer to the official WSGI documentation for more details.

4.23.2 Internal Middleware

Given any action in your controllers (for example `index`) and any third party middleware application (for example `MyMiddleware` which converts output to upper case), you can use a web2py decorator to apply the middleware to that action. Here is an example:

```

1 class MyMiddleware:
2     """converts output to upper case"""
3     def __init__(self,app):
4         self.app = app
5     def __call__(self,environ, start_response):

```

```

6     items = self.app(environ, start_response)
7     return [item.upper() for item in items]
8
9 @request.wsgi.middleware(MyMiddleware)
10 def index():
11     return 'hello world'

```

We cannot promise that all third party middleware will work with this mechanism.

4.23.3 Calling WSGI Applications

It is easy to call WSGI app from a web2py action. Here is an example:

```

1 def test_wsgi_app(environ, start_response):
2     """this is a test WSGI app"""
3     status = '200 OK'
4     response_headers = [('Content-type','text/plain'),
5                          ('Content-Length','13')]
6     start_response(status, response_headers)
7     return ['hello world!\n']
8
9 def index():
10     """a test action that call the previous app and escapes output"""
11     items = test_wsgi_app(request.wsgi.environ,
12                           request.wsgi.start_response)
13     for item in items:
14         response.write(item,escape=False)
15     return response.body.getvalue()

```

In this case the `index` action calls `test_wsgi_app` and escapes the returned value before returning it. Notice that `index` is not itself a WSGI app and it must use the normal web2py API (such as `response.write` to write to the socket).

5

The Views

web2py uses Python for its models, controllers, and views, although it uses a slightly modified Python syntax in the views to allow more readable code without imposing any restrictions on proper Python usage.

The purpose of a view is to embed code (Python) in an HTML document. In general, this poses some problems:

- How should embedded code be escaped?
- Should indenting be based on Python or HTML rules?

web2py uses {{ ... }} to escape Python code embedded in HTML. The advantage of using curly brackets instead of angle brackets is that it's transparent to all common HTML editors. This allows the developer to use those editors to create web2py views.

Since the developer is embedding Python code into HTML, the document should be indented according to HTML rules, and not Python rules. Therefore, we allow unindented Python inside the {{ ... }} tags. Since Python normally uses indentation to delimit blocks of code, we need a different way

to delimit them; this is why the web2py template language makes use of the Python keyword `pass`.

A code block starts with a line ending with a colon and ends with a line beginning with pass. The keyword pass is not necessary when the end of the block is obvious from the context.

Here is an example:

```

1 {{{
2 if i == 0:
3     response.write('i is 0')
4 else:
5     response.write('i is not 0')
6     pass
7 }}}

```

Note that `pass` is a Python keyword, not a web2py keyword. Some Python editors, such as Emacs, use the keyword `pass` to signify the division of blocks and use it to re-indent code automatically.

The web2py template language does exactly the same. When it finds something like:

```

1 <html><body>
2 {{for x in range(10):}}{{=x}}hello<br />{{pass}}
3 </body></html>

```

it translates it into a program:

```

1 response.write("""<html><body>""", escape=False)
2 for x in range(10):
3     response.write(x)
4     response.write("""hello<br />""", escape=False)
5 response.write("""</body></html>""", escape=False)

```

`response.write` writes to the `response.body`.

When there is an error in a web2py view, the error report shows the generated view code, not the actual view as written by the developer. This helps the

developer debug the code by highlighting the actual code that is executed (which is something that can be debugged with an HTML editor or the DOM inspector of the browser).

Also note that:

```
1 {{=x}}
```

generates

```
1 response.write(x)
```

Variables injected into the HTML in this way are escaped by default. The escaping is ignored if `x` is an XML object, even if `escape` is set to `True`.

Here is an example that introduces the `H1` helper:

```
1 {{=H1(i)}}
```

which is translated to:

```
1 response.write(H1(i))
```

upon evaluation, the `H1` object and its components are recursively serialized, escaped and written to the response body. The tags generated by `H1` and inner HTML are not escaped. This mechanism guarantees that all text — and only text — displayed on the web page is always escaped, thus preventing XSS vulnerabilities. At the same time, the code is simple and easy to debug.

The method `response.write(obj, escape=True)` takes two arguments, the object to be written and whether it has to be escaped (set to `True` by default). If `obj` has an `.xml()` method, it is called and the result written to the response body (the `escape` argument is ignored). Otherwise it uses the object's `__str__` method to serialize it and, if the `escape` argument is `True`, escapes it. All built-in helper objects (`H1` in the example) are objects that know how to serialize themselves via the `.xml()` method.

This is all done transparently. You never need to (and never should) call the `response.write` method explicitly.

5.1 Basic Syntax

The web2py template language supports all Python control structures. Here we provide some examples of each of them. They can be nested according to usual programming practice.

5.1.1 for...in

In templates you can loop over any iterable object:

```

1 {{items = ['a', 'b', 'c']}}
2 <ul>
3 {{for item in items:}}<li>{{=item}}</li>{{pass}}
4 </ul>
```

which produces:

```

1 <ul>
2 <li>a</li>
3 <li>b</li>
4 <li>c</li>
5 </ul>
```

Here `item` is any iterable object such as a Python list, Python tuple, or Rows object, or any object that is implemented as an iterator. The elements displayed are first serialized and escaped.

5.1.2 while

You can create a loop using the `while` keyword:

```

1 {{k = 3}}
2 <ul>
3 {{while k > 0:}}<li>{{=k}}{{k = k - 1}}</li>{{pass}}
4 </ul>
```

which produces:

```

1 <ul>
2 <li>3</li>
3 <li>2</li>
4 <li>1</li>
5 </ul>
```

5.1.3 if...elif...else

You can use conditional clauses:

```

1 {{{
2 import random
3 k = random.randint(0, 100)
4 }}}
5 <h2>
6 {{=k}}
7 {{if k % 2:}}is odd{{else:}}is even{{pass}}
8 </h2>
```

which produces:

```

1 <h2>
2 45 is odd
3 </h2>
```

Since it is obvious that `else` closes the first `if` block, there is no need for a `pass` statement, and using one would be incorrect. However, you must explicitly close the `else` block with a `pass`.

Recall that in Python "else if" is written `elif` as in the following example:

```

1 {{{
2 import random
```

```

3 k = random.randint(0, 100)
4 }
5 <h2>
6 {{=k}}
7 {{if k % 4 == 0:}}is divisible by 4
8 {{elif k % 2 == 0:}}is even
9 {{else:}}is odd
10 {{pass}}
11 </h2>
```

It produces:

```

1 <h2>
2 64 is divisible by 4
3 </h2>
```

5.1.4 try...except...else...finally

It is also possible to use try...except statements in views with one caveat. Consider the following example:

```

1 {{try:}}
2 Hello {{= 1 / 0}}
3 {{except:}}
4 division by zero
5 {{else:}}
6 no division by zero
7 {{finally}}
8 <br />
9 {{pass}}
```

It will produce the following output:

```

1 Hello
2 division by zero
3 <br />
```

This example illustrates that all output generated before an exception occurs is rendered (including output that preceded the exception) inside the try block. "Hello" is written because it precedes the exception.

5.1.5 def...return

The web2py template language allows the developer to define and implement functions that can return any Python object or a text/html string. Here we consider two examples:

```

1 {{def itemize1(link): return LI(A(link, _href="http://" + link))}}
2 <ul>
3 {{=itemize1('www.google.com')}}
4 </ul>
```

produces the following output:

```

1 <ul>
2 <li><a href="http://www.google.com">www.google.com</a></li>
3 </ul>
```

The function `itemize1` returns a helper object that is inserted at the location where the function is called.

Consider now the following code:

```

1 {{def itemize2(link):}}
2 <li><a href="http://{{=link}}">{{=link}}</a></li>
3 {{return}}
4 <ul>
5 {{itemize2('www.google.com')}}
```

It produces exactly the same output as above. In this case, the function `itemize2` represents a piece of HTML that is going to replace the web2py tag where the function is called. Notice that there is no '=' in front of the call to `itemize2`, since the function does not return the text, but it writes it directly into the response.

There is one caveat: functions defined inside a view must terminate with a return statement, or the automatic indentation will fail.

5.2 HTML Helpers

Consider the following code in a view:

```
1 {{=DIV('this', 'is', 'a', 'test', _id='123', _class='myclass')}}
```

it is rendered as:

```
1 <div id="123" class="myclass">thisisatest</div>
```

DIV is a helper class, i.e., something that can be used to build HTML programmatically. It corresponds to the HTML <div> tag.

Positional arguments are interpreted as objects contained between the open and close tags. Named arguments that start with an underscore are interpreted as HTML tag attributes (without the underscore). Some helpers also have named arguments that do not start with underscore; these arguments are tag-specific.

The following set of helpers:

A, B, BEAUTIFY, BODY, BR, CENTER, CODE, DIV, EM, EMBED, FIELDSET, FORM, H1, H2, H3, H4, H5, H6, HEAD, HR, HTML, I, IFRAME, IMG, INPUT, LABEL, LEGEND, LI, LINK, OL, UL, MARKMIN, MENU, META, OBJECT, ON, OPTION, P, PRE, SCRIPT, OPTGROUP, SELECT, SPAN, STYLE, TABLE, TAG, TD, TEXTAREA, TH, THEAD, TBODY, TF0OT, TITLE, TR, TT, URL, XHTML, XML, xmlescape, embed64 can be used to build complex expressions that can then be serialized to XML (49) (50). For example:

```
1 {{=DIV(B(I("hello ", "<world>")), _class="myclass"))}}
```

is rendered:

```
1 <div class="myclass"><b><i>hello &lt;world&gt;</i></b></div>
```

The helpers mechanism in web2py is more than a system to generate HTML without concatenating strings. It provides a server-side representation of the Document Object Model (DOM).

Components' objects can be referenced via their position, and helpers act as lists with respect to their components:

```

1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('a', 'b'), 'c')
2 >>> print a
3 <div><span>ab</span>c</div>
4 >>> del a[1]
5 >>> a.append(B('x'))
6 >>> a[0][0] = 'y'
7 >>> print a
8 <div><span>yb</span><b>x</b></div>
```

Attributes of helpers can be referenced by name, and helpers act as dictionaries with respect to their attributes:

```

1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('a', 'b'), 'c')
2 >>> a['_class'] = 's'
3 >>> a[0]['_class'] = 't'
4 >>> print a
5 <div class="s"><span class="t">ab</span>c</div>
```

5.2.1 XML

XML is an object used to encapsulate text that should not be escaped. The text may or may not contain valid XML. For example, it could contain JavaScript.

The text in this example is escaped:

```

1 >>> print DIV("<b>hello</b>")
2 &lt;b&gt;hello&lt;/b&gt;
```

by using XML you can prevent escaping:

```

1 >>> print DIV(XML("<b>hello</b>"))
2 <b>hello</b>
```

Sometimes you want to render HTML stored in a variable, but the HTML may contain unsafe tags such as scripts:

```

1 >>> print XML('<script>alert("unsafe!")</script>')
2 <script>alert("unsafe!")</script>
```

Un-escaped executable input such as this (for example, entered in the body of a comment in a blog) is unsafe, because it can be used to generate Cross Site Scripting (XSS) attacks against other visitors to the page.

The web2py XML helper can sanitize our text to prevent injections and escape all tags except those that you explicitly allow. Here is an example:

```
1 >>> print XML('<script>alert("unsafe!")</script>', sanitize=True)
2 &lt;script&gt;alert("unsafe!")&lt;/script&gt;
```

The XML constructors, by default, consider the content of some tags and some of their attributes safe. You can override the defaults using the optional permitted_tags and allowed_attributes arguments. Here are the default values of the optional arguments of the XML helper.

```
1 XML(text, sanitize=False,
2     permitted_tags=['a', 'b', 'blockquote', 'br/', 'i', 'li',
3         'ol', 'ul', 'p', 'cite', 'code', 'pre', 'img/'],
4     allowed_attributes={'a': ['href', 'title'],
5         'img': ['src', 'alt'], 'blockquote': ['type']})
```

5.2.2 Built-in Helpers

A

This helper is used to build links.

```
1 >>> print A('<click>', XML('<b>me</b>'),
2                 _href='http://www.web2py.com')
3 <a href='http://www.web2py.com'>&lt;click&gt;<b>me/b></a>
```

This helper takes a special argument called cid. It works as follows:

```
1 <div id="myid"></div>
2 {{=A('linked page',_href='http://example.com',cid='myid')}}
```

and a click on the link cases the content to be loaded in the div. This requires {{include 'web2py_ajax.html'}} in the layout head.

We discuss applications of `cid` in more detail in Chapter 13, in the context of components.

B

This helper makes its contents bold.

```
1 >>> print B('<hello>', XML('<i>world</i>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <b id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<i>world</i></b>
```

BODY

This helper makes the body of a page.

```
1 >>> print BODY('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _bgcolor='red')
2 <body bgcolor="red">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></body>
```

CENTER

This helper centers its content.

```
1 >>> print CENTER('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'),
2 >>>                  _class='test', _id=0)
3 <center id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></center>
```

CODE

This helper performs syntax highlighting for Python, C, C++, HTML and web2py code, and is preferable to `PRE` for code listings. `CODE` also has the ability to create links to the web2py API documentation.

Here is an example of highlighting sections of Python code.

```
1 >>> print CODE('print "hello"', language='python').xml()
2 <table><tr valign="top"><td style="width:40px; text-align: right;"><pre style=
3   font-size: 11px;
4   font-family: Bitstream Vera Sans Mono,monospace;
5   background-color: transparent;
6   margin: 0;
7   padding: 5px;
```

```

8         border: none;
9         background-color: #E0E0E0;
10        color: #A0A0A0;
11    ">1.</pre></td><td><pre style="
12        font-size: 11px;
13        font-family: Bitstream Vera Sans Mono,monospace;
14        background-color: transparent;
15        margin: 0;
16        padding: 5px;
17        border: none;
18        overflow: auto;
19    "><span style="color:#185369; font-weight: bold">print </span>
20    <span style="color: #FF9966">"hello"</span></pre></td></tr>
21</table>
```

Here is a similar example for HTML

```

1 >>> print CODE(
2 >>>     '<html><body>{{=request.env.remote_add}}</body></html>',
3 >>>     language='html')

1 <table>...<code>...
2 <html><body>{{=request.env.remote_add}}</body></html>
3 ...</code>...</table>
```

These are the default arguments for the CODE helper:

```
1 CODE("print 'hello world'", language='python', link=None, counter=1, styles={})
```

Supported values for the language argument are "python", "html_plain", "c", "cpp", "web2py", and "html". The "html" language interprets {{ and }} tags as "web2py" code, while "html_plain" doesn't.

If a link value is specified, for example "/examples/global/vars/", web2py API references in the code are linked to documentation at the link URL. For example "request" would be linked to "/examples/global/vars/request". In the above example, the link URL is handled by the "var" action in the "global.py" controller that is distributed as part of the web2py "examples" application.

The counter argument is used for line numbering. It can be set to any of three different values. It can be None for no line numbers, a numerical value

specifying the start number, or a string. If the counter is set to a string, it is interpreted as a prompt, and there are no line numbers.

DIV

All helpers apart from XML are derived from DIV and inherit its basic methods.

```
>>> print DIV('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
<div id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></div>
```

EM

Emphasizes its content.

```
>>> print EM('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
<em id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></em>
```

FIELDSET

This is used to create an input field together with its label.

```
>>> print FIELDSET('Height:', INPUT(_name='height'), _class='test')
<fieldset class="test">Height:<input name="height" /></fieldset>
```

FORM

This is one of the most important helpers. In its simple form, it just makes a `<form>...</form>` tag, but because helpers are objects and have knowledge of what they contain, they can process submitted forms (for example, perform validation of the fields). This will be discussed in detail in Chapter 7.

```
>>> print FORM(INPUT(_type='submit'), _action='', _method='post')
<form enctype="multipart/form-data" action="" method="post">
<input type="submit" /></form>
```

The "enctype" is "multipart/form-data" by default.

The constructor of a FORM, and of SQLFORM, can also take a special argument

called `hidden`. When a dictionary is passed as `hidden`, its items are translated into "hidden" INPUT fields. For example:

```
>>> print FORM(hidden=dict(a='b'))
<form enctype="multipart/form-data" action="" method="post">
<input value="b" type="hidden" name="a" /></form>
```

H1, H2, H3, H4, H5, H6

These helpers are for paragraph headings and subheadings:

```
>>> print H1('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
<h1 id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></h1>
```

HEAD

For tagging the HEAD of an HTML page.

```
>>> print HEAD(TITLE('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>')))
<head><title>&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></title></head>
```

HTML

This helper is a little different. In addition to making the `<html>` tags, it prepends the tag with a doctype string (52; 53; 54).

```
>>> print HTML(BODY('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>')))
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN"
 "http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/loose.dtd">
<html><body>&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></body></html>
```

The HTML helper also takes some additional optional arguments that have the following default:

```
>>> print HTML(..., lang='en', doctype='transitional')
```

where `doctype` can be 'strict', 'transitional', 'frameset', 'html5', or a full doctype string.

XHTML

XHTML is similar to HTML but it creates an XHTML doctype instead.

```
1 XHTML(..., lang='en', doctype='transitional', xmlns='http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml')
```

where doctype can be 'strict', 'transitional', 'frameset', or a full doctype string.

INPUT

Creates an `<input.../>` tag. An input tag may not contain other tags, and is closed by `/>` instead of `>`. The input tag has an optional attribute `_type` that can be set to "text" (the default), "submit", "checkbox", or "radio".

```
1 >>> print INPUT(_name='test', _value='a')
2 <input value="a" name="test" />
```

It also takes an optional special argument called "value", distinct from "`_value`". The latter sets the default value for the input field; the former sets its current value. For an input of type "text", the former overrides the latter:

```
1 >>> print INPUT(_name='test', _value='a', value='b')
2 <input value="b" name="test" />
```

For radio buttons `INPUT` selectively sets the "checked" attribute:

```
1 >>> for v in ['a', 'b', 'c']:
2 >>>     print INPUT(_type='radio', _name='test', _value=v, value='b'), v
3 <input value="a" type="radio" name="test" /> a
4 <input value="b" type="radio" checked="checked" name="test" /> b
5 <input value="c" type="radio" name="test" /> c
```

and similarly for checkboxes:

```
1 >>> print INPUT(_type='checkbox', _name='test', _value='a', value=True)
2 <input value="a" type="checkbox" checked="checked" name="test" />
3 >>> print INPUT(_type='checkbox', _name='test', _value='a', value=False)
4 <input value="a" type="checkbox" name="test" />
```

IFRAME

This helper includes another web page in the current page. The url of the other page is specified via the "_src" attribute.

```
1 >>> print IFRAME(_src='http://www.web2py.com')
2 <iframe src="http://www.web2py.com"></iframe>
```

IMG

It can be used to embed images into HTML:

```
1 >>> IMG(_src='http://example.com/image.png',_alt='test')
2 
```

Here is a combination of A, IMG, and URL helpers for including a static image with a link:

```
1 >>> A(IMG(_src=URL('static','logo.png'), _alt="My Logo")
2     _href=URL('default','index'))
3 <a href="/myapp/default/index">
4   
5 </a>
```

LABEL

It is used to create a LABEL tag for an INPUT field.

```
1 >>> print LABEL('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <label id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></label>
```

LI

It makes a list item and should be contained in a UL or OL tag.

```
1 >>> print LI('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <li id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></li>
```

LEGEND

It is used to create a legend tag for a field in a form.

```

1 >>> print LEGEND('Name', _for='myfield')
2 <legend for="myfield">Name</legend>

```

META

To be used for building META tags in the HTML head. For example:

```

1 >>> print META(_name='security', _content='high')
2 <meta name="security" content="high" />

```

MARKMIN

Implements the markmin wiki syntax. It converts the input text into output html according to the markmin rules described in the example below:

```

1 >>> print MARKMIN("this is **bold** or ''italic'' and this [[a link http://web2py.
     com]]")
2 <p>this is <b>bold</b> or <i>italic</i> and
3   this <a href="http://web2py.com">a link</a></p>

```

The markmin syntax is described in this file that ships with web2py:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/examples/static/markmin.html
```

and some examples are shown in chapter 13 in the context of plugin_wiki which uses MARKMIN extensively.

OBJECT

Used to embed objects (for example, a flash player) in the HTML.

```

1 >>> print OBJECT('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'),
2 >>>           _src='http://www.web2py.com')
3 <object src="http://www.web2py.com">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></object>

```

OL

It stands for Ordered List. The list should contain LI tags. OL arguments that are not LI objects are automatically enclosed in ... tags.

```

1 >>> print OL('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <ol id="0" class="test"><li>&lt;hello&gt;</li><li><b>world</b></li></ol>

```

ON

This is here for backward compatibility and it is simply an alias for `True`. It is used exclusively for checkboxes and deprecated since `True` is more Pythonic.

```

1 >>> print INPUT(_type='checkbox', _name='test', _checked=ON)
2 <input checked="checked" type="checkbox" name="test" />

```

OPTGROUP

Allows you to group multiple options in a `SELECT` and it is useful to customize the fields using CSS.

```

1 >>> print SELECT('a', OPTGROUP('b', 'c'))
2 <select>
3   <option value="a">a</option>
4   <optgroup>
5     <option value="b">b</option>
6     <option value="c">c</option>
7   </optgroup>
8 </select>

```

OPTION

This should only be used as part of a `SELECT/OPTION` combination.

```

1 >>> print OPTION('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _value='a')
2 <option value="a">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></option>

```

As in the case of `INPUT`, web2py make a distinction between "`_value`" (the value of the `OPTION`), and "`value`" (the current value of the enclosing `select`). If they are equal, the option is "selected".

```

1 >>> print SELECT('a', 'b', value='b'):
2 <select>
3 <option value="a">a</option>
4 <option value="b" selected="selected">b</option>
5 </select>

```

P

This is for tagging a paragraph.

```

1 >>> print P('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <p id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></p>

```

PRE

Generates a `<pre>...</pre>` tag for displaying pre-formatted text. The `CODE` helper is generally preferable for code listings.

```

1 >>> print PRE('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <pre id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></pre>

```

SCRIPT

This is include or link a script, such as JavaScript. The content between the tags is rendered as an HTML comment, for the benefit of really old browsers.

```

1 >>> print SCRIPT('alert("hello world");', _language='javascript')
2 <script language="javascript"><!--
3 alert("hello world");
4 //--></script>

```

SELECT

Makes a `<select>...</select>` tag. This is used with the `OPTION` helper. Those `SELECT` arguments that are not `OPTION` objects are automatically converted to options.

```

1 >>> print SELECT('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <select id="0" class="test">
3   <option value="&lt;hello&gt;">&lt;hello&gt;</option>
4   <option value="&lt;b&gt;world&lt;/b&gt;"><b>world</b></option>
5 </select>

```

SPAN

Similar to `DIV` but used to tag inline (rather than block) content.

```

1 >>> print SPAN('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <span id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></span>

```

STYLE

Similar to script, but used to either include or link CSS code. Here the CSS is included:

```

1 >>> print STYLE(XML('body {color: white}'))
2 <style><!--
3 body { color: white }
4 //--></style>

```

and here it is linked:

```

1 >>> print STYLE(_src='style.css')
2 <style src="style.css"><!--
3 //--></style>

```

TABLE, TR, TD

These tags (along with the optional THEAD, TBODY and TF0OTER helpers) are used to build HTML tables.

```

1 >>> print TABLE(TR(TD('a'), TD('b')), TR(TD('c'), TD('d')))
2 <table><tr><td>a</td><td>b</td></tr><tr><td>c</td><td>d</td></tr></table>

```

TR expects TD content; arguments that are not TD objects are converted automatically.

```

1 >>> print TABLE(TR('a', 'b'), TR('c', 'd'))
2 <table><tr><td>a</td><td>b</td></tr><tr><td>c</td><td>d</td></tr></table>

```

It is easy to convert a Python array into an HTML table using Python's * function arguments notation, which maps list elements to positional function arguments.

Here, we will do it line by line:

```

1 >>> table = [['a', 'b'], ['c', 'd']]
2 >>> print TABLE(TR(*table[0]), TR(*table[1]))
3 <table><tr><td>a</td><td>b</td></tr><tr><td>c</td><td>d</td></tr></table>

```

Here we do all lines at once:

```

1 >>> table = [['a', 'b'], ['c', 'd']]
2 >>> print TABLE(*[TR(*rows) for rows in table])
3 <table><tr><td>a</td><td>b</td></tr><tr><td>c</td><td>d</td></tr></table>

```

TBODY

This is used to tag rows contained in the table body, as opposed to header or footer rows. It is optional.

```

1 >>> print TBODY(TR('<hello>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <tbody id="0" class="test"><tr><td>&lt;hello&gt;</td></tr></tbody>

```

TEXTAREA

This helper makes a `<textarea>...</textarea>` tag.

```

1 >>> print TEXTAREA('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test')
2 <textarea class="test" cols="40" rows="10">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></textarea>

```

The only caveat is that its optional "value" overrides its content (inner HTML)

```

1 >>> print TEXTAREA(value=<hello world>, _class="test")
2 <textarea class="test" cols="40" rows="10">&lt;hello world&gt;</textarea>

```

TFOOT

This is used to tag table footer rows.

```

1 >>> print TF0OT(TR(TD('<hello>')), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <tfoot id="0" class="test"><tr><td>&lt;hello&gt;</td></tr></tfoot>

```

TH

This is used instead of TD in table headers.

```

1 >>> print TH('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <th id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></th>

```

THEAD

This is used to tag table header rows.

```

1 >>> print THEAD(TR(TD('<hello>')), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <thead id="0" class="test"><tr><td>&lt;hello&gt;</td></tr></thead>

```

TITLE

This is used to tag the title of a page in an HTML header.

```

1 >>> print TITLE('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'))
2 <title>&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></title>

```

TR

Tags a table row. It should be rendered inside a table and contain `<td>...</td>` tags. TR arguments that are not TD objects will be automatically converted.

```

1 >>> print TR('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <tr id="0" class="test"><td>&lt;hello&gt;</td><td><b>world</b></td></tr>

```

TT

Tags text as typewriter (monospaced) text.

```

1 >>> print TT('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <tt id="0" class="test">&lt;hello&gt;<b>world</b></tt>

```

UL

Signifies an Unordered List and should contain LI items. If its content is not tagged as LI, UL does it automatically.

```

1 >>> print UL('<hello>', XML('<b>world</b>'), _class='test', _id=0)
2 <ul id="0" class="test"><li>&lt;hello&gt;</li><li><b>world</b></li></ul>

```

5.2.3 Custom Helpers

Sometimes you need to generate custom XML tags. web2py provides `TAG`, a universal tag generator.

```
1 {{=TAG.name('a', 'b', _c='d')}}
```

generates the following XML

```
1 <name c="d">ab</name>
```

Arguments "a" and "b" and "d" are automatically escaped; use the `XML` helper to suppress this behavior. Using `TAG` you can generate HTML/XML tags not already provided by the API. TAGs can be nested, and are serialized with `str()`. An equivalent syntax is:

```
1 {{=TAG['name']('a', 'b', c='d')}}
```

Notice that `TAG` is an object, and `TAG.name` or `TAG['name']` is a function that returns a temporary helper class.

MENU

The `MENU` helper takes a list of lists of the form of `response.menu` (as described in Chapter 4) and generates a tree-like structure using unordered lists representing the menu. For example:

```
1 >>> print MENU([['One', False, 'link1'], ['Two', False, 'link2']])
2 <ul class="web2py-menu web2py-menu-vertical">
3   <li><a href="link1">One</a></li>
4   <li><a href="link2">Two</a></li>
5 </ul>
```

Each menu item can have a fourth argument that is a nested submenu (and so on recursively):

```
1 >>> print MENU([['One', False, 'link1', [['Two', False, 'link2']]]])
2 <ul class="web2py-menu web2py-menu-vertical">
3   <li class="web2py-menu-expand">
```

```

4   <a href="link1">One</a>
5   <ul class="web2py-menu-vertical">
6     <li><a href="link2">Two</a></li>
7   </ul>
8 </li>
9 </ul>

```

The MENU helper takes the following optional arguments:

- `_class`: defaults to "web2py-menu web2py-menu-vertical" and sets the class of the outer UL elements.
- `ul_class`: defaults to "web2py-menu-vertical" and sets the class of the inner UL elements.
- `li_class`: defaults to "web2py-menu-expand" and sets the class of the inner LI elements.

The "base.css" of the scaffolding application understands the following basic types of menus: "web2py-menu web2py-menu-vertical" and "web2py-menu web2py-menu-horizontal".

5.3 BEAUTIFY

BEAUTIFY is used to build HTML representations of compound objects, including lists, tuples and dictionaries:

```

1 {{=BEAUTIFY({"a":["hello", XML("world")], "b":(1, 2)})}}

```

BEAUTIFY returns an XML-like object serializable to XML, with a nice looking representation of its constructor argument. In this case, the XML representation of:

```

1 {"a":["hello", XML("world")], "b":(1, 2)}

```

will render as:

```

1 <table>
2 <tr><td>a</td><td>:</td><td>hello<br />world</td></tr>
3 <tr><td>b</td><td>:</td><td>1<br />2</td></tr>
4 </table>
```

5.4 Server-side DOM and Parsing

5.4.1 elements

The DIV helper and all derived helpers provide an three search methods: **element** and **elements**. **element** returns the first child element matching a specified condition (or None if no match). **elements** returns a list of all matching children.

element and **elements** use the same syntax to specify the matching condition which allows for three possibilities that can be mixed and matched: jQuery-like expressions, match by exact attribute value, match using regular expressions.

Here is a simple example:

```

1 >>> a = DIV(DIV(DIV('a', _id='target', _class='abc')))
2 >>> d = a.elements('div#target')
3 >>> d[0] = 'changed'
4 >>> print a
5 <div><div><div id="target" class="abc">changed</div></div></div>
```

The un-named argument of elements is a string which may contain: the name of a tag, the id of a tag preceded by a pound symbol, the class preceded by a dot, the explicit value of an attribute in square brackets.

Here are 4 equivalent ways to search the previous tag by id:

```

1 >>> d = a.elements('#target')
2 >>> d = a.elements('div#target')
3 >>> d = a.elements('div[id=target]')
```

```
4 >>> d = a.elements('div',_id='target')
```

Here are 4 equivalent ways to search the previous tag by class:

```
1 >>> d = a.elements('.abc')
2 >>> d = a.elements('div.abc')
3 >>> d = a.elements('div[class=abc]')
4 >>> d = a.elements('div',_class='abc')
```

Any attribute can be used to locate an element (not just `id` and `class`), including multiple attributes (the function `element` can take multiple named arguments) but only the first matching element will be returned.

Using the jQuery syntax "div#target" it is possible to specify multiple search criteria separated by a space:

```
1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('a', _id='t1'),div('b',_class='c2'))
2 >>> d = a.elements('span#t1', 'div#c2')
```

or equivalently

```
1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('a', _id='t1'),div('b',_class='c2'))
2 >>> d = a.elements('span#t1', 'div#c2')
```

If the value of search attribute is specified using a name argument, it can be a string or a regular expression:

```
1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('a', _id='test123'),div('b',_class='c2'))
2 >>> d = a.elements('span',_id=re.compile('test\d{3}'))
```

A special named argument of the `DIV` (and derived) helpers is `find`. It can be used to specify a search value or a search regular expression in the text content of the tag. For example:

```
1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('abcde'),div('fghij'))
2 >>> d = a.elements(find='bcd')
3 >>> print d[0]
4 <span>abcde</span>
```

or

```

1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('abcde'),div('fghij'))
2 >>> d = a.elements(find=re.compile('fg|w\{3\}'))
3 >>> print d[0]
4 <div>fghij</div>

```

5.4.2 parent

`parent` returns the parent of the current element.

```

1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('a'),DIV('b'))
2 >>> d = a.element('a').parent()
3 >>> d['_class']='abc'
4 >>> print a
5 <div class="abc"><span>a</span><div>b</div></div>

```

5.4.3 flatten

The `flatten` method recursive serializes the content of the children of a given element into regular text (without tags):

```

1 >>> a = DIV(SPAN('this',DIV('is',B('a'))),SPAN('test'))
2 >>> print a.flatten()
3 thisisatest

```

`Flatten` can be passed an optional argument, `render`, i.e. a function that renders/flattens the content using a different protocol. Here is an example to serialize some tags into Markmin wiki syntax:

```

1 >>> a = DIV(H1('title'),P('example of a ',A('link',_href='#test')))
2 >>> from gluon.html import markmin_serializer
3 >>> print a.flatten(render=markmin_serializer)
4 # titles
5
6 example of [[a link #test]]

```

At the time of writing we provide `markmin_serializer` and `markdown_serializer`.

5.4.4 Parsing

The TAG object is also an XML/HTML parser. It can read text and convert into a tree structure of helpers. This allows manipulation using the API above:

```

1 >>> html = '<h1>Title</h1><p>this is a <span>test</span></p>'
2 >>> parsed_html = TAG(html)
3 >>> parsed_html.element('span')[0] ='TEST'
4 >>> print parsed_html
5 <h1>Title</h1><p>this is a <span>TEST</span></p>

```

5.5 Page Layout

Views can extend and include other views in a tree-like structure.

For example we can think of a view "index.html" extends "layout.html" and includes "body.html". At the same time "layout.html" may include "header.html" and "footer.html".

The root of the tree is what we call a layout view. Just like any other HTML template file, you can edit it using the web2py administrative interface. The file name "layout.html" is just a convention.

Here is a minimalist page that extends the "layout.html" view and includes the "page.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Hello World</h1>
3 {{include 'page.html'}}

```

The extended layout file must contain an {{include}} directive, something like:

```

1 <html><head><title>Page Title</title></head>
2   <body>

```

```

3   {{include}}
4 </body>
5 </head>
```

When the view is called, the extended (layout) view is loaded, and the calling view replaces the {{include}} directive inside the layout. Processing continues recursively until all extend and include directives have been processed. The resulting template is then translated into Python code.

extend and include are special template directives, not Python commands.

Layouts are used to encapsulate page commonality (headers, footers, menus), and though they are not mandatory, they will make your application easier to write and maintain. In particular, we suggest writing layouts that take advantage of the following variables that can be set in the controller. Using these well known variables will help make your layouts interchangeable:

```

1 response.title
2 response.subtitle
3 response.meta.author
4 response.meta.keywords
5 response.meta.description
6 response.flash
7 response.menu
8 response.files
```

Except for `menu` and `files` these are all strings and their meaning should be obvious.

`response.menu` `menu` is a list of 3-tuples or 4-tuples. The three elements are: the link name, a boolean representing whether the link is active (is the current link), and the URL of the linked page. For example:

```

1 response.menu = [('Google', False, 'http://www.google.com', []),
2                  ('Index', True, URL('index'), [])]
```

the fourth tuple element is an optional sub-menu.

`response.files` is a list of CSS and JS files that are needed by your page.

We also recommend that you use:

```
1 {{include 'web2py_ajax.html'}}
```

in the HTML head, since this will include the jQuery libraries and define some backward-compatible JavaScript functions for special effects and Ajax. "web2py_ajax.html" includes the `response.meta` tags in the view, jQuery base, the jQuery calendar and includes all required CSS and JS `response.files`.

5.5.1 Default Page Layout

Here is a minimal "views/layout.html" that ships with the web2py scaffolding application **welcome**, and any new application will have a similar default layout:

```
1 <!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
2           "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
3 <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" xml:lang="{{=T.accepted_language or 'en
4   '}}">
5   <head>
6     <title>{{=response.title or request.application}}</title>
7     <link rel="shortcut icon"
8       href="{{=URL(request.application,'static','favicon.ico')}}" type="image/vnd.microsoft.icon">
9     <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=UTF-8" />
10
11    {{##### require CSS and JS files for this page (read info in base.css) }}
12    {{response.files.append(URL(request.application,'static','base.css'))}}
13    {{response.files.append(URL(request.application,'static','superfish.js'))}}
14
15    {{##### include web2py specific js code (jquery, calendar, form stuff) }}
16    {{include 'web2py_ajax.html'}}
17  </head>
18  <body>
19    <div class="flash">{{=response.flash or ''}}</div>
20    <div class="ez-mr wrapper" id="layout">
21
22      {{##### Layout 3 from http://www.ez-css.org/layouts }}
23      <div class="ez-wr">
24        <div class="ez-box" id="header">
```

```

25
26     {{try:}}{{=auth.navbar(action=URL(request.application,'default','user'))}}{{
27         except:pass}}
28     <h1>
29         <a href="">{{=response.title or 'response.title'}}</a>
30     </h1>
31     <h2>
32         {{=response.subtitle or 'response.subtitle'}}
33     </h2>
34 </div>
35 <div class="ez-box" id="statusbar">
36
37     {{##### superfish menu }}
38     {{=MENU(response.menu,_class='sf-menu')}}
```

39 <script>
40 jQuery(document).ready(function(){
41 jQuery('ul.sf-menu').superfish({delay:400});
42 });
43 </script>
44 </div>
45 <div class="ez-wr">
46 <div class="ez-fl ez-negmx">
47 <div class="ez-box" id="left_sidebar">{{##### unused space}}</div>
48 </div>
49 <div class="ez-fl ez-negmr">
50 <div class="ez-box" id="content">{{include}}</div>
51 </div>
52 <div class="ez-last ez-oh">
53 <div class="ez-box" id="right_sidebar">{{##### unused space}}</div>
54 </div>
55 </div>
56 <div class="ez-box" id="footer">
57 {{=T('Copyright')}} © 2010 -
58 {{=T('Powered by')}} web2py
59 </div>
60 </div>
61 </body>
62 </html>

There are a few features of this default layout that make it very easy to use and customize:

- {{#...}} are special comments that will not appear in the HTML of the page.

- It displays both `response.title` and `response.subtitle` which can be set in a model. If they are not set, it adopts the application name as title
- It includes the `web2py_ajax.html` file in the header
- It requires two files explicitly: "base.css" and "superfish.js". The former contains the complete CSS for the page and it is very well documented and customizable. The latter contains the JS for the default cascading menu.
- The `{=auth.navbar(...)}` displays a welcome to the current user and links to auth functions like login, logout, register, change password, etc. depending on context. It is placed in a `{{try:}}...{{except:pass}}` in case auth is undefined.
- The `{=MENU(response.menu)}` displays the menu structure as `...`.
- There is an explicit script to activate the superfish cascading menu and it can be removed if not necessary.
- `{}{include}` is replaced by the content of the extending view when the page is rendered.
- By default it uses a three column page layout and the uses the following DIV ids: "header", "left_sidebar", "content", and "right_sidebar", "footer" although the provided "base.css" sets the widths of the sidebars to zero.
- It uses the ez.css convention for layout CSS naming defined in ref (51). In particular it uses Layout number 3. The minimized ez.css is included in "base.css".

5.5.2 Customizing the Default Layout

Customizing the default layout without editing is very easy because of the "static/base.css" file is very well documented.

In particular it is organized in the following sub-sections:

- ez.css

- reset common tags
- choose default fonts
- choose link style
- add bottom line to table rows
- labels bold and occasionally centered
- make all input fields the same size
- add proper separation between h1-h6 and text
- always indent the first line and add space below paragraphs
- bullets and numbers style and indent
- form and table padding
- code blocks
- left and right padding to quoted text
- page layout alignment, width and padding (change this for spaces)
- column widths (change this to use left_sidebar and right_sidebar)
- background images and colors (change this for colors)
- menu style (for superfish.js)
- web2py specific (.flash,.error)

To change the left_sidebar, content, right_sidebar widths, simply edit part of "base.css":

```

1 **** column widths ****
2 #left_sidebar { width: 0px; }
3 #content { width: 840px; }
4 #right_sidebar { width: 0px; }
```

To change colors and background images, simply edit the following part:

```

1 **** backrgound images and colors ****
2 body { background: url('images/background.png') repeat-x #3A3A3A; }
3
4 a { color: #349C01; }
5 .auth-navbar {
6   top: 0px;
```

```

7   float: right;
8   padding: 3px 10px 3px 10px;
9   font-size: 0.9em;
10 }
11 code { color: green; background: black; }
12 input:focus, textarea:focus { background: #ccffcc; }
13 #layout { background: white; }
14 #header, #footer { color: white; background: url('images/header.png') repeat
15   #111111; }
16 #header h1 { color: #349C01; }
17 #header h2 { color: white; font-style: italic; font-size: 14px; }
18 #statusbar { background: #333333; border-bottom: 5px #349C01 solid; }
19 #statusbar a { color: white; }
20 #footer { border-top: 5px #349C01 solid; }

```

The menu is built in a color-neutral way but you can change that too.

Of course you can also completely replace the "layout.html" and "base.css" files with your own.

5.6 Functions in Views

Consider this "layout.html":

```

1 <html>
2   <body>
3     {{include}} <!-- must come before the two blocks below -->
4     <div class="sidebar">
5       {{if 'mysidebar' in globals():}}{{mysidebar()}}{{else:}}
6         my default sidebar
7         {{pass}}
8     </body>
9   </html>

```

and this extending view

```

1 {{def mysidebar():}}
2 my new sidebar!!!
3 {{return}}
4 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
5 Hello World!!!

```

Notice the function defined before the `{{extend...}}` statement. Also notice the function is included in the extended view without the `=` prefix.

The code generates the following output:

```

1 <html>
2   <body>
3     Hello World!!!
4     <div class="sidebar">
5       {{block mysidebar}}
6         my new sidebar!!!
7       {{end}}
8     </body>
9 </html>
```

Notice that the functions are defined in HTML (although they can also contain Python code) so that `response.write` is used to write their content (the functions do not return the content). This is why the layout calls the view function using `{{mysidebar()}}` rather than `{{=mysidebar()}}`. Functions defined in this way can take arguments.

5.7 Blocks in Views

Another way to make a view more modular is by using `{{block...}}`s and this mechanism is an alternative to the mechanism discussed in the previous section.

Consider this "layout.html":

```

1 <html>
2   <body>
3     {{include}} <!-- must come before the two blocks below -->
4     <div class="sidebar">
5       {{block mysidebar}}
6         my default sidebar
7       {{end}}
8     </body>
9 </html>
```

and this extending view

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 Hello World!!!
3 {{block mysidebar}}
4 my new sidebar!!!
5 {{end}}
```

It generates the following output:

```

1 <html>
2   <body>
3     Hello World!!!
4     <div class="sidebar">
5       {{block mysidebar}}
6       my new sidebar!!!
7     {{end}}
8   </body>
9 </html>
```

You can have many blocks and if the a block is present the extended view but not in the extending view, the content of the extended view is used.

5.8 Using the Template System to Generate Emails

It is possible to use the template system to generate emails. For example, consider the database table

```
1 db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
```

where you want to send to every person in the database the following message, stored in a view file "message.html":

```

1 Dear {{=person.name}},
2 You have won the second prize, a set of steak knives.
```

You can achieve this in the following way

```

1 >>> from gluon.tools import Mail
2 >>> mail = Mail(globals())
```

```
3 >>> mail.settings.server = 'smtp.gmail.com:587'  
4 >>> mail.settings.sender = '...@somewhere.com'  
5 >>> mail.settings.login = None or 'username:password'  
6 >>> for person in db(db.person.id>0).select():  
7     context = dict(person=person)  
8 >>> message = response.render('message.html', context)  
9 >>> mail.send(to=['who@example.com'],  
10    subject='None',  
11    message=message)
```

Most of the work is done in the statement

```
1 response.render('message.html', context)
```

It renders the view "file.html" with the variables defined in the dictionary "context", and it returns a string with the rendered email text. The context is a dictionary that contains variables that will be visible to the template file.

If the message starts with <html> and ends with </html> the email will be a HTML email.

The same mechanism that is used to generate email text can also be used to generate SMS or any other type of message based on a template.

6

The Database Abstraction Layer

6.1 Dependencies

web2py comes with a Database Abstraction Layer (DAL), an API that maps Python objects into database objects such as queries, tables, and records. The DAL dynamically generates the SQL in real time using the specified dialect for the database back end, so that you do not have to write SQL code or learn different SQL dialects (the term SQL is used generically), and the application will be portable among different types of databases. At the time of this writing, the supported databases are SQLite (which comes with Python and thus web2py), PostgreSQL, MySQL, Oracle, MSSQL, FireBird, DB2, Informix, and Ingres and (partially) the Google App Engine (GAE). GAE is treated as a particular case in Chapter 11.

The Windows binary distribution works out of the box with SQLite and MySQL. The Mac binary distribution works out of the box with SQLite. To use any other database back-end, run from the source distribution and install the appropriate driver for the required back end.

Once the proper driver is installed, start web2py from source, and it will find

the driver. Here is a list of drivers:

database	driver (source)
SQLite	sqlite3 or pysqlite2 or zxJDBC (56) (on Jython)
PostgreSQL	psycopg2 (57) or zxJDBC (56) (on Jython)
MySQL	MySQLdb (58)
Oracle	cx_Oracle (59)
MSSQL	pyodbc (60)
FireBird	kinterbasdb (61)
DB2	pyodbc (60)
Informix	informixdb (62)
Ingres	ingresdbi (63)

web2py defines the following classes that make up the DAL:

DAL represents a database connection. For example:

```
1 db = DAL('sqlite://storage.db')
```

Table represents a database table. You do not directly instantiate Table; instead, DAL.define_table instantiates it.

```
1 db.define_table('mytable', Field('myfield'))
```

The most important methods of a Table are:

.insert, .truncate, .drop, and .import_from_csv_file.

Field represents a database field. It can be instantiated and passed as an argument to DAL.define_table.

DAL Rows is the object returned by a database select. It can be thought of as a list of Row rows:

```
1 rows = db(db.mytable.myfield!=None).select()
```

Row contains field values.

```
1 for row in rows:
2     print row.myfield
```

Query is an object that represents an SQL "where" clause:

```
1 myquery = (db.mytable.myfield != None) | (db.mytable.myfield > 'A')
```

Set is an object that represents a set of records. Its most important methods are `count`, `select`, `update`, and `delete`. For example:

```
1 myset = db(myquery)
2 rows = myset.select()
3 myset.update(myfield='somevalue')
4 myset.delete()
```

Expression is something like an `orderby` or an `groupby` expressions. The `Field` class is derived from `Expression`. Here is an example.

```
1 myorder = db.mytable.myfield.upper() | db.mytable.id
2 db().select(db.table.ALL, orderby=myorder)
```

6.2 Connection Strings

A connection with the database is established by creating an instance of the `DAL` object:

```
>>> db = DAL('sqlite://storage.db', pool_size=0)
```

`db` is not a keyword; it is a local variable that stores the connection object `DAL`. You are free to give it a different name. The constructor of `DAL` requires a single argument, the connection string. The connection string is the only web2py code that depends on a specific back-end database. Here are examples of connection strings for specific types of supported back-end databases (in all cases, we assume the database is running from localhost on its default port and is named "test"):

SQLite	sqlite://storage.db
MySQL	mysql://username:password@localhost/test
PostgreSQL	postgres://username:password@localhost/test
MSSQL	mssql://username:password@localhost/test
FireBird	firebird://username:password@localhost/test
Oracle	oracle://username:password@test
DB2	db2://username:password@test
Ingres	ingres://username:password@localhost/test
DB2	db2://username:password@test
Informix	informix://username:password@test
Google App Engine	gae

Notice that in SQLite the database consists of a single file. If it does not exist, it is created. This file is locked every time it is accessed. In the case of MySQL, PostgreSQL, MSSQL, FireBird, Oracle, DB2, Informix the database "test" must be created outside web2py. Once the connection is established, web2py will create, alter, and drop tables appropriately.

It is also possible to set the connection string to `None`. In this case DAL will not connect to any back-end database, but the API can still be accessed for testing. Examples of this will be discussed in Chapter 7.

6.2.1 *Connection Pooling*

The second argument of the DAL constructor is the `pool_size`; it defaults to 0.

Since it is slow to establish a new database connection for each request. To avoid this, web2py implements a mechanism of connection pooling. When a connection is established, after the page has been served and the transaction completed, the connection is not closed, but it goes into a pool. When the next http request arrives, web2py tries to pick a connection from the pool and use that one for a new transaction. If there are no available connections from the pool, a new connection is established.

The `pool_size` parameter is ignored by SQLite and GAE.

Connections in the pools are shared sequentially among threads, in the sense that they may be used by two different but not simultaneous threads. There is only one pool for each web2py process.

When web2py starts, the pool is always empty. The pool grows up to the minimum between the value of `pool_size` and the max number of concurrent requests. This means that if `pool_size=10` but our server never receives more than 5 concurrent requests, then the actual pool size will only grow to 5. If `pool_size=0` then connection pooling is not used.

Connection pooling is ignored for SQLite, since it would not yield any benefit.

6.2.2 Connection Failures

If web2py fails to connect to the database it waits 1 seconds and tries again up to 5 times before declaring a failure. In case of connection pooling it is possible that a pooled connection that stays open but unused for some time is closed by the database end. Thanks to the retry feature web2py tries to re-establish these dropped connections.

6.2.3 Replicated Databases

The first argument of `DAL(...)` can be a list of URIs. In this case web2py tries to connect to each of them. The main purpose for this is to deal with multiple database servers and distribute the workload among them). Here is a typical use case:

```
1 db = DAL(['mysql://...1','mysql://...2','mysql://...3'])
```

In this case the DAL tries to connect to the first and, on failure, it will try the second and the first. This can also be used to distribute load in a database

master-slave configuration. We will talk more about this in Chapter 11 in the context of scalability.

6.3 Reserved Keywords

There is also another argument that can be passed to the DAL constructor to check table names and column names against reserved SQL keywords in target back-end databases.

This argument is `check_reserved` and it defaults to `None`.

This is a list of strings that contain the database back-end adapter names.

The adapter name is the same as used in the DAL connection string. So if you want to check against PostgreSQL and MSSQL then your connection string would look as follows:

```
1 db = DAL('sqlite://storage.db',
2           check_reserved=['postgres', 'mssql'])
```

The DAL will scan the keywords in the same order as of the list.

There are two extra options "all" and "common". If you specify all, it will check against all known SQL keywords. If you specify common, it will only check against common SQL keywords such as `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, etc.

For supported back-ends you may also specify if you would like to check against the non-reserved SQL keywords as well. In this case you would append `_nonreserved` to the name. For example:

```
1 check_reserved=['postgres', 'postgres_nonreserved']
```

The following database backends support reserved words checking.

PostgreSQL	<code>postgres(_nonreserved)</code>
MySQL	<code>mysql</code>
FireBird	<code>firebird(_nonreserved)</code>
MSSQL	<code>mssql</code>
Oracle	<code>oracle</code>

6.4 DAL, Table, Field

The best way to understand the DAL API is to try each function yourself. This can be done interactively via the web2py shell, although ultimately, DAL code goes in the models and controllers.

Start by creating a connection. For the sake of example, you can use SQLite. Nothing in this discussion changes when you change the back-end engine.

```
1 >>> db = DAL('sqlite://storage.db')
```

The database is now connected and the connection is stored in the global variable db.

At any time you can retrieve the connection string.

```
1 >>> print db._uri
2 sqlite://storage.db
```

and the database name

```
1 >>> print db._dbname
2 sqlite
```

The connection string is called a `_uri` because it is an instance of a Uniform Resource Identifier.

The DAL allows multiple connections with the same database or with different databases, even databases of different types. For now, we will assume the presence of a single database since this is the most common situation.

The most important method of a DAL is `define_table`:

```
>>> db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
```

It defines, stores and returns a `Table` object called "person" containing a field (column) "name". This object can also be accessed via `db.person`, so you do not need to catch the return value.

6.5 Record Representation

It is optional but recommended to specify a format representation for records:

```
>>> db.define_table('person', Field('name'), format='%(name)s')
```

or

```
>>> db.define_table('person', Field('name'), format='%(name)s %(id)s')
```

or even more complex ones using a function:

```
>>> db.define_table('person', Field('name'),
2       format=lambda r: r.name or 'anonymous')
```

The format attribute will be used for two purposes:

- To represent referenced records in select/option drop-downs.
- To set the `db.othertable.person.represent` attribute for all fields referencing this table. This means that SQLTABLE will not show references by id but will use the format preferred representation instead.

These are the default values of a `Field` constructor:

```
1 Field(name, 'string', length=None, default=None,
2       required=False, requires='<default>',
3       ondelete='CASCADE', notnull=False, unique=False,
4       uploadfield=True, widget=None, label=None, comment=None,
```

```
5     writable=True, readable=True, update=None, authorize=None,  
6     autodelete=False, represent=None, compute=None, uploadseparate=None)
```

Not all of them are relevant for every field. "length" is relevant only for fields of type "string". "uploadfield" and "authorize" are relevant only for fields of type "upload". "onDelete" is relevant only for fields of type "reference" and "upload".

- `length` sets the maximum length of a "string", "password" or "upload" field. If `length` is not specified a default value is used but the default value is not guaranteed to be backward compatible. *To avoid unwanted migrations on upgrades, we recommend that you always specify the length for string, password and upload fields.*
- `default` sets the default value for the field. The default value is used when performing an insert if a value is not explicitly specified. It is also used to pre-populate forms built from the table using SQLFORM.
- `required` tells the DAL that no insert should be allowed on this table if a value for this field is not explicitly specified.
- `requires` is a validator or a list of validators. This is not used by the DAL, but it is used by SQLFORM. The default validators for the given types are shown in the following table:

field type	default field validators
string	IS_LENGTH(length)
text	None
blob	None
boolean	None
integer	IS_INT_IN_RANGE(-1e100, 1e100)
double	IS_FLOAT_IN_RANGE(-1e100, 1e100)
decimal(n,m)	IS_DECIMAL_IN_RANGE(-1e100, 1e100)
date	IS_DATE()
time	IS_TIME()
datetime	IS_DATETIME()
password	None
upload	None
reference <table>	IS_IN_DB(db,'<table>.id')
list:string	None
list:integer	None
list:reference <table>	IS_IN_DB(db,'<table>.id',multiple=True)

Decimal requires and returns values as Decimal objects, as defined in the Python decimal module. SQLite does not handle the decimal type so internally we treat it as a double. The (n,m) and the number of digits before and after the decimal point.

The list: fields are special because they are designed to take advantage of certain denormalization features on NoSQL (in the case of Google App Engine, the field types ListProperty and StringListProperty) and back-port them all the other supported relational databases. On relational databases lists are stored as a text field. The items are separated by a | and each | in string item is escaped as a |||. They are discussed in their own section.

Notice that requires=... is enforced at the level of forms, required=True is enforced at the level of the DAL (insert), while notnull, unique and ondelete are enforced at the level of the database. While they sometimes may seem redundant, it is important to maintain the distinction when programming with the DAL.

- ondelete translates into the "ON DELETE" SQL statement. By default "CASCADE" tells the database that when it deletes a record, it should

also delete all records that refer to it.

- `notnull=True` translates into the "NOT NULL" SQL statement. It prevents the database from inserting null values for the field.
- `unique=True` translates into the "UNIQUE" SQL statement and it makes sure that values of this field are unique within the table. It is enforced at the database level.
- `uploadfield` applies only to fields of type "upload". A field of type "upload" stores the name of a file saved somewhere else, by default on the filesystem under the application "uploads/" folder. If `uploadfield` is set, then the file is stored in a blob field within the same table and the value of `uploadfield` is the name of the blob field. This will be discussed in more detail later in the context of SQLFORM.
- `uploadseparate` if set to True will upload files under different subfolders of the "upload" folder. This is optimized to avoid too many files under the same folder/subfolder. ATTENTION: You cannot change the value of `uploadseparate` from True to False without breaking the system. web2py either uses the separate subfolders or it does not. Changing the behavior after files have been uploaded will prevent web2py from being able to retrieve those files. If this happens it is possible to move files and fix the problem but this is not described here.
- `widget` must be one of the available widget objects, including custom widgets, for example: `SQLFORM.widgets.string.widget`. A list of available widgets will be discussed later. Each field type has a default widget.
- `label` is a string (or something that can be serialized to a string) that contains the label to be used for this field in autogenerated forms.
- `comment` is a string (or something that can be serialized to a string) that contains a comment associated with this field, and will be displayed to the right of the input field in the autogenerated forms.
- `writable` if a field is writable, it can be edited in autogenerated create and update forms.
- `readable` if a field is readable, it will be visible in readonly forms. If a field is neither readable nor writable, it will not be displayed in create and update forms.

- `update` contains the default value for this field when the record is updated.
- `compute` is an optional function. If a record is inserted and there is no value for a field that has a `compute` attribute, the value is calculated by passing the record (as a dict) to the `compute` function.
- `authorize` can be used to require access control on the corresponding field, for "upload" fields only. It will be discussed more in detail in the context of Authentication and Authorization.
- `autodelete` determines if the corresponding uploaded file should be deleted when the record referencing the file is deleted. For "upload" fields only.
- `represent` can be `None` or can point to a function that takes a field value and returns an alternate representation for the field value. Examples:

```

1 db.mytable.name.represent = lambda name: name.capitalize()
2 db.mytable.other_id.represent = lambda id: db.other(id).myfield
3 db.mytable.some_uploadfield.represent = lambda value: \
4     A('get it', _href=URL('download', args=value))

```

"blob" fields are also special. By default, binary data is encoded in base64 before being stored into the actual database field, and it is decoded when extracted. This has the negative effect of using 25% more storage space than necessary in blob fields, but has two advantages. On average it reduces the amount of data communicated between web2py and the database server, and it makes the communication independent of back-end-specific escaping conventions.

You can query the database for existing tables:

```

1 >>> print db.tables
2 ['person']

```

You can also query a table for existing fields:

```

1 >>> print db.person.fields
2 ['id', 'name']

```

Do not declare a field called "id", because one is created by web2py anyway. Every table has a field called "id" by default. It is an auto-increment integer

field (starting at 1) used for cross-reference and for making every record unique, so "id" is a primary key. (Note: the id's starting at 1 is back-end specific. For example, this does not apply to the Google App Engine (GAE).)

Optionally you can define a field of type='id' and web2py will use this field as auto-increment id field. This is not recommended except when accessing legacy database tables. With some limitation, you can also use different primary keys and this is discussed in the section on "Legacy databases and keyed tables".

You can query for the type of a table:

```
1 >>> print type(db.person)
2 <class 'gluon.sql.Table'>
```

and you can access a table from the DAL connection using:

```
1 >>> print type(db['person'])
2 <class 'gluon.sql.Table'>
```

Similarly you can access fields from their name in multiple equivalent ways:

```
1 >>> print type(db.person.name)
2 <class 'gluon.sql.Field'>
3 >>> print type(db.person['name'])
4 <class 'gluon.sql.Field'>
5 >>> print type(db['person']['name'])
6 <class 'gluon.sql.Field'>
```

Given a field, you can access the attributes set in its definition:

```
1 >>> print db.person.name.type
2 string
3 >>> print db.person.name.unique
4 False
5 >>> print db.person.name.notnull
6 False
7 >>> print db.person.name.length
8 32
```

including its parent table, tablename, and parent connection:

```

1 >>> db.person.name._table == db.person
2 True
3 >>> db.person.name._tablename == 'person'
4 True
5 >>> db.person.name._db == db
6 True

```

6.6 *Migrations*

`define_table` checks whether or not the corresponding table exists. If it does not, it generates the SQL to create it and executes the SQL. If the table does exist but differs from the one being defined, it generates the SQL to alter the table and executes it. If a field has changed type but not name, it will try to convert the data (If you do not want this, you need to redefine the table twice, the first time, letting web2py drop the field by removing it, and the second time adding the newly defined field so that web2py can create it.). If the table exists and matches the current definition, it will leave it alone. In all cases it will create the `db.person` object that represents the table.

We refer to this behavior as a "migration". web2py logs all migrations and migration attempts in the file "databases/sql.log".

The first argument of `define_table` is always the table name. The other unnamed arguments are the fields (Field). The function also takes an optional last argument called "migrate" which must be referred to explicitly by name as in:

```

>>> db.define_table('person', Field('name'), migrate='person.table')

```

The value of `migrate` is the filename (in the "databases" folder for the application) where web2py stores internal migration information for this table. These files are very important and should never be removed except when the entire database is dropped. In this case, the ".table" files have to be removed manually. By default, `migrate` is set to True. This causes web2py to generate the filename from a hash of the connection string. If `migrate` is set to False,

the migration is not performed, and web2py assumes that the table exists in the datastore and it contains (at least) the fields listed in `define_table`. The best practice is to give an explicit name to the migrate table.

There may not be two tables in the same application with the same migrate filename.

6.7 *Fixing Broken Migrations*

There are two common problems with migrations and there are ways to recover from them.

One problem is specific with SQLite. SQLite does not enforce column types and cannot drop columns. This means that if you have a column of type string and you remove it, it is not really removed. If you add the column again with a different type (for example datetime) you end up with a datetime column that contains strings (junk for practical purposes). web2py does not complain about this because does not know what is in the database, until it tries to retrieve records and it fails.

If web2py returns an error in the `gluon.sql.parse` function when selecting records, this is the problem: corrupted data in a column because of the above issue.

The solution consists in updating all records of the table and updating the values in the column in question with None.

The other problem is more generic but typical with MySQL. MySQL does not allow more than one ALTER TABLE in a transaction. This means that web2py must break complex transactions into smaller ones (one ALTER TABLE at the time) and commit one piece at the time. It is therefore possible that part of a complex transaction gets committed and one part fails leaving web2py in a corrupted state. Why would part of a transaction fail? Because, for example,

it involves altering a table and converting a string column into a datetime column, web2py tries to convert the data, but the data cannot be converted. What happens to web2py? It gets confused about what exactly is the table structure actually stored in the database.

The solution consists of disabling migrations for all tables and enabling fake migrations:

```
1 db.define_table(...,migrate=False,fake_migrate=True)
```

This will rebuild web2py metadata about the table according to the table definition. Try multiple table definitions to see which one works (the one before the failed migration and the one after the failed migration). Once successful remove the `fake_migrate=True` attribute.

Before attempting to fix migration problems it is prudent to make a copy of "applications/yourapp/databases/*.table" files.

6.8 insert

Given a table, you can insert records

```
1 >>> db.person.insert(name="Alex")
2 1
3 >>> db.person.insert(name="Bob")
4 2
```

Insert returns the unique "id" value of each record inserted.

You can truncate the table, i.e., delete all records and reset the counter of the id.

```
1 >>> db.person.truncate()
```

Now, if you insert a record again, the counter starts again at 1 (this is backend specific and does not apply to GAE):

```

1 >>> db.person.insert(name="Alex")
2 1

```

web2py also provides a /ft bulk_insert method

```

1 >>> db.person.bulk_insert([{'name':'Alex'}, {'name':'John'}, {'name':'Tim'}])
2 [3,4,5]

```

It takes a list of dictionaries of fields to be inserted and performs multiple inserts at once. It returns the IDs of the inserted records. On the supported relational databases there is no advantage in using this function as opposed to looping and performing individual inserts but on Google App Engine, there is a major speed advantage.

6.9 commit and rollback

No create, drop, insert, truncate, delete, or update operation is actually committed until you issue the commit command

```

1 >>> db.commit()

```

To check it let's insert a new record:

```

1 >>> db.person.insert(name="Bob")
2

```

and roll back, i.e., ignore all operations since the last commit:

```

1 >>> db.rollback()

```

If you now insert again, the counter will again be set to 2, since the previous insert was rolled back.

```

1 >>> db.person.insert(name="Bob")
2

```

Code in models, views and controllers is enclosed in web2py code that looks like this:

```

1 try:
2     execute models, controller function and view
3 except:
4     rollback all connections
5     log the traceback
6     send a ticket to the visitor
7 else:
8     commit all connections
9     save cookies, sessions and return the page

```

There is no need to ever call `commit` or `rollback` explicitly in web2py unless one needs more granular control.

6.10 Raw SQL

6.10.1 executesql

The DAL allows you to explicitly issue SQL statements.

```

1 >>> print db.executesql('SELECT * FROM person; ')
2 [(1, u'Massimo'), (2, u'Massimo')]

```

In this case, the return values are not parsed or transformed by the DAL, and the format depends on the specific database driver. This usage with selects is normally not needed, but it is more common with indexes. `executesql` takes two optional arguments: `placeholders` and `as_dict`. `placeholders` is an optional sequence of values to be substituted in or, if supported by the DB driver, a dictionary with keys matching named placeholders in your SQL.

If `as_dict` is set to True, and the results cursor returned by the DB driver will be converted to a sequence of dictionaries keyed with the db field names. Results returned with `as_dict = True` are the same as those returned when applying `.to_list()` to a normal select.

```
1 [{field1: value1, field2: value2}, {field1: value1b, field2: value2b}]
```

6.10.2 _lastsql

Whether SQL was executed manually using `executesql` or was SQL generated by the DAL, you can always find the SQL code in `db._lastsql`. This is useful for debugging purposes:

```
1 >>> rows = db().select(db.person.ALL)
2 >>> print db._lastsql
3 SELECT person.id, person.name FROM person;
```

web2py never generates queries using the "" operator. web2py is always explicit when selecting fields.*

6.11 drop

Finally, you can drop tables and all data will be lost:

```
1 >>> db.person.drop()
```

6.12 Indexes

Currently the DAL API does not provide a command to create indexes on tables, but this can be done using the `executesql` command. This is because the existence of indexes can make migrations complex, and it is better to deal with them explicitly. Indexes may be needed for those fields that are used in recurrent queries.

Here is an example of how to create an index using SQL in SQLite:

```

1 >>> db = DAL('sqlite://storage.db')
2 >>> db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
3 >>> db.executesql('CREATE INDEX IF NOT EXISTS myidx ON person name;')

```

Other database dialects have very similar syntaxes but may not support the optional "IF NOT EXISTS" directive.

6.13 Legacy Databases and Keyed Tables

web2py can connect to legacy databases under some conditions.

The easiest way is when these conditions are met:

- Each table must have a unique auto-increment integer field called "id"
- Records must be referenced exclusively using the "id" field.

When accessing an existing table, i.e., a table not created by web2py in the current application, always set migrate=False.

If the legacy table has a auto-increment integer field but it is not called "id", web2py can still access it but the table definition must contain explicitly as Field('...','id') where... is the name of auto-increment integer field.

Finally if the legacy table uses a primary key that is not an auto-increment id field it is possible to use a "keyed table", for example:

```

1 db.define_table('account',
2     Field('accnum','integer'),
3     Field('acctype'),
4     Field('accdesc'),
5     primarykey=['accnum','acctype'],
6     migrate=False)

```

In this example the primarykey attribute is a list of field that constitute the primary key. At the time of writing, we cannot guarantee that the primarykey attribute works with every existing legacy table and every supported database backend. For simplicity, we recommend, if possible, creating a database view that has an auto-increment id field.

6.14 Distributed Transaction

At the time of writing this feature is only supported by PostgreSQL, MySQL and Firebird, since they expose API for two-phase commits.

Assuming you have two (or more) connections to distinct PostgreSQL databases, for example:

```
1 db_a = DAL('postgres://...')  
2 db_b = DAL('postgres://...')
```

In your models or controllers, you can commit them concurrently with:

```
1 DAL.distributed_transaction_commit(db_a, db_b)
```

On failure, this function rolls back and raises an `Exception`.

In controllers, when one action returns, if you have two distinct connections and you do not call the above function, web2py commits them separately. This means there is a possibility that one of the commits succeeds and one fails. The distributed transaction prevents this from happening.

6.15 Manual Uploads

Consider the following model:

```
1 db.define_table('myfile',Field('image','upload'))
```

Normally an insert is handled automatically via a SQLFORM or a crud form (which is a SQLFORM) but occasionally you already have the file on the filesystem and want to upload it programmatically. This can be done in this way:

```
1 stream = open(filename, 'rb')
2 db myfile.insert(image=db myfile.image.store(stream,filename))
```

The `store` method of the upload field object takes a file stream and a filename. It uses the filename to determine the extension (type) of the file, creates a new temp name for the file (according to web2py upload mechanism) and loads the file content in this new temp file (under the uploads folder unless specified otherwise). It returns the new temp name that is to be stored into the `image` field of the `db myfile` table.

6.16 Query, Set, Rows

Let's consider again the table defined (and dropped) previously and insert three records:

```
1 >>> db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
2 >>> db.person.insert(name="Alex")
3 1
4 >>> db.person.insert(name="Bob")
5 2
6 >>> db.person.insert(name="Carl")
7 3
```

You can store the table in a variable. For example, with variable `person`, you could do:

```
1 >>> person = db.person
```

You can also store a field in a variable such as `name`. For example, you could also do:

```
1 >>> name = person.name
```

You can even build a query (using operators like `==`, `!=`, `<`, `>`, `<=`, `>=`, `like`, `belongs`) and store the query in a variable `q` such as in:

```
1 >>> q = name=='Alex'
```

When you call `db` with a query, you define a set of records. You can store it in a variable `s` and write:

```
1 >>> s = db(q)
```

Notice that no database query has been performed so far. DAL + Query simply define a set of records in this `db` that match the query. web2py determines from the query which table (or tables) are involved and, in fact, there is no need to specify that.

6.17 select

Given a Set, `s`, you can fetch the records with the command `select`:

```
1 >>> rows = s.select()
```

It returns an iterable object of class `gluon.sql.Rows` whose elements are `Row` objects. `gluon.sql.Row` objects act like dictionaries, but their elements can also be accessed as attributes, like `gluon.storage.Storage`. The former differ from the latter because its values are readonly.

The `Rows` object allows looping over the result of the `select` and printing the selected field values for each row:

```
1 >>> for row in rows:
2         print row.id, row.name
3 Alex
```

You can do all the steps in one statement:

```
1 >>> for row in db(db.person.name=='Alex').select():
2         print row.name
3 Alex
```

The select command can take arguments. All unnamed arguments are interpreted as the names of the fields that you want to fetch. For example, you can be explicit on fetching field "id" and field "name":

```

1 >>> for row in db().select(db.person.id, db.person.name):
2     print row.name
3 Alex
4 Bob
5 Carl

```

The table attribute ALL allows you to specify all fields:

```

1 >>> for row in db().select(db.person.ALL):
2     print row.name
3 Alex
4 Bob
5 Carl

```

Notice that there is no query string passed to db. web2py understands that if you want all fields of the table person without additional information then you want all records of the table person.

An equivalent alternative syntax is the following:

```

1 >>> for row in db(db.person.id > 0).select():
2     print row.name
3 Alex
4 Bob
5 Carl

```

and web2py understands that if you ask for all records of the table person (id > 0) without additional information, then you want all the fields of table person.

6.17.1 Shortcuts

The DAL supports various code-simplifying shortcuts. In particular:

```

1 myrecord = db.mytable[id]

```

returns the record with the given `id` if it exists. If the `id` does not exist, it returns `None`. The above statement is equivalent to

```
1 myrecord = db(db.mytable.id==id).select().first()
```

You can delete records by `id`:

```
1 del db.mytable[id]
```

and this is equivalent to

```
1 db(db.mytable.id==id).delete()
```

and deletes the record with the given `id`, if it exists.

You can insert records:

```
1 db.mytable[0] = dict(myfield='somevalue')
```

It is equivalent to

```
1 db.mytable.insert(myfield='somevalue')
```

and it creates a new record with field values specified by the dictionary on the right hand side.

You can update records:

```
1 db.mytable[id] = dict(myfield='somevalue')
```

which is equivalent to

```
1 db(db.mytable.id==id).update(myfield='somevalue')
```

and it updates an existing record with field values specified by the dictionary on the right hand side.

6.17.2 Fetching a Row

Yet another convenient syntax is the following:

```

1 record = db.mytable(id)
2 record = db.mytable(db.mytable.id==id)
3 record = db.mytable(id,myfield='somevalue')

```

Apparently similar to `db.mytable[id]` the above syntax is more flexible and safer. First of all it checks whether `id` is an int (or `str(id)` is an int) and returns `None` if not (it never raises an exception). It also allows to specify multiple conditions that the record must meet. If they are not met, it also returns `None`.

6.17.3 Recursive selects

Consider the previous table `person` and a new table "dog" referencing a "person":

```

1 >>> db.define_table('dog', Field('name'), Field('owner',db.person))

```

and a simple select from this table:

```

1 >>> dogs = db(db.dog.id>0).select()

```

For each Row of dogs it is possible to fetch not just fields from the selected table (dog) but also from linked tables (recursively):

```

1 >>> for dog in dogs: print dog.info, dog.owner.name

```

Here `dog.owner.name` requires one database select for each dog in `dogs` and it is therefore inefficient. We suggest using joins whenever possible instead of recursive selects, nevertheless this is convenient and practical when accessing individual records.

You can also do it backwards, by selecting the dogs referenced by a person:

```

1 person = db.person(id)
2 for dog in person.dog.select(orderby=db.dog.name):
3     print person.name, 'owns', dog.name

```

In this last expression person.dog is a shortcut for

```
1 db(db.dog.owner==person.id)
```

i.e. the Set of dogs referenced by the current person. This syntax breaks down if the referencing table has multiple references to the referenced table. In this case one needs to be more explicit and use a full Query.

6.17.4 Serializing Rows in Views

The result of a select can be displayed in a view with the following syntax:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Records</h2>
3 {{=db().select(db.person.ALL)}}

```

and it is automatically converted into an HTML table with a header containing the column names and one row per record. The rows are marked as alternating class "even" and class "odd". Under the hood, the Rows is first converted into a SQLTABLE object (not to be confused with Table) and then serialized. The values extracted from the database are also formatted by the validators associated to the field and then escaped. (Note: Using a db in this way in a view is usually not considered good MVC practice.)

Yet it is possible and sometimes convenient to call SQLTABLE explicitly.

The SQLTABLE constructor takes the following optional arguments:

- linkto the URL or an action to be used to link reference fields (default to None)

- upload the URL or the download action to allow downloading of uploaded files (default to None)
- headers a dictionary mapping field names to their labels to be used as headers (default to {}). It can also be an instruction. Currently we support `headers='fieldname:capitalize'`.
- truncate the number of characters for truncating long values in the table (default is 16)
- columns the list of fieldnames to be shown as columns. Those not listed are not displayed. (defaults to all).
- **attributes generic helper attributes to be passed to the most external TABLE object.

Here is an example:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h1>Records</h2>
3 {{=SQLTABLE(db().select(db.person.ALL),
4     headers='fieldname:capitalize',
5     truncate=100,
6     upload=URL('download'))}
7 }}
```

6.17.5 orderby, groupby, limitby, distinct

The select command takes five optional arguments: orderby, groupby, limitby, left and cache. Here we discuss the first three.

You can fetch the records sorted by name:

```

1 >>> for row in db().select(db.person.ALL, orderby=db.person.name):
2         print row.name
3 Alex
4 Bob
5 Carl
```

You can fetch the records sorted by name in reverse order (notice the tilde):

```

1 >>> for row in db().select(db.person.ALL, orderby=~db.person.name):
2     print row.name
3 Carl
4 Bob
5 Alex

```

And you can sort the records according to multiple fields by concatenating them with a "|":

```

1 >>> for row in db().select(db.person.ALL, orderby=db.person.name|db.person.id):
2     print row.name
3 Carl
4 Bob
5 Alex

```

Using groupby together with orderby, you can group records with the same value for the specified field (this is backend specific, and is not on the GAE):

```

1 >>> for row in db().select(db.person.ALL, orderby=db.person.name,
2                             groupby=db.person.name):
3     print row.name
4 Alex
5 Bob
6 Carl

```

With the argument `distinct=True`, you can specify that you only want to select distinct records. This has the same effect as grouping using all specified fields except that it does not require sorting. When using `distinct` it is important not to select ALL fields, and in particular not to select the "id" field, else all records will always be distinct.

Here is an example:

```

1 >>> for row in db().select(db.person.name, distinct=True):
2     print row.name
3 Alex
4 Bob
5 Carl

```

With limitby, you can select a subset of the records (in this case, the first two starting at zero):

```

1 >>> for row in db().select(db.person.ALL, limitby=(0, 2)):
2     print row.name
3 Alex
4 Bob

```

Currently, "limitby" is only partially supported on MSSQL since the Microsoft database does not provide a mechanism to fetch a subset of records not starting at 0.

6.17.6 Logical Operators

Queries can be combined using the binary AND operator "&":

```

1 >>> rows = db((db.person.name=='Alex') & (db.person.id>3)).select()
2 >>> for row in rows: print row.id, row.name
3 1 Alex

```

and the binary OR operator "|":

```

1 >>> rows = db((db.person.name=='Alex') | (db.person.id>3)).select()
2 >>> for row in rows: print row.id, row.name
3 1 Alex

```

You can negate a query (or sub-query) with the != binary operator:

```

1 >>> rows = db((db.person.name!='Alex') | (db.person.id>3)).select()
2 >>> for row in rows: print row.id, row.name
3 2 Bob
4 3 Carl

```

or by explicit negation with the | unary operator:

```

1 >>> rows = db((db.person.name=='Alex') | (db.person.id>3)).select()
2 >>> for row in rows: print row.id, row.name
3 2 Bob
4 3 Carl

```

Due to Python restrictions in overloading "AND" and "OR" operators, these cannot be used in forming queries. The binary operators must be used in-

stead.

6.17.7 count, delete, update

You can count records in a set:

```
1 >>> print db(db.person.id > 0).count()
2 3
```

You can delete records in a set:

```
1 >>> db(db.person.id > 3).delete()
```

And you can update all records in a set by passing named arguments corresponding to the fields that need to be updated:

```
1 >>> db(db.person.id > 3).update(name='Ken')
```

6.17.8 Expressions

The value assigned an update statement can be an expression. For example consider this model

```
1 >>> db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name'),
3     Field('visits', 'integer', default=0))
4 >>> db(db.person.name == 'Massimo').update(
5     visits = db.person.visits + 1)
```

The values used in queries can also be expressions

```
1 >>> db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name'),
3     Field('visits', 'integer', default=0),
4     Field('clicks', 'integer', default=0))
5 >>> db(db.person.visits == db.person.clicks + 1).delete()
```

6.17.9 update_record

web2py also allows updating a single record that is already in memory using `update_record`

```
1 >>> rows = db(db.person.id > 2).select()
2 >>> row = rows[0]
3 >>> row.update_record(name='Curt')
```

This should not be confused with

```
1 >>> row.update(name='Curt')
```

because for a single row, the method `update` updates the row object but not the database record, as in the case of `update_record`.

6.17.10 first and last

Given a Rows object containing records:

```
1 >>> rows = db(query).select()
2 >>> first_row = rows.first()
3 >>> last_row = rows.last()
```

are equivalent to

```
1 >>> first_row = rows[0] if len(rows)>0 else None
2 >>> last_row = rows[-1] if len(rows)>0 else None
```

6.17.11 as_dict and as_list

A Row object can be serialized into a regular dictionary using the `as_dict()` method and a Rows object can be serialized into a list of dictionaries using the `as_list()` method. Here are some examples:

```

1 >>> rows = db(query).select()
2 >>> rows_list = rows.asList()
3 >>> first_row_dict = rows.first().asDict()

```

These methods are convenient for passing Rows to generic views and or to store Rows in sessions (since Rows objects themselves cannot be serialized since contain a reference to an open DB connection):

```

1 >>> rows = db(query).select()
2 >>> session.rows = rows # not allowed!
3 >>> session.rows = rows.asList() # allowed!

```

6.17.12 find, exclude, sort

There are times when one needs to perform two selects and one contains a subset of a previous select. In this case it is pointless to access the database again. The `find`, `exclude` and `sort` objects allow you to manipulate a Rows objects and generate another one without accessing the database. More specifically:

- `find` returns a new set of Rows filtered by a condition and leaves the original unchanged.
- `exclude` returns a new set of Rows filtered by a condition and removes them from the original Rows.
- `sort` returns a new set of Rows sorted by a condition and leaves the original unchanged.

All these methods take a single argument, a function that acts on each individual row.

Here is an example of usage:

```

1 >>> db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
2 >>> db.insert(name='John')
3 >>> db.insert(name='Max')

```

```

4 >>> db.insert(name='Alex')
5 >>> rows = db(db.person.id>0).select()
6 >>> for row in rows.find(lambda row: row.name[0]=='M'): print row.name
7 Max
8 >>> print len(rows)
9 3
10 >>> for row in rows.extract(lambda row: row.name[0]=='M'): print row.name
11 Max
12 >>> print len(rows)
13 2
14 >>> for row in rows.sort(lambda row: row.name): print row.name
15 Alex
16 John

```

They can be combined:

```

1 >>> rows = db(db.person.id>0).select()
2 >>> rows = rows.find(lambda row: 'x' in row.name).sort(lambda row: row.name)
3 >>> for row in rows: print row.name
4 Alex
5 Max

```

6.18 Computed Fields

DAL fields may have a `compute` attribute. This must be a function (or lambda) that takes a Row object and returns a value for the field. When a new record is inserted (or updated), if a value for the field is not provided, web2py tries to compute from the other field values using the `compute` function. Here is an example:

```

1 >>> db.define_table('item',
2     Field('unit_price','double'),
3     Field('quantity','integer'),
4     Field('total_price',compute=lambda r: r['unit_price']*r['quantity']))
5 >>> r = db.item.insert(unit_price=1.99, quantity=5)
6 >>> print r.total_price
7 9.95

```

Notice that the computed value is stored in the db and it is not computed on retrieval, as in the case of virtual fields, described later. Two typical applica-

tions of computed fields are:

- in wiki applications, to store the processed input wiki text as html, to avoid re-processing on every request
- for searching, to compute normalized values for a field, to be used for searching.

6.19 Virtual Fields

Virtual fields are also computed fields (as in the previous subsection) but they differ from those because they are "virtual" in the sense that they are not stored in the db and they are computed every time records are extracted from the database. they can be used to simplify the user's code without using additional storage but they do cannot be used for searching.

In order to define one or more virtual field, you have to define a container class, instantiate it and link it to a table or to a select. For example, consider the following table:

```

1 >>> db.define_table('item',
2     Field('unit_price','double'),
3     Field('quantity','integer'),
```

One can define a virtual field total price as

```

1 >>> class MyVirtualFields:
2     def total_price(self):
3         return self.item.unit_price*self.item.quantity
4 >>> db.item.virtualfields.append(MyVirtualFields())
```

Notice that each method of the class that takes a single argument (self) is a new virtual fields. self refers to each one row of the select. Field values are referred by full path as in `self.item.unit_price`. The table is linked to the virtual fields by appending an instance of the class to the table's `virtualfields` attribute.

Virtual fields can also access recursive fields as in

```

1 >>> db.define_table('item',
2                     Field('unit_price','double'))
3 >>> db.define_table('order_item',
4                     Field('item',db.item),
5                     Field('quantity','integer'))
6 >>> class MyVirtualFields:
7         def total_price(self):
8             return self.order_item.item.unit_price*self.order_item.quantity
9 >>> db.order_item.virtualfields.append(MyVirtualFields())

```

Notice the recursive field access `self.order_item.item.unit_price` where `self` is the looping record.

They can also act on the result of a JOIN

```

1 >>> db.define_table('item',
2                     Field('unit_price','double'))
3 >>> db.define_table('order_item',
4                     Field('item',db.item),
5                     Field('quantity','integer'))
6 >>> rows = db(db.order_item.item==db.item.id).select()
7 >>> class MyVirtualFields:
8     def total_price(self):
9         return self.item.unit_price*self.order_item.quantity
10 >>> rows.setvirtualfields(order_item=MyVirtualFields())
11 >>> for row in rows: print row.order_item.total_price

```

Notice how in this case the syntax is different. The virtual field accesses both `self.item.unit_price` and `self.order_item.quantity` which belong to the join select. The virtual field is attached to the rows of the table using the `setvirtualfields` method of the `rows` object. This method takes an arbitrary number of named arguments and can be used to set multiple virtual fields, defined in multiple classes, and attach them to multiple tables:

```

1 >>> class MyVirtualFields1:
2     def discounted_unit_price(self):
3         return self.item.unit_price*0.90
4 >>> class MyVirtualFields2:
5     def total_price(self):
6         return self.item.unit_price*self.order_item.quantity
7     def discounted_total_price(self):
8         return self.item.discounted_unit_price*self.order_item.quantity

```

```

9 >>> rows.setvirtualfields(item=MyVirtualFields1(),order_item=MyVirtualFields2())
10 >>> for row in rows: print row.order_item.discounted_total_price

```

Virtual fields can be lazy, all they need to do is return a function and accessed by calling the function:

```

1 >>> db.define_table('item',
2                     Field('unit_price','double'),
3                     Field('quantity','integer'),
4 >>> class MyVirtualFields:
5         def lazy_total_price(self):
6             def lazy(self=self):
7                 return self.item.unit_price*self.item.quantity
8             return lazy
9 >>> db.item.virtualfields.append(MyVirtualFields())
10 >>> for item in db(db.item.id>0).select(): print item.lazy_total_price()

```

or shorter using a lambda function:

```

1 >>> class MyVirtualFields:
2     def lazy_total_price(self):
3         return lambda self=self: self.item.unit_price*self.item.quantity

```

6.20 One to Many Relation

To illustrate how to implement one to many relations with the web2py DAL, define another table "dog" that refers to the table "person" which we redefine here:

```

1 >>> db.define_table('person',
2                     Field('name'),
3                     format='%(name)s')
4 >>> db.define_table('dog',
5                     Field('name'),
6                     Field('owner', db.person),
7                     format='%(name)s')

```

Table "dog" has two fields, the name of the dog and the owner of the dog. When a field type is another table, it is intended that the field reference the other table by its id. In fact, you can print the actual type value and get:

```

1 >>> print db.dog.owner.type
2 reference person

```

Now, insert three dogs, two owned by Alex and one by Bob:

```

1 >>> db.dog.insert(name='Skipper', owner=1)
2
3 >>> db.dog.insert(name='Snoopy', owner=1)
4
5 >>> db.dog.insert(name='Puppy', owner=2)
6
3

```

You can select as you did for any other table:

```

1 >>> for row in db(db.dog.owner==1).select():
2     print row.name
3 Skipper
4 Snoopy

```

Because a dog has a reference to a person, a person can have many dogs, so a record of table person now acquires a new attribute dog, which is a Set, that defines the dogs of that person. This allows looping over all persons and fetching their dogs easily:

```

1 >>> for person in db().select(db.person.ALL):
2     print person.name
3     for dog in person.dog.select():
4         print '    ', dog.name
5 Alex
6     Skipper
7     Snoopy
8 Bob
9     Puppy
10 Carl

```

6.20.1 Inner Joins

Another way to achieve a similar result is by using a join, specifically an INNER JOIN. web2py performs joins automatically and transparently when the query links two or more tables as in the following example:

```

1 >>> rows = db(db.person.id==db.dog.owner).select()
2 >>> for row in rows:
3     print row.person.name, 'has', row.dog.name
4 Alex has Skipper
5 Alex has Snoopy
6 Bob has Puppy

```

Observe that web2py did a join, so the rows now contain two records, one from each table, linked together. Because the two records may have fields with conflicting names, you need to specify the table when extracting a field value from a row. This means that while before you could do:

```
1 row.name
```

and it was obvious whether this was the name of a person or a dog, in the result of a join you have to be more explicit and say:

```
1 row.person.name
```

or:

```
1 row.dog.name
```

6.20.2 Left Outer Join

Notice that Carl did not appear in the list above because he has no dogs. If you intend to select on persons (whether they have dogs or not) and their dogs (if they have any), then you need to perform a LEFT OUTER JOIN. This is done using the argument "left" of the select command. Here is an example:

```

1 >>> rows=db().select(db.person.ALL, db.dog.ALL, left=db.dog.on(db.person.id==db.dog
2 .owner))
2 >>> for row in rows:
3     print row.person.name, 'has', row.dog.name
4 Alex has Skipper
5 Alex has Snoopy
6 Bob has Puppy
7 Carl has None

```

where:

```
1 left = db.dog.on(...)
```

does the left join query. Here the argument of `db.dog.on` is the condition required for the join (the same used above for the inner join). In the case of a left join, it is necessary to be explicit about which fields to select.

6.20.3 Grouping and Counting

When doing joins, sometimes you want to group rows according to certain criteria and count them. For example, count the number of dogs owned by every person. web2py allows this as well. First, you need a count operator. Second, you want to join the person table with the dog table by owner. Third, you want to select all rows (person + dog), group them by person, and count them while grouping:

```
1 >>> count = db.person.id.count()
2 >>> for row in db(db.person.id==db.dog.owner).select(db.person.name, count, groupby
   =db.person.id):
3     print row.person.name, row[count]
4 Alex 2
5 Bob 1
```

Notice the count operator (which is built-in) is used as a field. The only issue here is in how to retrieve the information. Each row clearly contains a person and the count, but the count is not a field of a person nor is it a table. So where does it go? It goes into the storage object representing the record with a key equal to the query expression itself.

6.21 Many to Many

In the previous examples, we allowed a dog to have one owner but one person could have many dogs. What if Skipper was owned by Alex and Curt?

This requires a many-to-many relation, and it is realized via an intermediate table that links a person to a dog via an ownership relation.

Here is how to do it:

```

1 >>> db.define_table('person',
2                      Field('name'))
3 >>> db.define_table('dog',
4                      Field('name'))
5 >>> db.define_table('ownership',
6                      Field('person', db.person),
7                      Field('dog', db.dog))

```

the existing ownership relationship can now be rewritten as:

```

1 >>> db.ownership.insert(person=1, dog=1) # Alex owns Skipper
2 >>> db.ownership.insert(person=1, dog=2) # Alex owns Snoopy
3 >>> db.ownership.insert(person=2, dog=3) # Bob owns Puppy

```

Now you can add the new relation that Curt co-owns Skipper:

```

1 >>> db.ownership.insert(person=3, dog=1) # Curt owns Skipper too

```

Because you now have a three-way relation between tables, it may be convenient to define a new set on which to perform operations:

```

1 >>> persons_and_dogs = db((db.person.id==db.ownership.person) | (db.dog.id==db.
    ownership.dog))

```

Now it is easy to select all persons and their dogs from the new Set:

```

1 >>> for row in persons_and_dogs.select():
2         print row.person.name, row.dog.name
3 Alex Skipper
4 Alex Snoopy
5 Bob Puppy
6 Curt Skipper

```

Similarly, you can search for all dogs owned by Alex:

```

1 >>> for row in persons_and_dogs(db.person.name=='Alex').select():
2         print row.dog.name
3 Skipper
4 Snoopy

```

and all owners of Skipper:

```

1 >>> for row in persons_and_dogs(db.dog.name=='Skipper').select():
2     print row.owner.name
3 Alex
4 Curt

```

A lighter alternative to Many 2 Many relations is a tagging. Tagging is discussed in the context of the IS_IN_DB validator. Tagging works even on database backends that does not support JOINs like the Google App Engine.

6.22 *Many to Many, list:<type>, and contains*

web2py provides the following special field types:

```

1 list:string
2 list:integer
3 list:reference <table>

```

They can contain lists of strings, of integers and of references respectively.

On Google App Engine list:string is mapped into StringListProperty, the other two are mapped into ListProperty(int). On relational databases they all mapped into text fields which contain the list of items separated by |. For example [1,2,3] is mapped into |1|2|3|.

For lists of string the items are escaped so that any | in the item is replaced by a |||. Anyway this is an internal representation and it is transparent to the user.

You can use list:string, for example, in the following way:

```

1 >>> db.define_table('product',
2                     Field('name'),
3                     Field('colors','list:string'))
4 >>> db.product.colors.requires=IS_IN_SET(['red','blue','green'])
5 >>> db.product.insert(name='Toy Car',colors=['red','green'])
6 >>> products = db(db.product.colors.contains('red')).select()

```

```

7 >>> for item in products: print item.name, item.colors
8 Toy Car ['red', 'green']

```

`list:integer` works in the same way but the items must be integers.

As usual the requirements are enforced at the level of forms, not at the level of `insert`.

For `list:<type>` fields the `contains(value)` operator maps into a non trivial query that checks for lists containing the value. The `contains` operator also works for regular string and text fields and it maps into a `LIKE '%value%`.

The `list:reference` and the `contains(value)` operator are particularly useful to de-normalize many-to-many relations. Here is an example:

```

1 >>> db.define_table('tag',Field('name'),format='%(name)s')
2 >>> db.define_table('product',
3     Field('name'),
4     Field('tags','list:reference tag'))
5 >>> a = db.tag.insert(name='red')
6 >>> b = db.tag.insert(name='green')
7 >>> c = db.tag.insert(name='blue')
8 >>> db.product.insert(name='Toy Car',tags=[a, b, c])
9 >>> products = db(db.product.tags.contains(b)).select()
10 >>> for item in products: print item.name, item.tags
11 Toy Car [1, 2, 3]
12 >>> for item in products:
13     print item.name, db.product.tags.represent(item.tags)
14 Toy Car red, green, blue

```

Notice that the `list:reference tag` field gets a default constraint:

```

1 requires = IS_IN_DB(db,'tag.id',db.tag._format,multiple=True)

```

which produces a `SELECT/OPTION` multiple drop-box in forms.

Also notice that this field gets a default `represent` attribute which represents the list of references as a comma-separated list of formatted references. This is used in read forms and `SQLTABLEs`.

While list:reference has a default validator and a default representation, list:integer and list:string do not. So these two need a IS_IN_SET or a IS_IN_DB validator if you want to use them in forms.

6.23 Other Operators

web2py has other operators that provide an API to access equivalent SQL operators. Let's define another table "log" to store security events, their event_time and severity, where the severity is an integer number.

```
1 >>> db.define_table('log', Field('event'),
2                         Field('event_time', 'datetime'),
3                         Field('severity', 'integer'))
```

As before, insert a few events, a "port scan", an "xss injection" and an "unauthorized login". For the sake of the example, you can log events with the same event_time but with different severities (1, 2, 3 respectively).

```
1 >>> import datetime
2 >>> now = datetime.datetime.now()
3 >>> print db.log.insert(event='port scan', event_time=now, severity=1)
4 1
5 >>> print db.log.insert(event='xss injection', event_time=now, severity=2)
6 2
7 >>> print db.log.insert(event='unauthorized login', event_time=now, severity=3)
8 3
```

6.23.1 like, startswith, contains, upper, lower

Fields have a like operator that you can use to match strings:

```
1 >>> for row in db(db.log.event.like('port%')).select():
2         print row.event
3
4 port scan
```

Here "port%" indicates a string starting with "port". The percent sign character, "%", is a wild-card character that means "any sequence of characters". web2py also provides some shortcuts:

```

1 db.mytable.myfield.startswith('value')
2 db.mytable.myfield.contains('value')
```

which are equivalent respectively to

```

1 db.mytable.myfield.like('value%')
2 db.mytable.myfield.like('%value%')
```

Notice that contains has a special meaning for list:<type> fields and it was discussed in a previous section.

Similarly, you can use upper and lower methods to convert the value of the field to upper or lower case, and you can also combine them with the like operator.

```

1 >>> for row in db(db.log.event.upper().like('PORT%')).select():
2         print row.event
3 port scan
```

6.23.2 year, month, day, hour, minutes, seconds

The date and datetime fields have day, month and year methods. The datetime and time fields have hour, minutes and seconds methods. Here is an example:

```

1 >>> for row in db(db.log.event_time.year()==2009).select():
2         print row.event
3 port scan
4 xss injection
5 unauthorized login
```

6.23.3 belongs

The SQL IN operator is realized via the belongs method which returns true when the field value belongs to the specified set (list of tuples):

```

1 >>> for row in db(db.log.severity.belongs((1, 2))).select():
2         print row.event
3 port scan
4 xss injection

```

The DAL also allows a nested select as the argument of the belongs operator. The only caveat is that the nested select has to be a `_select`, not a `select`, and only one field has to be selected explicitly, the one that defines the set.

```

1 >>> bad_days = db(db.log.severity==3)._select(db.log.event_time)
2 >>> for row in db(db.log.event_time.belongs(bad_days)).select():
3         print row.event
4 port scan
5 xss injection
6 unauthorized login

```

Previously, you have used the count operator to count records. Similarly, you can use the sum operator to add (sum) the values of a specific field from a group of records. As in the case of count, the result of a sum is retrieved via the store object:

```

1 >>> sum = db.log.severity.sum()
2 >>> print db().select(sum).first()[sum]
3

```

6.24 Generating raw SQL

Sometimes you need to generate the SQL but not execute it. This is easy to do with web2py since every command that performs database IO has an equivalent command that does not, and simply returns the SQL that would have been executed. These commands have the same names and syntax as the functional ones, but they start with an underscore:

Here is `_insert`

```
>>> print db.person._insert(name='Alex')
2 INSERT INTO person(name) VALUES ('Alex');
```

Here is `_count`

```
>>> print db(db.person.name=='Alex')._count()
2 SELECT count(*) FROM person WHERE person.name='Alex';
```

Here is `_select`

```
>>> print db(db.person.name=='Alex')._select()
2 SELECT person.id, person.name FROM person WHERE person.name='Alex';
```

Here is `_delete`

```
>>> print db(db.person.name=='Alex')._delete()
2 DELETE FROM person WHERE person.name='Alex';
```

And finally, here is `_update`

```
>>> print db(db.person.name=='Alex')._update()
2 UPDATE person SET WHERE person.name='Alex';
```

Moreover you can always use `db._lastsql` to return the most recent SQL code, whether it was executed manually using `executesql` or was SQL generated by the DAL.

6.25 Exporting and Importing Data

6.25.1 CSV (one table at a time)

When a DALRows object is converted to a string it is automatically serialized in CSV:

```

1 >>> rows = db(db.person.id==db.dog.owner).select()
2 >>> print rows
3 person.id, person.name, dog.id, dog.name, dog.owner
4 1, Alex, 1, Skipper, 1
5 1, Alex, 2, Snoopy, 1
6 2, Bob, 3, Puppy, 2

```

You can serialize a single table in CSV and store it in a file "test.csv":

```

1 >>> open('test.csv', 'w').write(str(db(db.person.id).select()))

```

and you can easily read it back with:

```

1 >>> db.person.import_from_csv_file(open('test.csv', 'r'))

```

When importing, web2py looks for the field names in the CSV header. In this example, it finds two columns: "person.id" and "person.name". It ignores the "person." prefix, and it ignores the "id" fields. Then all records are appended and assigned new ids. Both of these operations can be performed via the appadmin web interface.

6.25.2 CSV (*all tables at once*)

In web2py, you can backup/restore an entire database with two commands:

To export:

```

1 >>> db.export_to_csv_file(open('somefile.csv', 'wb'))

```

To import:

```

1 >>> db.import_from_csv_file(open('somefile.csv', 'rb'))

```

This mechanism can be used even if the importing database is of a different type than the exporting database. The data is stored in "somefile.csv" as a CSV file where each table starts with one line that indicates the tablename, and another line with the fieldnames:

```

1 TABLE tablename
2 field1, field2, field3, ...

```

Two tables are separated \r\n\r\n. The file ends with the line

```

1 END

```

The file does not include uploaded files if these are not stored in the database. In any case it is easy enough to zip the "uploads" folder separately.

When importing, the new records will be appended to the database if it is not empty. In general the new imported records will not have the same record id as the original (saved) records but web2py will restore references so they are not broken, even if the id values may change.

If a table contains a field called "uuid", this field will be used to identify duplicates. Also, if an imported record has the same "uuid" as an existing record, the previous record will be updated.

6.25.3 CSV and Remote Database Synchronization

Consider the following model:

```

1 db = DAL('sqlite:memory:')
2 db.define_table('person',
3     Field('name'),
4     format='%(name)s')
5 db.define_table('dog',
6     Field('owner', db.person),
7     Field('name'),
8     format='%(name)s')
9
10 if not db(db.person.id>0).count():
11     id = db.person.insert(name="Massimo")
12     db.dog.insert(owner=id, name="Snoopy")

```

Each record is identified by an ID and referenced by that ID. If you have two copies of the database used by distinct web2py installations, the ID is unique

only within each database and not across the databases. This is a problem when merging records from different databases.

In order to make a record uniquely identifiable across databases, they must:

- have a unique id (UUID),
- have a event_time (to figure out which one is more recent if multiple copies),
- reference the UUID instead of the id.

This can be achieved without modifying web2py. Here is what to do:

1. Change the above model into:

```

1 db.define_table('person',
2     Field('uuid', length=64, default=uuid.uuid4()),
3     Field('modified_on', 'datetime', default=now),
4     Field('name'),
5     format='%(name)s')
6
7 db.define_table('dog',
8     Field('uuid', length=64, default=uuid.uuid4()),
9     Field('modified_on', 'datetime', default=now),
10    Field('owner', length=64),
11    Field('name'),
12    format='%(name)s')
13
14 db.dog.owner.requires = IS_IN_DB(db,'person.uuid','%(name)s')
15
16 if not db(db.person.id).count():
17     id = uuid.uuid4()
18     db.person.insert(name="Massimo", uuid=id)
19     db.dog.insert(owner=id, name="Snoopy")

```

2. Create a controller action to export the database:

```

1 def export():
2     s = StringIO.StringIO()
3     db.export_to_csv_file(s)
4     response.headers['Content-Type'] = 'text/csv'
5     return s.getvalue()

```

3. Create a controller action to import a saved copy of the other database and sync records:

```

1 def import_and_sync():
2     form = FORM(INPUT(_type='file', _name='data'), INPUT(_type='submit'))
3     if form.accepts(request.vars):
4         db.import_from_csv_file(form.vars.data.file,unique=False)
5         # for every table
6         for table in db.tables:
7             # for every uuid, delete all but the latest
8             items = db(db[table].id>0).select(db[table].id,
9                                              db[table].uuid,
10                                             orderby=db[table].modified_on,
11                                             groupby=db[table].uuid)
12             for item in items:
13                 db((db[table].uuid==item.uuid)& \
14                     (db[table].id!=item.id)).delete()
15     return dict(form=form)

```

4. Create an index manually to make the search by uuid faster.

Notice that steps 2 and 3 work for every database model; they are not specific for this example.

Alternatively, you can use XML-RPC to export/import the file.

If the records reference uploaded files, you also need to export/import the content of the uploads folder. Notice that files therein are already labeled by UUIDs so you do not need to worry about naming conflicts and references.

6.25.4 HTML/XML (one table at a time)

DALRows objects also have an `xml` method (like helpers) that serializes it to XML/HTML:

```

1 >>> rows = db(db.person.id > 0).select()
2 >>> print rows.xml()
3 <table>
4   <thead>
5     <tr>

```

```

6      <th>person.id</th>
7      <th>person.name</th>
8      <th>dog.id</th>
9      <th>dog.name</th>
10     <th>dog.owner</th>
11   </tr>
12 </thead>
13 <tbody>
14   <tr class="even">
15     <td>1</td>
16     <td>Alex</td>
17     <td>1</td>
18     <td>Skipper</td>
19     <td>1</td>
20   </tr>
21   ...
22 </tbody>
23 </table>
```

If you need to serialize the DALRows in any other XML format with custom tags, you can easily do that using the universal TAG helper and the * notation:

```

1 >>> rows = db(db.person.id > 0).select()
2 >>> print TAG.result(*[TAG.row(*[TAG.field(r[f], _name=f) \
3           for f in db.person.fields]) for r in rows])
4 <result>
5   <row>
6     <field name="id">1</field>
7     <field name="name">Alex</field>
8   </row>
9   ...
10 </result>
```

6.25.5 Data Representation

The `export_to_csv_file` function accepts a keyword argument named `represent`. When `True` it will use the `columns represent` function while exporting the data instead of the raw data.

The function also accepts a keyword argument named `colnames` that should

contain a list of column names one wish to export. It defaults to all columns.

Both `export_to_csv_file` and `import_from_csv_file` accept keyword arguments that tell the csv parser the format to save/load the files:

- `delimiter`: delimiter to separate values (default ',')
- `quotechar`: character to use to quote string values (default to double quotes)
- `quoting`: quote system (default `csv.QUOTE_MINIMAL`)

Here is some example usage:

```

1 >>> import csv
2 >>> db.export_to_csv_file(open('/tmp/test.txt', 'w'),
3     delimiter='|',
4     quotechar='"',
5     quoting=csv.QUOTE_NONNUMERIC)
6     quoting=csv.QUOTE_NONNUMERIC)

```

Which would render something similar to

```
"hello"|35|"this is the text description"|"2009-03-03"
```

For more information consult the official Python documentation (64)

6.26 Caching Selects

The `select` method also takes a `cache` argument, which defaults to `None`. For caching purposes, it should be set to a tuple where the first element is the cache model (`cache.ram`, `cache.disk`, etc.), and the second element is the expiration time in seconds.

In the following example, you see a controller that caches a select on the previously defined `db.log` table. The actual select fetches data from the back-end database no more frequently than once every 60 seconds and stores the

result in cache.ram. If the next call to this controller occurs in less than 60 seconds since the last database IO, it simply fetches the previous data from cache.ram.

```

1 def cache_db_select():
2     logs = db().select(db.log.ALL, cache=(cache.ram, 60))
3     return dict(logs=logs)

```

The results of a select are complex, un-pickleable objects; they cannot be stored in a session and cannot be cached in any other way than the one explained here.

6.27 Self-Reference and Aliases

It is possible to define tables with fields that refer to themselves although the usual notation may fail. The following code would be wrong because it uses a variable `db.person` before it is defined:

```

1 db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name'),
3     Field('father_id', db.person),
4     Field('mother_id', db.person))

```

The solution consists of using an alternate notation

```

1 db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name'),
3     Field('father_id', 'reference person'),
4     Field('mother_id', 'reference person'))

```

In fact `db.tablename` and "reference tablename" are equivalent field types.

If the table refers to itself, then it is not possible to perform a JOIN to select a person and its parents without use of the SQL "AS" keyword. This is achieved in web2py using the `with_alias`. Here is an example:

```

1 >>> Father = db.person.with_alias('father')
2 >>> Mother = db.person.with_alias('mother')

```

```

3 >>> db.person.insert(name='Massimo')
4 1
5 >>> db.person.insert(name='Claudia')
6 2
7 >>> db.person.insert(name='Marco', father_id=1, mother_id=2)
8 3
9 >>> rows = db().select(db.person.name, Father.name, Mother.name,
10      left=(Father.on(Father.id==db.person.father_id),
11            Mother.on(Mother.id==db.person.mother_id)))
12 >>> for row in rows:
13     print row.person.name, row.father.name, row.mother.name
14 Massimo None None
15 Claudia None None
16 Marco Massimo Claudia

```

Notice that we have chosen to make a distinction between:

- "father_id": the field name used in the table "person";
- "father": the alias we want to use for the table referenced by the above field; this is communicated to the database;
- "Father": the variable used by web2py to refer to that alias.

The difference is subtle, and there is nothing wrong in using the same name for the three of them:

```

1 db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name'),
3     Field('father', 'reference person'),
4     Field('mother', 'reference person'))
5 >>> father = db.person.with_alias('father')
6 >>> mother = db.person.with_alias('mother')
7 >>> db.person.insert(name='Massimo')
8 1
9 >>> db.person.insert(name='Claudia')
10 2
11 >>> db.person.insert(name='Marco', father=1, mother=2)
12 3
13 >>> rows = db().select(db.person.name, father.name, mother.name,
14      left=(father.on(father.id==db.person.father),
15            mother.on(mother.id==db.person.mother)))
16 >>> for row in rows:
17     print row.person.name, row.father.name, row.mother.name
18 Massimo None None

```

```

19 Claudia None None
20 Marco Massimo Claudia

```

But it is important to have the distinction clear in order to build correct queries.

6.28 Table Inheritance

It is possible to create a table that contains all the fields from another table. It is sufficient to pass the other table in place of a field to `define_table`. For example

```

1 db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
2 db.define_table('doctor', db.person, Field('specialization'))

```

It is also possible to define a dummy table that is not stored in a database in order to reuse it in multiple other places. For example:

```

1 signature = db.Table(db, 'signature',
2     Field('created_on', 'datetime', default=request.now),
3     Field('created_by', db.auth_user, default=auth.user_id),
4     Field('updated_on', 'datetime', default=request.now),
5     Field('updated_by', db.auth_user, update=auth.user_id))
6
7 db.define_table('payment', signature, Field('amount', 'double'))

```

This example assumes that standard web2py authentication is enabled.

7

Forms and Validators

There are four distinct ways to build forms in web2py:

- `FORM` provides a low-level implementation in terms of HTML helpers. A `FORM` object can be serialized into HTML and is aware of the fields it contains. A `FORM` object knows how to validate submitted form values.
- `SQLFORM` provides a high-level API for building create, update and delete forms from an existing database table.
- `SQLFORM.factory` is an abstraction layer on top of `SQLFORM` in order to take advantage of the form generation features even if there is no database present. It generates a form very similar to `SQLFORM` from the description of a table but without the need to create the database table.
- `CRUD` methods. These are functionally equivalent to `SQLFORM` and are based on `SQLFORM`, but provide a more compact notation.

All these forms are self-aware and, if the input does not pass validation, they can modify themselves and add error messages. The forms can be queried for the validated variables and for error messages that have been generated by validation.

Arbitrary HTML code can be inserted into or extracted from the form using helpers.

7.1 FORM

Consider as an example a **test** application with the following "default.py" controller:

```
1 def display_form():
2     return dict()
```

and the associated "default/display_form.html" view:

```
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h2>Input form</h2>
3 <form enctype="multipart/form-data"
4     action="{{=URL()}}" method="post">
5 Your name:
6 <input name="name" />
7 <input type="submit" />
8 </form>
9 <h2>Submitted variables</h2>
10 {{=BEAUTIFY(request.vars)}}
```

This is a regular HTML form that asks for the user's name. When you fill the form and click the submit button, the form self-submits, and the variable `request.vars.name` and its value is displayed at the bottom.

You can generate the same form using helpers. This can be done in the view or in the action. Since web2py processed the form in the action, it is OK to define the form in the action.

Here is the new controller:

```
1 def display_form():
2     form=FORM('Your name:', INPUT(_name='name'), INPUT(_type='submit'))
3     return dict(form=form)
```

and the associated "default/display_form.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h2>Input form</h2>
3 {{=form}}
4 <h2>Submitted variables</h2>
5 {{=BEAUTIFY(request.vars)}}

```

The code so far is equivalent to the previous code, but the form is generated by the statement `{{=form}}` which serializes the FORM object.

Now we add one level of complexity by adding form validation and processing.

Change the controller as follows:

```

1 def display_form():
2     form=FORM('Your name:',
3               INPUT(_name='name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
4               INPUT(_type='submit'))
5     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
6         response.flash = 'form accepted'
7     elif form.errors:
8         response.flash = 'form has errors'
9     else:
10        response.flash = 'please fill the form'
11        return dict(form=form)

```

and the associated "default/display_form.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h2>Input form</h2>
3 {{=form}}
4 <h2>Submitted variables</h2>
5 {{=BEAUTIFY(request.vars)}}
6 <h2>Accepted variables</h2>
7 {{=BEAUTIFY(form.vars)}}
8 <h2>Errors in form</h2>
9 {{=BEAUTIFY(form.errors)}}

```

Notice that:

- In the action, we added the `requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()` validator for the input

field "name".

- In the action, we added a call to `form.accepts(...)`
- In the view, we are printing `form.vars` and `form.errors` as well as the form and `request.vars`.

All the work is done by the `accepts` method of the `form` object. It filters the `request.vars` according to the declared requirements (expressed by validators). `accepts` stores those variables that pass validation into `form.vars`. If a field value does not meet a requirement, the failing validator returns an error and the error is stored in `form.errors`. Both `form.vars` and `form.errors` are `gluon.storage.Storage` objects similar to `request.vars`. The former contains the values that passed validation, for example:

```
1 form.vars.name = "Max"
```

The latter contains the errors, for example:

```
1 form.errors.name = "Cannot be empty!"
```

The full signature of the `accepts` method is the following:

```
1 form.accepts(vars, session=None, formname='default',
2               keepvalues=False, onvalidation=None,
3               dbio=True, hideerror=False):
```

The meaning of the optional parameters is explain in the next sub-sections.

The `accepts` function returns `True` if the form is accepted and `False` otherwise. A form is not accepted if it has errors or when it has not been submitted (for example, the first time it is shown).

Here is how this page looks the first time it is displayed:

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "test" with the URL http://127.0.0.1:8000/test/default/display_form. The page has a green header bar with the text "test" and "customize me!". Below the header is a navigation bar with "Index" and "Edit" links. The main content area contains:

- Input form**: A form field labeled "Your name:" containing "Max". To its right is a "Submit" button.
- Submitted variables**: A section showing the variable "name" with the value "Max".
- Accepted variables**: A section showing the variable "name" with the value "Max".
- Errors in form**: A section with the message "please fill the form" enclosed in a red border.

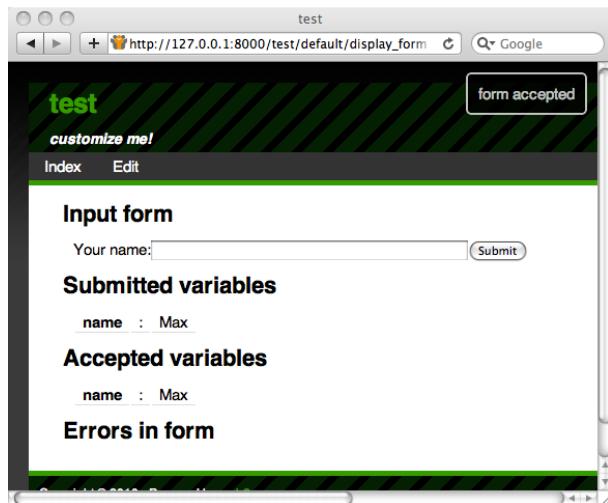
At the bottom of the page is a footer bar with the text "Copyright © 2010 - Powered by web2py".

Here is how it looks upon invalid submission:

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "test" with the URL http://127.0.0.1:8000/test/default/display_form. The page has a green header bar with the text "test" and "customize me!". Below the header is a navigation bar with "Index" and "Edit" links. The main content area contains:

- Input form**: A form field labeled "Your name:" containing " ". Below it is a red error message "enter a value". To its right is a "Submit" button.
- Submitted variables**: A section showing the variable "name" with the value " ".
- Accepted variables**: A section showing the variable "name" with the value " ".
- Errors in form**: A section with the message "form has errors" enclosed in a red border.

Here is how it looks upon a valid submission:



7.1.1 Hidden fields

When the above form object is serialized by `{=form}`, and because of the previous call to the `accepts` method, it now looks like this:

```

1 <form enctype="multipart/form-data" action="" method="post">
2 your name:
3 <input name="name" />
4 <input type="submit" />
5 <input value="783531473471" type="hidden" name="_formkey" />
6 <input value="default" type="hidden" name="_formname" />
7 </form>
```

Notice the presence of two hidden fields: `"_formkey"` and `"_formname"`. Their presence is triggered by the call to `accepts` and they play two different and important roles:

- The hidden field called `"_formkey"` is a one-time token that web2py uses to prevent double submission of forms. The value of this key is generated when the form is serialized and stored in the session. When the form is submitted this value must match, or else `accepts` returns `False` without

errors as if the form was not submitted at all. This is because web2py cannot determine whether the form was submitted correctly.

- The hidden field called "_formname" is generated by web2py as a name for the form, but the name can be overridden. This field is necessary to allow pages that contain and process multiple forms. web2py distinguishes the different submitted forms by their names.
- Optional hidden fields specified as FORM(...,hidden=dict(...)).

The role of these hidden fields and their usage in custom forms and pages with multiple forms is discussed in more detail later in the chapter.

If the form above is submitted with an empty "name" field, the form does not pass validation. When the form is serialized again it appears as:

```

1 <form enctype="multipart/form-data" action="" method="post">
2 your name:
3 <input value="" name="name" />
4 <div class="error">cannot be empty!</div>
5 <input type="submit" />
6 <input value="783531473471" type="hidden" name="_formkey" />
7 <input value="default" type="hidden" name="_formname" />
8 </form>
```

Notice the presence of a DIV of class "error" in the serialized form. web2py inserts this error message in the form to notify the visitor about the field that did not pass validation. The `accepts` method, upon submission, determines that the form is submitted, checks whether the field "name" is empty and whether it is required, and eventually inserts the error message from the validator into the form.

The base "layout.html" view is expected to handle DIVs of class "error". The default layout uses jQuery effects to make errors appear and slide down with a red background. See Chapter 10 for more details.

7.1.2 keepvalues

The optional argument `keepvalues` tells web2py what to do when a form is accepted and there is no redirection, so the same form is displayed again. By default the form is cleared. If `keepvalues` is set to `True`, the form is pre-populated with the previously inserted values. This is useful when you have a form that is supposed to be used repeatedly to insert multiple similar records. If the `dbio` argument is set to `False`, web2py will not perform any DB insert/update after accepting form. If `hideerror` is set to `True` and the form contains errors, these will not be displayed when the form is rendered (it will be up to you to display them from `form.errors` somehow). The `onvalidation` argument is explained below.

7.1.3 onvalidation

The `onvalidation` argument can be `None` or can be a function that takes the form and returns nothing. Such a function would be called and passed the form, immediately after validation (if validation passes) and before anything else happens. The purpose of this function is multifold. It can be used, for example, to perform additional checks on the form and eventually add errors to the form. It can also be used to compute the values of some fields based on the values of other fields. It can be used to trigger some action (like sending an email) before a record is created/updated.

Here is an example:

```

1 db.define_table('numbers',
2     Field('a', 'integer'),
3     Field('b', 'integer'),
4     Field('c', 'integer', readable=False, writable=False))
5
6 def my_form_processing(form):
7     c = form.vars.a * form.vars.b
8     if c < 0:
9         form.errors.b = 'a*b cannot be negative'
10    else:

```

```

11     form.vars.c = c
12
13 def insert_numbers():
14     form = SQLFORM(db.numbers)
15     if form.accepts(request.vars, session,
16                     onvalidation=my_form_processing)
17         session.flash = 'record inserted'
18         redirect(URL())
19     return dict(form=form)

```

7.1.4 Forms and redirection

The most common way to use forms is via self-submission, so that the submitted field variables are processed by the same action that generated the form. Once the form is accepted, it is unusual to display the current page again (something we are doing here only to keep things simple). It is more common to redirect the visitor to a "next" page.

Here is the new example controller:

```

1 def display_form():
2     form = FORM('Your name:',
3                 INPUT(_name='name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
4                 INPUT(_type='submit'))
5     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
6         session.flash = 'form accepted'
7         redirect(URL('next'))
8     elif form.errors:
9         response.flash = 'form has errors'
10    else:
11        response.flash = 'please fill the form'
12    return dict(form=form)
13
14 def next():
15     return dict()

```

In order to set a flash on the next page instead of the current page you must use `session.flash` instead of `response.flash`. web2py moves the former into the latter after redirection. Note that using `session.flash` requires that you do not `session.forget()`.

7.1.5 Multiple forms per page

The content of this section applies to both `FORM` and `SQLFORM` objects.

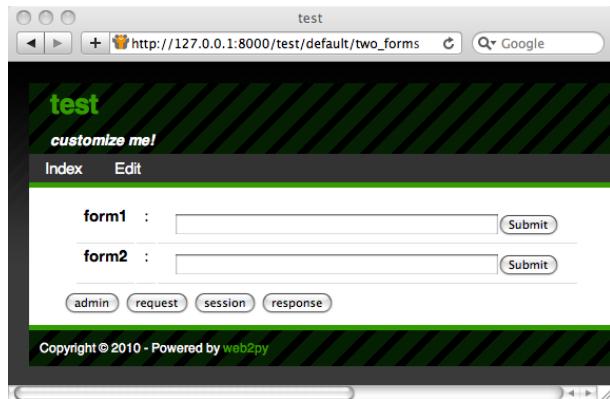
It is possible to have multiple forms per page, but you must allow web2py to distinguish them. If these are derived by `SQLFORM` from different tables, then web2py gives them different names automatically; otherwise you need to explicitly give them different form names. Moreover, when multiple forms are present on the same page, the mechanism for preventing double submission breaks, and you must omit the `session` argument when calling the `accepts` method. Here is an example:

```

1 def two_forms():
2     form1 = FORM(INPUT(_name='name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
3                  INPUT(_type='submit'))
4     form2 = FORM(INPUT(_name='name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
5                  INPUT(_type='submit'))
6     if form1.accepts(request.vars, formname='form_one'):
7         response.flash = 'form one accepted'
8     if form2.accepts(request.vars, formname='form_two'):
9         response.flash = 'form two accepted'
10    return dict(form1=form1, form2=form2)

```

and here is the output it produces:



When the visitor submits an empty `form1`, only `form1` displays an error; if

the visitor submits an empty form2, only form2 displays an error message.

7.1.6 Sharing Forms

The content of this section applies to both FORM and SQLFORM objects. What we discuss here is possible but not recommended, since it is always good practice to have forms that self-submit. Sometimes, though, you don't have a choice, because the action that sends the form and the action that receives it belong to different applications.

It is possible to generate a form that submits to a different action. This is done by specifying the URL of the processing action in the attributes of the FORM or SQLFORM object. For example:

```

1 form = FORM(INPUT(_name='name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
2             INPUT(_type='submit', _action=URL('page_two')))
3
4 def page_one():
5     return dict(form=form)
6
7 def page_two():
8     if form.accepts(request.vars, formname=None):
9         response.flash = 'form accepted'
10    else:
11        response.flash = 'there was an error in the form'
12    return dict()

```

Notice that since both "page_one" and "page_two" use the same form, we have defined it only once by placing it outside of all the actions, in order not to repeat ourselves. The common portion of code at the beginning of a controller gets executed every time before giving control to the called action.

Since "page_one" does not call accepts, the form has no name and no key, so you must not pass the session and set formname=None in accepts, or the form will not validate when "page_two" receives it.

7.2 SQLFORM

We now move to the next level by providing the application with a model file:

```
1 db = DAL('sqlite://storage.sqlite')
2 db.define_table('person', Field('name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()))
```

Modify the controller as follows:

```
1 def display_form():
2     form = SQLFORM(db.person)
3     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
4         response.flash = 'form accepted'
5     elif form.errors:
6         response.flash = 'form has errors'
7     else:
8         response.flash = 'please fill out the form'
9     return dict(form=form)
```

The view does not need to be changed.

In the new controller, you do not need to build a FORM, since the SQLFORM constructor built one from the table db.person defined in the model. This new form, when serialized, appears as:

```
1 <form enctype="multipart/form-data" action="" method="post">
2     <table>
3         <tr id="person_name__row">
4             <td><label id="person_name__label"
5                 for="person_name">Your name: </label></td>
6             <td><input type="text" class="string"
7                 name="name" value="" id="person_name" /></td>
8             <td></td>
9         </tr>
10        <tr id="submit_record__row">
11            <td></td>
12            <td><input value="Submit" type="submit" /></td>
13            <td></td>
14        </tr>
15    </table>
16    <input value="9038845529" type="hidden" name="_formkey" />
17    <input value="person" type="hidden" name="_formname" />
18</form>
```

The automatically generated form is more complex than the previous low-level form. First of all, it contains a table of rows, and each row has three columns. The first column contains the field labels (as determined from the `db.person`), the second column contains the input fields (and eventually error messages), and the third column is optional and therefore empty (it can be populated with the fields in the `SQLFORM` constructor).

All tags in the form have names derived from the table and field name. This allows easy customization of the form using CSS and JavaScript. This capability is discussed in more detail in Chapter 10.

More important is that now the `accepts` method does a lot more work for you. As in the previous case, it performs validation of the input, but additionally, if the input passes validation, it also performs a database insert of the new record and stores in `form.vars.id` the unique "id" of the new record.

A `SQLFORM` object also deals automatically with "upload" fields by saving uploaded files in the "uploads" folder (after having them renamed safely to avoid conflicts and prevent directory traversal attacks) and stores their names (their new names) into the appropriate field in the database.

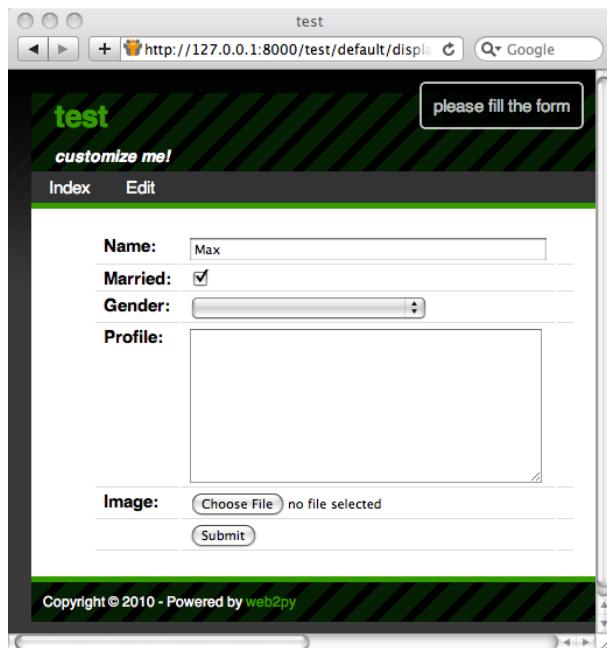
A `SQLFORM` displays "boolean" values with checkboxes, "text" values with textareas, values required to be in a definite set or a database with drop-boxes, and "upload" fields with links that allow users to download the uploaded files. It hides "blob" fields, since they are supposed to be handled differently, as discussed later.

For example, consider the following model:

```

1 db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
3     Field('married', 'boolean'),
4     Field('gender', requires=IS_IN_SET(['Male', 'Female', 'Other'])),
5     Field('profile', 'text'),
6     Field('image', 'upload'))
```

In this case, `SQLFORM(db.person)` generates the form shown below:



The `SQLFORM` constructor allows various customizations, such as displaying only a subset of the fields, changing the labels, adding values to the optional third column, or creating UPDATE and DELETE forms, as opposed to INSERT forms like the current one. `SQLFORM` is the single biggest time-saver object in web2py.

The class `SQLFORM` is defined in "gluon/sqlhtml.py". It can be easily extended by overloading its `xml` method, the method that serializes the objects, to change its output.

The signature for the `SQLFORM` constructor is the following:

```

1 SQLFORM(table, record=None, deletable=False,
2         linkto=None, upload=None, fields=None, labels=None, col3={},
3         submit_button='Submit', delete_label='Check to delete:',
4         id_label='Record id: ', showid=True,
5         readonly=False, comments=True, keepopts=[],
6         ignore_rw=False, formstyle='table3cols', **attributes)

```

- The optional second argument turns the INSERT form into an UPDATE form for the specified record (see next subsection).
-

If `deletable` is set to `True`, the UPDATE form displays a "Check to delete" checkbox. The value of the label if this field is set via the `delete_label` argument.

- `submit_button` sets the value of the submit button.
- `id_label` sets the label of the record "id"
- The "id" of the record is not shown if `showid` is set to `False`.
- `fields` is an optional list of field names that you want to display. If a list is provided, only fields in the list are displayed. For example:

```
1 fields = ['name']
```

- `labels` is a dictionary of field labels. The dictionary key is a field name and the corresponding value is what gets displayed as its label. If a label is not provided, web2py derives the label from the field name (it capitalizes the field name and replaces underscores with spaces). For example:

```
1 labels = {'name': 'Your Full Name: '}
```

- `col3` is a dictionary of values for the third column. For example:

```
1 col3 = {'name': A('what is this?',
2 _href='http://www.google.com/search?q=define:name') }
```

- `linkto` and `upload` are optional URLs to user-defined controllers that allow the form to deal with reference fields. This is discussed in more detail later in the section.
- `readonly`. If set to `True`, displays the form as `readonly`

- `comments`. If set to False, does not display the col3 comments
- `ignore_rw`. Normally, for a create/update form, only fields marked as `writable=True` are shown, and for readonly forms, only fields marked as `readable=True` are shown. Setting `ignore_rw=True` causes those constraints to be ignored, and all fields are displayed. This is mostly used in the appadmin interface to display all fields for each table, overriding what the model indicates.
- `formstyle` determines the style to be used when serializing the form in html. It can be "table3cols" (default), "table2cols" (one row for label and comment, and one row for input), "ul" (makes an unordered list of input fields), "divs" (represents the form using css friendly divs, for arbitrary customization). `formstyle` can also be a function that takes (`record_id`, `field_label`, `field_widget`, `field_comment`) as attributes and returns a `TR()` object.
- Optional attributes are arguments starting with underscore that you want to pass to the `FORM` tag that renders the `SQLFORM` object. Examples are:

```

1 _action = '.'
2 _method = 'POST'
```

There is a special `hidden` attribute. When a dictionary is passed as `hidden`, its items are translated into "hidden" INPUT fields (see the example for the `FORM` helper in Chapter 5).

7.2.1 SQLFORM and insert/update/delete

If you pass a record as optional second argument to the `SQLFORM` constructor, the form becomes an UPDATE form for that record. This means that when the form is submitted the existing record is updated and no new record is inserted. If you set the argument `deletable=True`, the UPDATE form displays a "check to delete" checkbox. If checked, the record is deleted.

You can, for example, modify the controller of the previous example so that

when we pass an additional integer argument in the URL path, as in:

```
1 /test/default/display_form/2
```

and if there is a record with the corresponding id, the SQLFORM generates an UPDATE/DELETE form for the record:

```
1 def display_form():
2     record = db.person(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
3     form = SQLFORM(db.person, record)
4     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
5         response.flash = 'form accepted'
6     elif form.errors:
7         response.flash = 'form has errors'
8     return dict(form=form)
```

Line 3 finds the record, line 5 makes an UPDATE/DELETE form, and line 7 makes an INSERT form. Line 8 does all the corresponding form processing.

An update form is very similar to a create form except that it is pre-populated with the current record and it previews images. By default deletable = True which means the update form will display a "delete record" option.

Edit forms also contain a hidden INPUT field with `name="id"` which is used to identify the record. This id is also stored server-side for additional security and, if the visitor tampers with the value of this field, the UPDATE is not performed and web2py raises a SyntaxError, "user is tampering with form".

When a Field is marked with `writable=False`, the field is not shown in create forms, and it is shown readonly in update forms. If a field is marked as `writable=False` and `readable=False`, then the field is not shown at all, not even in update forms.

Forms created with

```
1 form = SQLFORM(...,ignore_rw=True)
```

ignore the `readable` and `writable` attributes and always show all fields. Forms in `appadmin` ignore them by default.

Forms created with

```
1 form = SQLFORM(table, record_id, readonly=True)
```

always show all fields in readonly mode, and they cannot be accepted.

7.2.2 SQLFORM *in HTML*

There are times when you want to use `SQLFORM` to benefit from its form generation and processing, but you need a level of customization of the form in HTML that you cannot achieve with the parameters of the `SQLFORM` object, so you have to design the form using HTML.

Now, edit the previous controller and add a new action:

```
1 def display_manual_form():
2     form = SQLFORM(db.person)
3     if form.accepts(request.vars, formname='test'):
4         response.flash = 'form accepted'
5     elif form.errors:
6         response.flash = 'form has errors'
7     else:
8         response.flash = 'please fill the form'
9     return dict()
```

and insert the form in the associated "default/display_manual_form.html" view:

```
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <form>
3 <ul>
4   <li>Your name is <input name="name" /></li>
5 </ul>
6   <input type="submit" />
7   <input type="hidden" name="_formname" value="test" />
8 </form>
```

Notice that the action does not return the form because it does not need to pass it to the view. The view contains a form created manually in HTML. The form contains a hidden field "_formname" that must be the same formname specified as an argument of accepts in the action. web2py uses the form name in case there are multiple forms on the same page, to determine which one was submitted. If the page contains a single form, you can set formname=None and omit the hidden field in the view.

7.2.3 SQLFORM and Uploads

Fields of type "upload" are special. They are rendered as INPUT fields of type="file". Unless otherwise specified, the uploaded file is streamed in using a buffer, and stored under the "uploads" folder of the application using a new safe name, assigned automatically. The name of this file is then saved into the field of type uploads.

As an example, consider the following model:

```
1 db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
3     Field('image', 'upload'))
```

You can use the same controller action "display_form" shown above.

When you insert a new record, the form allows you to browse for a file. Choose, for example, a jpg image. The file is uploaded and stored as:

```
1 applications/test/uploads/person.image.XXXXX.jpg
```

"XXXXXX" is a random identifier for the file assigned by web2py.

Notice that, by default, the original filename of an uploaded file is b16encoded and used to build the new name for the file. This name is retrieved by the default "download" action and used to set the content disposition header to the original filename.

Only its extension is preserved. This is a security requirement since the filename may contain special characters that could allow a visitor to perform directory traversal attacks or other malicious operations.

The new filename is also stored in `form.vars.image`.

When editing the record using an UPDATE form, it would be nice to display a link to the existing uploaded file, and web2py provides a way to do it.

If you pass a URL to the `SQLFORM` constructor via the `upload` argument, web2py uses the action at that URL to download the file. Consider the following actions:

```

1 def display_form():
2     record = db.person(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
3     form = SQLFORM(db.person, record, deletable=True,
4                     upload=URL('download'))
5     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
6         response.flash = 'form accepted'
7     elif form.errors:
8         response.flash = 'form has errors'
9     return dict(form=form)
10
11 def download():
12     return response.download(request, db)
```

Now, insert a new record at the URL:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/test/default/display_form
```

Upload an image, submit the form, and then edit the newly created record by visiting:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/test/default/display_form/3
```

(here we assume the latest record has `id=3`). The form will display an image preview as shown below:

The screenshot shows a web application interface for editing a record. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Index' and 'Edit' links. The main area contains a form with the following fields:

- Id:** 3
- Name:** Max
- Married:**
- Gender:** Male
- Profile:** (Empty box)
- Image:** (File input) no file selected [file] delete
- Check to delete:**
- Submit**

At the bottom of the page, there's a footer with the text "Copyright © 2010 - Powered by web2py".

This form, when serialized, generates the following HTML:

```

1 <td><label id="person_image_label" for="person_image">Image: </label></td>
2 <td><div><input type="file" id="person_image" class="upload" name="image"
3 />[<a href="/test/default/download/person.image.0246683463831.jpg">file</a>|
4 <input type="checkbox" name="image_delete" />delete]</div></td></td></tr>
5 <tr id="delete_record_row"><td><label id="delete_record_label" for="delete_record"
6 >Check to delete:</label></td><td><input type="checkbox" id="delete_record"
7 class="delete" name="delete_this_record" /></td>
```

which contains a link to allow downloading of the uploaded file, and a checkbox to remove the file from the database record, thus storing NULL in the "image" field.

Why is this mechanism exposed? Why do you need to write the download function? Because you may want to enforce some authorization mechanism in the download function. See Chapter 8 for an example.

7.2.4 Storing the Original Filename

web2py automatically stores the original filename inside the new UUID filename and retrieves it when the file is downloaded. Upon download, the original filename is stored in the content-disposition header of the HTTP response. This is all done transparently without the need for programming.

Occasionally you may want to store the original filename in a database field. In this case, you need to modify the model and add a field to store it in:

```

1 db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
3     Field('image_filename'),
4     Field('image', 'upload'))
```

then you need to modify the controller to handle it:

```

1 def display_form():
2     record = db.person(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
3     url = URL('download')
4     form = SQLFORM(db.person, record, deletable=True,
5                   upload=url, fields=['name', 'image'])
6     if request.vars.image:
7         form.vars.image_filename = request.vars.image.filename
8     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
9         response.flash = 'form accepted'
10    elif form.errors:
11        response.flash = 'form has errors'
12    return dict(form=form)
```

Notice that the SQLFORM does not display the "image_filename" field. The "display_form" action moves the filename of the `request.vars.image` into the `form.vars.image_filename`, so that it gets processed by `accepts` and stored in the database. The download function, before serving the file, checks in the database for the original filename and uses it in the content-disposition header.

7.2.5 autodelete

The SQLFORM, upon deleting a record, does not delete the physical uploaded file(s) referenced by the record. The reason is that web2py does not know whether the same file is used/linked by other tables or used for other purpose. If you know it is safe to delete the actual file when the corresponding record is deleted, you can do the following:

```

1 db.define_table('image',
2     Field('name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
3     Field('file','upload',autodelete=True))

```

The autodelete attribute is `False` by default. When set to `True` it makes sure the file is deleted when the record is deleted.

7.2.6 Links to Referencing Records

Now consider the case of two tables linked by a reference field. For example:

```

1 db.define_table('person',
2     Field('name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()))
3 db.define_table('dog',
4     Field('owner', db.person),
5     Field('name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()))
6 db.dog.owner.requires = IS_IN_DB(db,db.person.id,'%(name)s')

```

A person has dogs, and each dog belongs to an owner, which is a person. The dog owner is required to reference a valid `db.person.id` by `'%(name)s'`.

Let's use the **appadmin** interface for this application to add a few persons and their dogs.

When editing an existing person, the **appadmin** UPDATE form shows a link to a page that lists the dogs that belong to the person. This behavior can be replicated using the `linkto` argument of the SQLFORM. `linkto` has to point to the

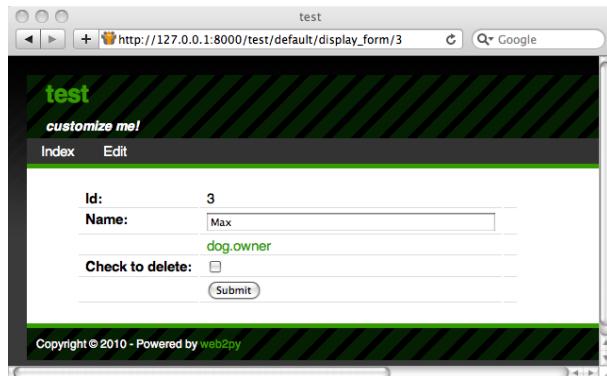
URL of a new action that receives a query string from the SQLFORM and lists the corresponding records. Here is an example:

```

1 def display_form():
2     record = db.person(request.args(0)) or redirect(URL('index'))
3     url = URL('download')
4     link = URL('list_records')
5     form = SQLFORM(db.person, records, deletable=True,
6                     upload=url, linkto=link)
7     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
8         response.flash = 'form accepted'
9     elif form.errors:
10        response.flash = 'form has errors'
11    return dict(form=form)

```

Here is the page:



There is a link called "dog.owner". The name of this link can be changed via the `labels` argument of the SQLFORM, for example:

```

1 labels = {'dog.owner':'This person's dogs'}

```

If you click on the link you get directed to:

```
/test/default/list_records/dog?query=dog.owner%3D5
```

"list_records" is the specified action, with `request.args(0)` set to the name of the referencing table and `request.vars.query` set to the SQL query string.

The query string in the URL contains the value "dog.owner=5" appropriately url-encoded (web2py decodes this automatically when the URL is parsed).

You can easily implement a very general "list_records" action as follows:

```

1 def list_records():
2     table = request.args(0)
3     query = request.vars.query
4     records = db(query).select(db[table].ALL)
5     return dict(records=records)
```

with the associated "default/list_records.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 {{=records}}
```

When a set of records is returned by a select and serialized in a view, it is first converted into a SQLTABLE object (not the same as a Table) and then serialized into an HTML table, where each field corresponds to a table column.

7.2.7 Pre-populating the form

It is always possible to pre-populate a form using the syntax:

```
1 form.vars.name = 'fieldvalue'
```

Statements like the one above must be inserted after the form declaration and before the form is accepted, whether or not the field ("name" in the example) is explicitly visualized in the form.

7.2.8 SQLFORM without database IO

There are times when you want to generate a form from a database table using SQLFORM and you want to validate a submitted form accordingly, but you do not want any automatic INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE in the database.

This is the case, for example, when one of the fields needs to be computed from the value of other input fields. This is also the case when you need to perform additional validation on the inserted data that cannot be achieved via standard validators.

This can be done easily by breaking:

```
1 form = SQLFORM(db.person)
2 if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
3     response.flash = 'record inserted'
```

into:

```
1 form = SQLFORM(db.person)
2 if form.accepts(request.vars, session, dbio=False):
3     ### deal with uploads explicitly
4     form.vars.id = db.person.insert(**dict(form.vars))
5     response.flash = 'record inserted'
```

The same can be done for UPDATE/DELETE forms by breaking:

```
1 form = SQLFORM(db.person, record)
2 if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
3     response.flash = 'record updated'
```

into:

```
1 form = SQLFORM(db.person, record)
2 if form.accepts(request.vars, session, dbio=False):
3     if form.vars.get('delete_this_record', False):
4         db(db.person.id==record.id).delete()
5     else:
6         record.update_record(**dict(form.vars))
7     response.flash = 'record updated'
```

In both cases web2py deals with the storage and renaming of the uploaded file as if dbio=True, the default scenario. The uploaded filename is in:

```
1 form.vars.fieldname
```

7.3 SQLFORM.factory

There are cases when you want to generate forms *as if* you had a database table but you do not want the database table. You simply want to take advantage of the SQLFORM capability to generate a nice looking CSS-friendly form and perhaps perform file upload and renaming.

This can be done via a `form_factory`. Here is an example where you generate the form, perform validation, upload a file and store everything in the session :

```

1 def form_from_factory():
2     form = SQLFORM.factory(
3         Field('your_name', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
4         Field('your_image', 'upload'))
5     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
6         response.flash = 'form accepted'
7         session.your_name = form.vars.your_name
8         session.filename = form.vars.your_image
9     elif form.errors:
10        response.flash = 'form has errors'
11    return dict(form=form)

```

Here is the "default/form_from_factory.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 {{=form}}

```

You need to use an underscore instead of a space for field labels, or explicitly pass a dictionary of labels to `form_factory`, as you would for a `SQLFORM`. By default `SQLFORM.factory` generates the form using html "id" attributes generated as if the form was generated from a table called "no_table". To change this dummy table name, use the `table_name` attribute for the factory:

```

1 form = SQLFORM.factory(...,table_name='other_dummy_name')

```

Changing the `table_name` is necessary if you need to place two factory generated forms in the same table and want to avoid CSS conflicts.

7.4 CRUD

One of the recent additions to web2py is the Create/Read/Update/Delete (CRUD) API on top of SQLFORM. CRUD creates an SQLFORM, but it simplifies the coding because it incorporates the creation of the form, the processing of the form, the notification, and the redirection, all in one single function.

The first thing to notice is that CRUD differs from the other web2py APIs we have used so far because it is not already exposed. It must be imported. It also must be linked to a specific database. For example:

```
1 from gluon.tools import Crud
2 crud = Crud(globals(), db)
```

The first argument of the constructor is the current context `globals()` so that CRUD can access the local request, response, and session. The second argument is a database connection object, `db`.

The `crud` object defined above provides the following API:

- `crud.tables()` returns a list of tables defined in the database.
- `crud.create(db.tablename)` returns a create form for table `tablename`.
- `crud.read(db.tablename, id)` returns a readonly form for `tablename` and record `id`.
- `crud.update(db.tablename, id)` returns an update form for `tablename` and record `id`.
- `crud.delete(db.tablename, id)` deletes the record.
- `crud.select(db.tablename, query)` returns a list of records selected from the table.

- crud.search(db.tablename) returns a tuple (form, records) where form is a search form and records is a list of records based on the submitted search form.
- crud() returns one of the above based on the request.args().

For example, the following action:

```
1 def data: return dict(form=crud())
```

would expose the following URLs:

```
1 http://.../[app]/[controller]/data/tables
2 http://.../[app]/[controller]/data/create/[tablename]
3 http://.../[app]/[controller]/data/read/[tablename]/[id]
4 http://.../[app]/[controller]/data/update/[tablename]/[id]
5 http://.../[app]/[controller]/data/delete/[tablename]/[id]
6 http://.../[app]/[controller]/data/select/[tablename]
7 http://.../[app]/[controller]/data/search/[tablename]
```

However, the following action:

```
1 def create_tablename:
2     return dict(form=crud.create(db.tablename))
```

would only expose the create method

```
1 http://.../[app]/[controller]/create_tablename
```

While the following action:

```
1 def update_tablename:
2     return dict(form=crud.update(db.tablename, request.args(0)))
```

would only expose the update method

```
1 http://.../[app]/[controller]/update_tablename/[id]
```

and so on.

The behavior of CRUD can be customized in two ways: by setting some attributes of the crud object or by passing extra parameters to each of its methods.

7.4.1 *Settings*

Here is a complete list of current CRUD attributes, their default values, and meaning:

To enforce authentication on all curd forms:

```
1 crud.settings.auth = None
```

The use is explained in chapter 8.

To specify the controller that defines the the data function which returns the crud object

```
1 crud.settings.controller = 'default'
```

To specify the URL to redirect to after a successful "create" record:

```
1 crud.settings.create_next = URL('index')
```

To specify the URL to redirect to after a successful "update" record:

```
1 crud.settings.update_next = URL('index')
```

To specify the URL to redirect to after a successful "delete" record:

```
1 crud.settings.delete_next = URL('index')
```

To specify the URL to be used for linking uploaded files:

```
1 crud.settings.download_url = URL('download')
```

To specify extra functions to be executed after standard validation procedures for crud.create forms:

```
1 crud.settings.create_onvalidation = StorageList()
```

StorageList is the same as a Storage object, they are both defined in the file "gluon/storage.py", but it default to a [] as opposed to None. It allow the following syntax:

```
1 crud.settings.create_onvalidation.mytablename.append(lambda form:....)
```

To specify extra functions to be executed after standard validation procedures for crud.update forms:

```
1 crud.settings.update_onvalidation = StorageList()
```

To specify extra functions to be executed after completion of crud.create forms:

```
1 crud.settings.create_onaccept = StorageList()
```

To specify extra functions to be executed after completion of crud.update forms:

```
1 crud.settings.update_onaccept = StorageList()
```

To specify extra functions to be executed after completion of crud.update if record is deleted:

```
1 crud.settings.update_ondelete = StorageList()
```

To specify extra functions to be executed after completion of crud.delete:

```
1 crud.settings.delete_onaccept = StorageList()
```

To determine whether the "update" forms should have a "delete" button:

```
1 crud.settings.update_deletable = True
```

To determine whether the "update" forms should show the id of the edited record:

```
1 crud.settings.showid = False
```

To determine whether forms should keep the previously inserted values or reset to default after successful submission:

```
1 crud.settings.keepvalues = False
```

You can change the form style by

```
1 crud.settings.formstyle = 'table3cols' or 'table2cols' or 'divs' or 'ul'
```

You can add captcha to forms, using the same convention explained for auth, with:

```
1 crud.settings.create_captcha = None
2 crud.settings.update_captcha = None
3 crud.settings.captcha = None
```

7.4.2 Messages

Here is a list of customizable messages:

```
1 crud.messages.submit_button = 'Submit'
```

sets the text of the "submit" button for both create and update forms.

```
1 crud.messages.delete_label = 'Check to delete:'
```

sets the label of the "delete" button in "update" forms.

```
1 crud.messages.record_created = 'Record Created'
```

sets the flash message on successful record creation.

```
1 crud.messages.record_updated = 'Record Updated'
```

sets the flash message on successful record update.

```
1 crud.messages.record_deleted = 'Record Deleted'
```

sets the flash message on successful record deletion.

```
1 crud.messages.update_log = 'Record %(id)s updated'
```

sets the log message on successful record update.

```
1 crud.messages.create_log = 'Record %(id)s created'
```

sets the log message on successful record creation.

```
1 crud.messages.read_log = 'Record %(id)s read'
```

sets the log message on successful record read access.

```
1 crud.messages.delete_log = 'Record %(id)s deleted'
```

sets the log message on successful record deletion.

Notice that `crud.messages` belongs to the class `gluon.storage.Message` which is similar to `gluon.storage.Storage` but it automatically translates its values, without need for the `T` operator.

Log messages are used if and only if CRUD is connected to Auth as discussed in Chapter 8. The events are logged in the Auth table "auth_events".

7.4.3 Methods

The behavior of CRUD methods can also be customized on a per call basis. Here are their signatures:

```
1 crud.tables()
2 crud.create(table, next, onvalidation, onaccept, log, message)
3 crud.read(table, record)
```

```

4 crud.update(table, record, next, onvalidation, onaccept, ondelete, log, message,
5   deletable)
6 crud.delete(table, record_id, next, message)
7 crud.select(table, query, fields, orderby, limitby, headers, **attr)
8 crud.search(table, query, queries, query_labels, fields, field_labels, zero)

```

- `table` is a DAL table or a tablename the method should act on.
- `record` and `record_id` are the id of the record the method should act on.
- `next` is the URL to redirect to after success. If the URL contains the substring "[id]" this will be replaced by the id of the record currently created/updated.
- `onvalidation` has the same function as SQLFORM(..., onvalidation)
- `onaccept` is a function to be called after the form submission is accepted and acted upon, but before redirection.
- `log` is the log message. Log messages in CRUD see variables in the `form.vars` dictionary such as "%(id)s".
- `message` is the flash message upon form acceptance.
- `onDelete` is called in place of `onaccept` when a record is deleted via an "update" form.
- `deletable` determines whether the "update" form should have a delete option.
- `query` is the query to be used to select records.
- `fields` is a list of fields to be selected.
- `orderby` determines the order in which records should be selected (see Chapter 6).
- `limitby` determines the range of selected records that should be displayed (see Chapter 6).
- `headers` is a dictionary with the table header names.
- `queries` a list like ['equals', 'not equal', 'contains'] containing the allowed methods in the search form.
- `query_labels` a dictionary like `query_labels=dict>equals='Equals'` giving names to search methods.

- `fields` a list of fields to be listed in the search widget.
- `field_labels` a dictionary mapping field names into labels.
- `zero` defaults to "choose one" is used as default option for the drop-down in the search widget.

Here is an example of usage in a single controller function:

```

1 # assuming db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
2 def people():
3     form = crud.create(db.person, next=URL('index'),
4                         message=T("record created"))
5     persons = crud.select(db.person, fields=['name'],
6                           headers={'person.name': 'Name'})
7     return dict(form=form, persons=persons)

```

Here is another very generic controller function that lets you search, create and edit any records from any table where the tablename is passed `request.args(0)`:

```

1 def manage():
2     table=db[request.args(0)]
3     form = crud.update(table,request.args(1))
4     table.id.represent = lambda id: \
5         A('edit:',id,_href=URL(args=(request.args(0),id)))
6     search, rows = crud.select(table)
7     return dict(form=form,search=search,rows=rows)

```

Notice the line `table.id.represent=...` that tells web2py to change the representation of the id field and display a link instead to the page itself and passes the id as `request.args(1)` which turns the create page into an update page.

7.4.4 Record Versioning

CRUD provides a utility to version database records:

If you have a table (db.mytable) that needs full revision history you can just do:

```
1 form=crud.update(db.mytable,myrecord,onaccept=crud.archive)
```

crud.archive defines a new table called **db.mytable_history** (the name is derived from the table above) and store a upon update, it stores a copy of the record (before the update) in the newly created table, including a reference to the current record.

Because the record is actually updated (only its previous state is archived), references are never broken.

This is done under the hood but you may need to access the history table. If you want to access such table you need to define it in the model:

```
1 db.define_table('mytable_history',
2     Field('current_record',db.mytable),
3     db.mytable)
```

Notice the table extends db.mytable, i.e. includes all its fields, and has a reference to the current_record. crud.archive does not timestamp the stored record unless your original table has timestamp field, for example:

```
1 db.define_table('mytable',
2     Field('saved_on','datetime',
3           default=request.now,update=request.now,writable=False),
4     Field('saved_by',auth.user,
5           default=auth.user_id,update=auth.user_id,writable=False),
```

There is nothing special about these fields, you can give them any name you like. They are filled before the record is archived and are archived with each copy of the record.

If you want to change the history table name and/or the name of the reference field you can do it this way:

```
1 db.define_table('myhistory',
2     Field('parent_record',db.mytable),
3     db.mytable)
```

```

4 # ...
5 form = crud.update(db.mytable,myrecord,
6                     onaccept=lambda form:crud.archive(form,
7                                         archive_table=db.myhistory,
8                                         current_record='parent_record'))

```

7.5 Custom forms

If a form is created with SQLFORM, SQLFORM.factory or CRUD, there are multiple ways it can be embedded in a view allowing multiple degrees of customization. Consider for example the following model:

```

1 db.define_table('image',
2                 Field('name'),
3                 Field('file', 'upload'))

```

and upload action

```

1 def upload_image():
2     return dict(form=crud.create(db.image))

```

The simplest way to embed the form in the view for `upload_image` is

```

1 {{=form}}

```

This results in a standard table layout. If you wish to use a different layout, you can break the form into components

```

1 {{=form.custom.begin}}
2 Image name: <div>{{=form.custom.widget.name}}</div>
3 Image file: <div>{{=form.custom.widget.file}}</div>
4 Click here to upload: {{=form.custom.submit}}
5 {{=form.custom.end}}

```

Where `form.custom.widget[fieldname]` gets serialized into the proper widget for the field. If the form is submitted and it contains errors, they are appended below the widgets, as usual.

The above sample form is show in the image below.

Image name:

Image file:

no file selected

[Click here to upload:](#)

Notice that a similar result could have been obtained with:

```
1 crud.settings.formstyle='table2cols'
```

without using a custom form. Other possible `formstyles` are "table3cols" (the default), "divs" and "ul".

If you do not wish to use the widgets serialized by web2py, you can replace them with HTML. There are some variables that will be useful for this:

- `form.custom.label[fieldname]` contains the label for the field.
- `form.custom.dspval[fieldname]` form-type and field-type dependent display representation of the field.
- `form.custom.inpval[fieldname]` form-type and field-type dependent values to be used in field code.

It is important to follow the conventions described below.

7.5.1 CSS Conventions

Tags in forms generated by SQLFORM, SQLFORM.factory and CRUD follow a strict CSS naming convention that can be used to further customize the forms.

Given a table "mytable", a field "myfield" of type "string", it is rendered by default by a

```
1 SQLFORM.widgets.string.widget
```

that looks like this:

```
1 <input type="text" name="myfield" id="mytable_myfield"
2   class="string" />
```

Notice that:

- the class of the INPUT tag is the same as the type of the field. This is very important for the jQuery code in "web2py_ajax.html" to work. It makes sure that you can only have numbers in "integer" and "double" fields, and that "time", "date" and "datetime" fields display the popup calendar.
- the id is the name of the class plus the name of the field, joined by one underscore. This allows you to uniquely refer to the field via, for example, `jQuery('#mytable_myfield')` and manipulate the stylesheet of the field or bind actions associated to the field events (focus, blur, keyup, etc.).
- the name is, as you would expect, the field name.

7.5.2 Hide Errors

Occasionally, you may want to disable the automatic error placement and display form error messages in some place other than the default. That can be done easily.

- In the case of FORM or SQLFORM, pass `hiderror=True` to the `accepts` method.
- In the case of CURD, set `crud.settings.hiderror=True`

You may also want to modify the views to display the error (since they are no longer displayed automatically).

Here is an example where the errors are displayed above the form and not in the form.

```

1 {{if form.errors:}}
2   Your submitted form contains the following errors:
3   <ul>
4     {{for fieldname in form.errors:}}
5       <li>{{=fieldname}} error: {{=form.errors[fieldname]}}</li>
6     {{/for}}
7   </ul>
8   {{form.errors.clear()}}
9 {{/for}}
10 {{=form}}

```

The errors will be displayed as in the image shown below.

Your submitted form contains the following errors:

- name error: enter a value

Name:

File: Choose File no file selected

This mechanism also works for custom forms.

7.6 Validators

Validators are classes used to validate input fields (including forms generated from database tables).

Here is an example of using a validator with a FORM:

```

1 INPUT(_name='a', requires=IS_INT_IN_RANGE(0, 10))

```

Here is an example of how to require a validator for a table field:

```
1 db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
2 db.person.name.requires = IS_NOT_EMPTY()
```

Validators are always assigned using the `requires` attribute of a field. A field can have a single validator or multiple validators. Multiple validators are made part of a list:

```
1 db.person.name.requires = [IS_NOT_EMPTY(),
2                           IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, 'person.name')]
```

Validators are called by the function `accepts` on a `FORM` or other HTML helper object that contains a form. They are called in the order in which they are listed.

Built-in validators have constructors that take an optional argument:

```
1 IS_NOT_EMPTY(error_message=T('cannot be empty'))
```

`error_message` allows you to override the default error message for any validator.

Here is an example of a validator on a database table:

```
1 db.person.name.requires = IS_NOT_EMPTY(error_message=T('fill this!'))
```

where we have used the translation operator `T` to allow for internationalization. Notice that default error messages are not translated.

7.6.1 Validators

IS_ALPHANUMERIC

This validator checks that a field value contains only characters in the ranges a-z, A-Z, or 0-9.

```
1 requires = IS_ALPHANUMERIC(error_message=T('must be alphanumeric!'))
```

IS_DATE

This validator checks that a field value contains a valid date in the specified format. It is good practice to specify the format using the translation operator, in order to support different formats in different locales.

```
1 requires = IS_DATE(format=T('%Y-%m-%d'),
2                     error_message=T('must be YYYY-MM-DD!'))
```

For the full description on % directives look under the IS_DATETIME validator.

IS_DATE_IN_RANGE

Works very much like the previous validator but allows to specify a range:

```
1 requires = IS_DATE(format=T('%Y-%m-%d'),
2                     minimum=datetime.date(2008,1,1),
3                     maximum=datetime.date(2009,12,31),
4                     error_message=T('must be YYYY-MM-DD!'))
```

For the full description on % directives look under the IS_DATETIME validator.

IS_DATETIME

This validator checks that a field value contains a valid datetime in the specified format. It is good practice to specify the format using the translation operator, in order to support different formats in different locales.

```
1 requires = IS_DATETIME(format=T('%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S'),
2                         error_message=T('must be YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS!'))
```

The following symbols can be used for the format string:

1 as a decimal number [00,53]. All days **in** a new year preceding
2 the first Sunday are considered to be **in** week 0.

```

3     as a decimal number [00,53]. All days in a new year preceding
4     the first Monday are considered to be in week 0.

```

IS_DATETIME_IN_RANGE

Works very much like the previous validator but allows to specify a range:

```

1 requires = IS_DATETIME(format=T('%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S'),
2                         minimum=datetime.datetime(2008,1,1,10,30),
3                         maximum=datetime.datetime(2009,12,31,11,45),
4                         error_message=T('must be YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM::SS!'))

```

For the full description on % directives look under the IS_DATETIME validator.

IS_DECIMAL_IN_RANGE

```
1 INPUT(_type='text', _name='name', requires=IS_DECIMAL_IN_RANGE(0, 10))
```

It converts the input into a Python Decimal or generates an error if the decimal does not fall within the specified inclusive range. The comparison is made with Python Decimal arithmetic.

The minimum and maximum limits can be None, meaning no lower or upper limit, respectively.

IS_EMAIL

It checks that the field value looks like an email address. It does not try to send email to confirm.

```
1 requires = IS_EMAIL(error_message=T('invalid email!'))
```

IS_EQUAL_TO

Checks whether the validated value is equal to a given value (which can be a variable):

```

1 requires = IS_EQUAL_TO(request.vars.password,
2                         error_message=T('passwords do not match'))

```

IS_EXPR

Its first argument is a string containing a logical expression in terms of a variable value. It validates a field value if the expression evaluates to True. For example:

```

1 requires = IS_EXPR('int(value)%3==0',
2                     error_message=T('not divisible by 3'))

```

One should first check that the value is an integer so that an exception will not occur.

```

1 requires = [IS_INT_IN_RANGE(0, 100), IS_EXPR('value%3==0')]

```

IS_FLOAT_IN_RANGE

Checks that the field value is a floating point number within a definite range, $0 < \text{value} < 100$ in the following example:

```

1 requires = IS_FLOAT_IN_RANGE(0, 100,
2                             error_message=T('too small or too large!'))

```

IS_INT_IN_RANGE

Checks that the field value is an integer number within a definite range, $0 < \text{value} < 100$ in the following example:

```

1 requires = IS_INT_IN_RANGE(0, 100,
2                            error_message=T('too small or too large!'))

```

IS_IN_SET

Checks that the field values are in a set:

```

1 requires = IS_IN_SET(['a', 'b', 'c'],zero=T('choose one'),
2                      error_message=T('must be a or b or c'))

```

The zero argument is optional and it determines the text of the option selected by default, an option which is not accepted by the `IS_IN_SET` validator itself. If you do not want a "choose one" option, set `zero=False`

The `zero` option was introduced in revision (1.67.1). It did not break backward compatibility in the sense that it did not break applications but it did change their behavior since, before, there was no `zero` option.

The elements of the set must always be strings unless this validator is preceded by `IS_INT_IN_RANGE` (which converts the value to int) or `IS_FLOAT_IN_RANGE` (which converts the value to float). For example:

```
1 requires = [IS_INT_IN_RANGE(0, 8), IS_IN_SET([2, 3, 5, 7],  
2     error_message=T('must be prime and less than 10'))]
```

`IS_IN_SET` and Tagging

The `IS_IN_SET` validator has an optional attribute `multiple=False`. If set to True, multiple values can be stored in one field. The field should be of type `list:integer` or `list:string`. `multiple` references are handled automatically in create and update forms, but they are transparent to the DAL. We strongly suggest using the jQuery multiselect plugin to render multiple fields.

`IS_LENGTH`

Checks if length of field's value fits between given boundaries. Works for both text and file inputs.

Its arguments are:

- `maxsize`: the maximum allowed length / size
- `minsize`: the minimum allowed length / size

Examples: Check if text string is shorter than 33 characters:

```
1 INPUT(_type='text', _name='name', requires=IS_LENGTH(32))
```

Check if password string is longer than 5 characters:

```
1 INPUT(_type='password', _name='name', requires=IS_LENGTH(minsize=6))
```

Check if uploaded file has size between 1KB and 1MB:

```
1 INPUT(_type='file', _name='name', requires=IS_LENGTH(1048576, 1024))
```

For all field types except for files, it checks the length of the value. In the case of files, the value is a `cookie.FieldStorage`, so it validates the length of the data in the file, which is the behavior one might intuitively expect.

IS_LIST_OF

This is not properly a validator. Its intended use is to allow validations of fields that return multiple values. It is used in those rare cases when a form contains multiple fields with the same name or a multiple selection box. Its only argument is another validator, and all it does is to apply the other validator to each element of the list. For example, the following expression checks that every item in a list is an integer in the range 0-10:

```
1 requires = IS_LIST_OF(IS_INT_IN_RANGE(0, 10))
```

It never returns an error and does not contain an error message. The inner validator controls the error generation.

IS_LOWER

This validator never returns an error. It just converts the value to lower case.

```
1 requires = IS_LOWER()
```

IS_MATCH

This validator matches the value against a regular expression and returns an error if it does not match. Here is an example of usage to validate a US zip code:

```

1 requires = IS_MATCH('^\d{5}(-\d{4})?$',
2                     error_message='not a zip code')

```

Here is an example of usage to validate an IPv4 address:

```

1 requires = IS_MATCH('^\d{1,3}(\.\d{1,3}){3}$',
2                     error_message='not an IP address')

```

Here is an example of usage to validate a US phone number:

```

1 requires = IS_MATCH('^1?((-)\d{3}-?)|((\d{3}))\d{3}-?\d{4}$',
2                     error_message='not a phone number')

```

For more information on Python regular expressions, refer to the official Python documentation.

IS_NOT_EMPTY

This validator checks that the content of the field value is not an empty string.

```

1 requires = IS_NOT_EMPTY(error_message='cannot be empty!')

```

IS_TIME

This validator checks that a field value contains a valid time in the specified format.

```

1 requires = IS_TIME(error_message=T('must be HH:MM:SS!'))

```

IS_URL

Rejects a URL string if any of the following is true:

- The string is empty or None
- The string uses characters that are not allowed in a URL
- The string breaks any of the HTTP syntactic rules

- The URL scheme specified (if one is specified) is not 'http' or 'https'
- The top-level domain (if a host name is specified) does not exist

(These rules are based on RFC 2616 (65))

This function only checks the URL's syntax. It does not check that the URL points to a real document, for example, or that it otherwise makes semantic sense. This function does automatically prepend 'http://' in front of a URL in the case of an abbreviated URL (e.g. 'google.ca').

If the parameter mode='generic' is used, then this function's behavior changes. It then rejects a URL string if any of the following is true:

- The string is empty or None
- The string uses characters that are not allowed in a URL
- The URL scheme specified (if one is specified) is not valid

(These rules are based on RFC 2396 (66))

The list of allowed schemes is customizable with the allowed_schemes parameter. If you exclude None from the list, then abbreviated URLs (lacking a scheme such as 'http') will be rejected.

The default prepended scheme is customizable with the prepend_scheme parameter. If you set prepend_scheme to None, then prepending will be disabled. URLs that require prepending to parse will still be accepted, but the return value will not be modified.

IS_URL is compatible with the Internationalized Domain Name (IDN) standard specified in RFC 3490 (67)). As a result, URLs can be regular strings or unicode strings. If the URL's domain component (e.g. google.ca) contains non-US-ASCII letters, then the domain will be converted into Punycode (defined in RFC 3492 (68)). IS_URL goes a bit beyond the standards, and allows non-US-ASCII characters to be present in the path and query components of

the URL as well. These non-US-ASCII characters will be encoded. For example, space will be encoded as '%20'. The unicode character with hex code 0x4e86 will become '%4e%86'.

Examples:

```

1 requires = IS_URL()
2 requires = IS_URL(mode='generic')
3 requires = IS_URL(allowed_schemes=['https'])
4 requires = IS_URL(prepend_scheme='https')
5 requires = IS_URL(mode='generic',
6     allowed_schemes=['ftps', 'https'],
7     prepend_scheme='https')
```

IS_SLUG

```

1 requires = IS_SLUG(maxlen=80, check=False, error_message='must be slug')
```

If check is set to True checks whether the validated value is a slug (allowing only alphanumeric characters and non-repeated dashes).

If check is set to False (default) it converts the input value to a slug.

IS_STRONG

Enforces complexity requirements on a field (usually a password field)

Example:

```

1 requires = IS_STRONG(min=10, special=2, upper=2)
```

where

- min is minimum length of the value
- special is the minimum number of required special characters special characters are any of the following !@#\$%^&*(){}[]-+
- upper is the minimum number of upper case characters

IS_IMAGE

This validator checks if file uploaded through file input was saved in one of selected image formats and has dimensions (width and height) within given limits.

It does not check for maximum file size (use IS_LENGTH for that). It returns a validation failure if no data was uploaded. It supports the file formats BMP, GIF, JPEG, PNG, and it does not require the Python Imaging Library.

Code parts taken from ref. (69)

It takes the following arguments:

- extensions: iterable containing allowed image file extensions in lowercase
- maxsize: iterable containing maximum width and height of the image
- minsize: iterable containing minimum width and height of the image

Use (-1, -1) as minsize to bypass the image-size check.

Here are some Examples:

- Check if uploaded file is in any of supported image formats:

```
1 requires = IS_IMAGE()
```

- Check if uploaded file is either JPEG or PNG:

```
1 requires = IS_IMAGE(extensions=('jpeg', 'png'))
```

- Check if uploaded file is PNG with maximum size of 200x200 pixels:

```
1 requires = IS_IMAGE(extensions=('png'), maxsize=(200, 200))
```

IS_UPLOAD_FILENAME

This validator checks if name and extension of file uploaded through file input matches given criteria.

It does not ensure the file type in any way. Returns validation failure if no data was uploaded.

Its arguments are:

- filename: filename (before dot) regex.
- extension: extension (after dot) regex.
- lastdot: which dot should be used as a filename / extension separator: `True` indicates last dot (e.g., "file.tar.gz" will be broken in "file.tar"+"gz") while `False` means first dot (e.g., "file.tar.gz" will be broken into "file"+"tar.gz").
- case: 0 means keep the case; 1 means transform the string into lowercase (default); 2 means transform the string into uppercase.

If there is no dot present, extension checks will be done against empty string and filename checks against whole value.

Examples:

Check if file has a pdf extension (case insensitive):

```
1 requires = IS_UPLOAD_FILENAME(extension='pdf')
```

Check if file has a tar.gz extension and name starting with backup:

```
1 requires = IS_UPLOAD_FILENAME(filename='backup.*', extension='tar.gz', lastdot=False)
```

Check if file has no extension and name matching README (case sensitive):

```
1 requires = IS_UPLOAD_FILENAME(filename='^README$', extension='^$', case=0)
```

IS_IPV4

This validator checks if a field's value is an IP version 4 address in decimal form. Can be set to force addresses from a certain range.

IPv4 regex taken from ref. (70) Its arguments are:

- `minip` lowest allowed address; accepts: str, e.g., `192.168.0.1`; iterable of numbers, e.g., `[192, 168, 0, 1]`; int, e.g., `3232235521`
- `maxip` highest allowed address; same as above

All three example values are equal, since addresses are converted to integers for inclusion check with following function:

```
1 number = 16777216 * IP[0] + 65536 * IP[1] + 256 * IP[2] + IP[3]
```

Examples:

Check for valid IPv4 address:

```
1 requires = IS_IPV4()
```

Check for valid private network IPv4 address:

```
1 requires = IS_IPV4(minip='192.168.0.1', maxip='192.168.255.255')
```

IS_LOWER

This validator never returns an error. It converts the value to lower case.

IS_UPPER

This validator never returns an error. It converts the value to upper case.

```
1 requires = IS_UPPER()
```

IS_NULL_OR

Deprecated, an alias for IS_EMPTY_OR described below.

IS_EMPTY_OR

Sometimes you need to allow empty values on a field along with other requirements. For example a field may be a date but it can also be empty. The IS_EMPTY_OR validator allows this:

```
1 requires = IS_NULL_OR(IS_DATE())
```

CLEANUP

This is a filter. It never fails. It just removes all characters whose decimal ASCII codes are not in the list [10, 13, 32-127].

```
1 requires = CLEANUP()
```

CRYPT

This is also a filter. It performs a secure hash on the input and it is used to prevent passwords from being passed in the clear to the database.

```
1 requires = CRYPT()
```

If a key is not specified, it uses the MD5 algorithm. If a key is specified CRYPT uses the HMAC algorithm. The key may contain a prefix that determines the algorithm to use with HMAC, for example SHA512:

```
1 requires = CRYPT(key='sha512:thisisthekey')
```

This is the recommended syntax. The key has to be a unique string associated to the database used. The key can never be changed. If you lose the key the previously hashed values become useless.

7.6.2 Database Validators

IS_NOT_IN_DB

Consider the following example:

```
1 db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
2 db.person.name.requires = IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, 'person.name')
```

It requires that when you insert a new person, his/her name is not already in the database, db, in the field person.name. As with all other validators this requirement is enforced at the form processing level, not at the database level. This means that there is a small probability that, if two visitors try to concurrently insert records with the same person.name, this results in a race condition and both records are accepted. It is therefore safer to also inform the database that this field should have a unique value:

```
1 db.define_table('person', Field('name', unique=True))
2 db.person.name.requires = IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, 'person.name')
```

Now if a race condition occurs, the database raises an OperationalError and one of the two inserts is rejected.

The first argument of IS_NOT_IN_DB can be a database connection or a Set. In the latter case, you would be checking only the set defined by the Set.

The following code, for example, does not allow registration of two persons with the same name within 10 days of each other:

```
1 import datetime
2 now = datetime.datetime.today()
3 db.define_table('person',
4     Field('name'),
5     Field('registration_stamp', 'datetime', default=now))
6 recent = db(db.person.registration_stamp>now-datetime.timedelta(10))
7 db.person.name.requires = IS_NOT_IN_DB(recent, 'person.name')
```

IS_IN_DB

Consider the following tables and requirement:

```

1 db.define_table('person', Field('name', unique=True))
2 db.define_table('dog', Field('name'), Field('owner', db.person)
3 db.dog.owner.requires = IS_IN_DB(db, 'person.id', '%(name)s',
4     zero=T('choose one'))

```

It is enforced at the level of dog INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE forms. It requires that a dog.owner be a valid id in the field person.id in the database db. Because of this validator, the dog.owner field is represented as a dropdown. The third argument of the validator is a string that describes the elements in the dropdown. In the example you want to see the person %(name)s instead of the person %(id)s. %(...)s is replaced by the value of the field in brackets for each record.

The zero option works very much like for the IS_IN_SET validator.

If you want the field validated, but you do not want a dropdown, you must put the validator in a list.

```

1 db.dog.owner.requires = [IS_IN_DB(db, 'person.id', '%(name)s')]

```

The first argument of the validator can be a database connection or a DAL Set, as in IS_NOT_IN_DB.

Occasionally you want the drop-box (so you do not want to use the list syntax above) yet you want to use additional validators. For this purpose the IS_IN_DB validator takes an extra argument _and that can point to a list of other validators applied if the validated value passes the IS_IN_DB validation. For example to validate all dog owners in db that are not in a subset:

```

1 subset=db(db.person.id>100)
2 db.dog.owner.requires = IS_IN_DB(db, 'person.id', '%(name)s',
3     _and=IS_NOT_IN_DB(subset, 'person.id'))

```

IS_IN_DB and Tagging

The IS_IN_DB validator has an optional attribute multiple=False. If set to True

multiple values can be stored in one field. This field should be of type `list:reference` as discussed in Chapter 6. An explicit example of tagging is discussed there. multiple references are handled automatically in create and update forms, but they are transparent to the DAL. We strongly suggest using the jQuery multiselect plugin to render multiple fields.

7.6.3 Custom Validators

All validators follow the prototype below:

```

1 class sample_validator:
2     def __init__(self, *a, error_message='error'):
3         self.a = a
4         self.e = error_message
5     def __call__(value):
6         if validate(value):
7             return (parsed(value), None)
8         return (value, self.e)
9     def formatter(self, value):
10        return format(value)

```

i.e., when called to validate a value, a validator returns a tuple (x, y). If y is `None`, then the value passed validation and x contains a parsed value. For example, if the validator requires the value to be an integer, x is converted to `int(value)`. If the value did not pass validation, then x contains the input value and y contains an error message that explains the failed validation. This error message is used to report the error in forms that do not validate.

The validator may also contain a `formatter` method. It must perform the opposite conversion to the one the `__call__` does. For example, consider the source code for `IS_DATE`:

```

1 class IS_DATE(object):
2     def __init__(self, format='%Y-%m-%d', error_message='must be YYYY-MM-DD!'):
3         self.format = format
4         self.error_message = error_message
5     def __call__(self, value):
6         try:

```

```

7     y, m, d, hh, mm, ss, t0, t1, t2 = time.strptime(value, str(self.format)
8         )
9     value = datetime.date(y, m, d)
10    return (value, None)
11 except:
12     return (value, self.error_message)
13 def formatter(self, value):
14     return value.strftime(str(self.format))

```

On success, the `__call__` method reads a date string from the form and converts it into a `datetime.date` object using the format string specified in the constructor. The `formatter` object takes a `datetime.date` object and converts it to a string representation using the same format. The `formatter` is called automatically in forms, but you can also call it explicitly to convert objects into their proper representation. For example:

```

1 >>> db = DAL()
2 >>> db.define_table('atable',
3     Field('birth', 'date', requires=IS_DATE('%m/%d/%Y')))
4 >>> id = db.atable.insert(birth=datetime.date(2008, 1, 1))
5 >>> row = db.atable[id]
6 >>> print db.atable.formatter(row.birth)
7 01/01/2008

```

When multiple validators are required (and stored in a list), they are executed in order and the output of one is passed as input to the next. The chain breaks when one of the validators fails.

Conversely, when we call the `formatter` method of a field, the formatters of the associated validators are also chained, but in reverse order.

7.6.4 Validators with Dependencies

Occasionally, you need to validate a field and the validator depends on the value of another field. This can be done, but it requires setting the validator in the controller, when the value of the other field is known. For example, here is a page that generates a registration form that asks for username and

password twice. None of the fields can be empty, and both passwords must match:

```

1 def index():
2     form = SQLFORM.factory(
3         Field('username', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
4         Field('password', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()),
5         Field('password_again',
6             requires=IS_SAME_AS(request.vars.password)))
7     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
8         pass # or take some action
9     return dict(form=form)

```

The same mechanism can be applied to FORM and SQLFORM objects.

7.7 Widgets

Here is a list of available web2py widgets:

```

1 SQLFORM.widgets.string.widget
2 SQLFORM.widgets.text.widget
3 SQLFORM.widgets.password.widget
4 SQLFORM.widgets.integer.widget
5 SQLFORM.widgets.double.widget
6 SQLFORM.widgets.time.widget
7 SQLFORM.widgets.date.widget
8 SQLFORM.widgets.datetime.widget
9 SQLFORM.widgets.upload.widget
10 SQLFORM.widgets.boolean.widget
11 SQLFORM.widgets.options.widget
12 SQLFORM.widgets.multiple.widget
13 SQLFORM.widgets.radio.widget
14 SQLFORM.widgets.checkboxes.widget
15 SQLFORM.widgets.autocomplete

```

The first ten of them are the defaults for the corresponding field types. The "options" widget is used when a field's requires is IS_IN_SET or IS_IN_DB with multiple=False (default behavior). The "multiple" widget is used when a field's requires is IS_IN_SET or IS_IN_DB with multiple=True. The "radio" and "checkboxes" widgets are never used by default, but can be set manually. The

autocomplete widget is special and discussed in its own section.

For example, to have a "string" field represented by a textarea:

```
1 Field('comment', 'string', widget=SQLFORM.widgets.text.widget)
```

You can create new widgets or extend existing widgets.

`SQLFORM.widgets[type]` is a class and `SQLFORM.widgets[type].widget` is a static member function of the corresponding class. Each widget function takes two arguments: the field object, and the current value of that field. It returns a representation of the widget. As an example, the string widget could be recoded as follows:

```
1 def my_string_widget(field, value):
2     return INPUT(_name=field.name,
3                 _id="%s_%s" % (field._tablename_, field.name),
4                 _class=field.type,
5                 _value=value,
6                 requires=field.requires)
7
8 Field('comment', 'string', widget=my_string_widget)
```

The id and class values must follow the convention described later in this chapter. A widget may contain its own validators, but it is good practice to associate the validators to the "requires" attribute of the field and have the widget get them from there.

7.7.1 Autocomplete Widget

There are two possible uses for the autocomplete widget: to autocomplete a field that takes a value from a list or to autocomplete a reference field (where the string to be autocompleted is a representation of the reference which is implemented as an id).

The first case is easy:

```

1 db.define_table('category',Field('name'))
2 db.define_table('product',Field('name'),Field('category'))
3 db.product.category.widget = SQLHTML.widgets.autocomplete(
4     request, db.category.name, limitby=(0,10), min_length=2)

```

Where `limitby` instructs the widget to display no more than 10 suggestions at the time, and `min_length` instructs the widget to perform an Ajax callback to fetch suggestions only after the user has typed at least 2 characters in the search box.

The second case is more complex:

```

1 db.define_table('category',Field('name'))
2 db.define_table('product',Field('name'),Field('category'))
3 db.product.category.widget = SQLHTML.widgets.autocomplete(
4     request, db.category.name, id_field=db.category.id)

```

In this case the value of `id_field` tells the widget that even if the value to be autocompleted is a `db.category.name`, the value to be stored is the corresponding `db.category.id`. An optional parameters is `orderby` that instructs the widget on how to sort the suggestions (alphabetical by default).

This widget works via Ajax. Where is the Ajax callback? Some magic is going on in this widget. The callback is a method of the widget object itself. How is it exposed? In web2py any piece of code can generate a response by raising an HTTP exception. This widget exploits this possibility in the following way: the widget sends the Ajax call to the same URL that generated the widget in the first place and puts a special token in the `request.vars`. She the widget gets instantiated again, it finds the token and raises an HTTP exception that responds to the request. All of this is done under the hood and hidden to the developer.

8

Access Control

web2py includes a powerful and customizable Role Based Access Control mechanism (RBAC).

Here is a definition from Wikipedia:

"Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) is an approach to restricting system access to authorized users. It is a newer alternative approach to mandatory access control (MAC) and discretionary access control (DAC). RBAC is sometimes referred to as role-based security.

RBAC is a policy neutral and flexible access control technology sufficiently powerful to simulate DAC and MAC. Conversely, MAC can simulate RBAC if the role graph is restricted to a tree rather than a partially ordered set.

Prior to the development of RBAC, MAC and DAC were considered to be the only known models for access control: if a model was not MAC, it was considered to be a DAC model, and vice versa. Research in the late 1990s demonstrated that RBAC falls in neither category.

Within an organization, roles are created for various job functions. The per-

missions to perform certain operations are assigned to specific roles. Members of staff (or other system users) are assigned particular roles, and through those role assignments acquire the permissions to perform particular system functions. Unlike context-based access control (CBAC), RBAC does not look at the message context (such as a connection's source).

Since users are not assigned permissions directly, but only acquire them through their role (or roles), management of individual user rights becomes a matter of simply assigning appropriate roles to the user; this simplifies common operations, such as adding a user, or changing a user's department.

RBAC differs from access control lists (ACLs) used in traditional discretionary access control systems in that it assigns permissions to specific operations with meaning in the organization, rather than to low level data objects. For example, an access control list could be used to grant or deny write access to a particular system file, but it would not dictate how that file could be changed."

The web2py class that implements RBAC is called **Auth**.

Auth needs (and defines) the following tables:

- auth_user stores users' name, email address, password, and status (registration pending, accepted, blocked)
- auth_group stores groups or roles for users in a many-to-many structure. By default, each user is in its own group, but a user can be in multiple groups, and each group can contain multiple users. A group is identified by a role and a description.
- auth_membership links users and groups in a many-to-many structure.
- auth_permission links groups and permissions. A permission is identified by a name and, optionally, a table and a record. For example, members of a certain group can have "update" permissions on a specific record of a specific table.
- auth_event logs changes in the other tables and successful access via CRUD

to objects controlled by the RBAC.

In principle, there is no restriction on the names of the roles and the names of the permissions; the developer can create them to fit the roles and permissions in the organization. Once they have been created, web2py provides an API to check if a user is logged in, if a user is a member of a given group, and/or if the user is a member of any group that has a given required permission. web2py also provides decorators to restrict access to any function based on login, membership and permissions. web2py also understands some specific permissions, i.e., those that have a name that correspond to the CRUD methods (create, read, update, delete) and can enforce them automatically without the need to use decorators.

In this chapter, we are going to discuss different parts of RBAC one by one.

8.1 Authentication

In order to use RBAC, users need to be identified. This means that they need to register (or be registered) and log in.

Auth provides multiple login methods. The default one consists of identifying users based on the local `auth_user` table. Alternatively, it can log in users against third-party authentication systems and single sign on providers such as Google, PAM, LDAP, Facebook, LinkedIn, OpenID, OAuth, etc..

To start using `Auth`, you need at least this code in a model file, which is also provided with the `web2py` "welcome" application and assumes a `db` connection object:

```

1 from gluon.tools import Auth
2 auth = Auth(globals(), db)
3 auth.define_tables(username=False)
```

Set `username=True` if you want `auth` to user `username` for login instead of

email.

To expose **Auth**, you also need the following function in a controller (for example in "default.py"):

```
1 def user(): return dict(form=auth())
```

The auth object and the user action are already defined in the scaffolding application.

web2py also includes a sample view "default/user.html" to render this function properly that looks like this:

```
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <h2>{{=request.args(0)}}</h2>
3 {{=form}}
4 {{if request.args(0)=='login':}}
5 <a href="{{=URL(args='register')}}">register</a><br />
6 <a href="{{=URL(args='request_reset_password')}}">lost password</a><br />
7 {{pass}}
```

Notice that this function simply displays a `form` and therefore it can be customized using normal custom form syntax. The only caveat is that the displayed form depends on the value of `request.args(0)` therefore you may need an `if` statement like this:

```
1 {{if request.args(0)=='login':}}...custom login form...{{pass}}
```

The controller above exposes multiple actions:

```
1 http://.../[app]/default/user/register
2 http://.../[app]/default/user/login
3 http://.../[app]/default/user/logout
4 http://.../[app]/default/user/profile
5 http://.../[app]/default/user/change_password
6 http://.../[app]/default/user/verify_email
7 http://.../[app]/default/user/retrieve_username
8 http://.../[app]/default/user/request_reset_password
9 http://.../[app]/default/user/reset_password
10 http://.../[app]/default/user/impersonate
11 http://.../[app]/default/user/groups
12 http://.../[app]/default/user/not_authorized
```

- **register** allows users to register. It is integrated with CAPTCHA, although this is disabled by default.
- **login** allows users who are registered to log in (if the registration is verified or does not require verification, if it has been approved or does not require approval, and if it has not been blocked).
- **logout** does what you would expect but also, as the other methods, logs the event and can be used to trigger some event.
- **profile** allows users to edit their profile, i.e. the content of the auth_user table. Notice that this table does not have a fixed structure and can be customized.
- **change_password** allows users to change their password in a fail-safe way.
- **verify_email**. If email verification is turned on, then visitors, upon registration, receive an email with a link to verify their email information. The link points to this action.
- **retrieve_username**. By default, **Auth** uses email and password for login, but it can, optionally, use username instead of email. In this latter case, if a user forgets his/her username, the **retrieve_username** method allows the user to type the email address and retrieve the username by email.
- **request_reset_password**. Allows users who forgot their password to request a new password. They will get a confirmation email pointing to **reset_password**.
- **impersonate** allows a user to "impersonate" another user. This is important for debugging and for support purposes. `request.args[0]` is the id of the user to be impersonated. This is only allowed if the logged in user `has_permission('impersonate', db.auth_user, user_id)`.
- **groups** lists the groups the current logged in user is a member of.
- **not_authorized** displays an error message when the visitor tried to do something that he/she is not authorized to do
- **navbar** is a helper that generates a bar with login/register/etc. links.

Logout, profile, change_password, impersonate, and groups require login.

By default they are all exposed, but it is possible to restrict access to only some of these actions.

All of the methods above can be extended or replaced by subclassing **Auth**.

To restrict access to functions to only logged in visitors, decorate the function as in the following example

```
1 @auth.requires_login()
2 def hello():
3     return dict(message='hello %(first_name)!' % auth.user)
```

Any function can be decorated, not just exposed actions. Of course this is still only a very simple example of access control. More complex examples will be discussed later.

auth.user contains a copy of the db.auth_user records for the current logged in user or None otherwise. There is also also a auth.user_id which is the same as auth.user.id (i.e. the id of the current logger in user) or None.

8.1.1 Restrictions on registration

If you want to allow visitors to register but not to log in until registration has been approved by the administrator:

```
1 auth.settings.registration_requires_approval = True
```

You can approve a registration via the appadmin interface. Look into the table auth_user. Pending registrations have a registration_key field set to "pending". A registration is approved when this field is set to blank.

Via the appadmin interface, you can also block a user from logging in. Locate the user in the table auth_user and set the registration_key to "blocked".

"blocked" users are not allowed to log in. Notice that this will prevent a visitor from logging in but it will not force a visitor who is already logged in to log out.

You can also block access to the "register" page completely with this statement:

```
1 auth.settings.actions_disabled.append('register')
```

Other methods of **Auth** can be restricted in the same way.

8.1.2 Integration with OpenID, Facebook, etc.

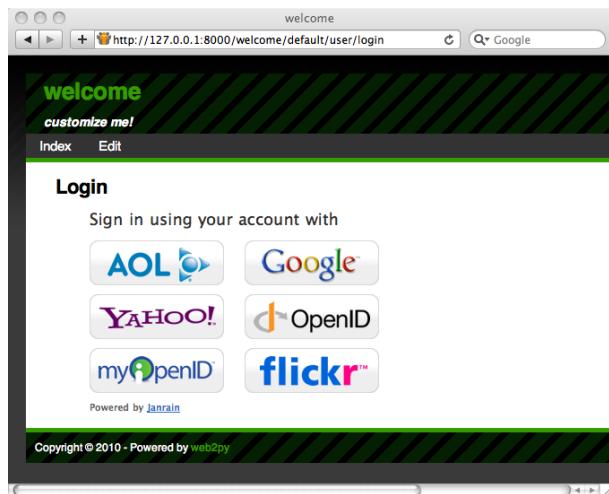
You can use the web2py Role Base Access Control and authenticate with other services like OpenID, Facebook, LinkedIn, Google, MySpace, Flickr, etc. The easiest way is to use RPX (Janrain.com).

Janrain.com is a service that provides middleware authentication. You can register with Janrain.com, register a domain (the name of your app) and set of URLs you will be using, and they will provide you with API key.

Now edit the model of your web2py application and somewhere after you define the auth object you place the following lines:

```
1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.rpx_account import RPXAccount
2 auth.settings.actions_disabled=['register','change_password',
   'request_reset_password']
3 auth.settings.login_form = RPXAccount(request,
   api_key='...',
   domain='...',
   url = "http://localhost:8000/%s/default/user/login" % request.application)
```

Where the first line imports the new login method, the second line disabled local registration, the third line asks web2py to use the RPX login method. You must insert your own `api_key` provided by Janrain.com, the domain you choose upon registration and the external `url` of your login page.



When a new user logins for the first time web2py creates a new `db.auth_user` record associated to the user. It will use the `registration_id` field to store a unique id for the user. Most authentication methods will also provide a user-name, email, `first_name` and `last_name` but that is not guaranteed. Which fields are provided depends on the login method selected by the user. If the same user logins twice use different authentication mechanisms (for example once with OpenID and once with Facebook) Janrain may not recognize his/her as the same user and issue different `registration_id`.

You can customize the mapping between the data provided by Janrain and the data stored in `db.auth_user`. Here is an example for Facebook:

```

1 auth.settings.login_form.mappings.Facebook = lambda profile:
2     dict(registration_id = profile["identifier"],
3          username = profile["preferredUsername"],
4          email = profile["email"],
5          first_name = profile["name"]["givenName"],
6          last_name = profile["name"]["familyName"])

```

The keys in the dictionary are fields in `db.auth_user` and the values are data entries in the `profile` object provided by Janrain. Look at the online Janrain documentation for details on the latter.

Janrain will also keep statistics about your users' login.

This login form is fully integrated with web2py Role Based Access Control and you can still create groups, make users members of groups, assign permissions, block users, etc.

If you prefer not to use the Janrain and want to use a different login method (LDAP, PAM, Google, OpenID, OAuth/Facebook, LinkedIn, etc.) you can do so. The API to do so are described later in the chapter.

8.1.3 CAPTCHA and reCAPTCHA

To prevent spammers and bots registering on your site, you may require a registration CAPTCHA. web2py supports reCAPTCHA (71) out of the box. This is because reCAPTCHA is very well designed, free, accessible (it can read the words to the visitors), easy to set up, and does not require installing any third-party libraries.

This is what you need to do to use reCAPTCHA:

- Register with reCAPTCHA (71) and obtain a (PUBLIC_KEY, PRIVATE_KEY) couple for your account. These are just two strings.
- Append the following code to your model after the auth object is defined:

```
1 from gluon.tools import Recaptcha
2 auth.settings.captcha = Recaptcha(request,
3     'PUBLIC_KEY', 'PRIVATE_KEY')
```

reCAPTCHA may not work if you access the web site as 'localhost' or '127.0.0.1', because it is registered to work with publicly visible web sites only.

The Recaptcha constructor takes some optional arguments:

```
1 Recaptcha(..., use_ssl=True, error_message='invalid')
```

Notice that `use_ssl=False` by default.

If you do not want to use reCAPTCHA, look into the definition of the `Recaptcha` class in "gluon/tools.py", since it is easy to use other CAPTCHA systems.

8.1.4 Customizing Auth

The call to

```
1 auth.define_tables()
```

defines all **Auth** tables that have not been defined already. This means that if you wish to do so, you can define your own `auth_user` table. Using a similar syntax to the one shown below, you can customize any other **Auth** table.

Here is the proper way to define a user table:

```
1 # after
2 # auth = Auth(globals(),db)
3
4 db.define_table(
5     auth.settings.table_user_name,
6     Field('first_name', length=128, default=''),
7     Field('last_name', length=128, default=''),
8     Field('email', length=128, default='', unique=True),
9     Field('password', 'password', length=512,
10           readable=False, label='Password'),
11     Field('registration_key', length=512,
12           writable=False, readable=False, default=''),
13     Field('reset_password_key', length=512,
14           writable=False, readable=False, default=''),
15     Field('registration_id', length=512,
16           writable=False, readable=False, default=''))
17
18 auth_table.first_name.requires = \
19     IS_NOT_EMPTY(error_message=auth.messages.is_empty)
20 auth_table.last_name.requires = \
21     IS_NOT_EMPTY(error_message=auth.messages.is_empty)
22 auth_table.password.requires = [IS_STRONG(), CRYPT()]
23 auth_table.email.requires = [
24     IS_EMAIL(error_message=auth.messages.invalid_email),
25     IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, auth_table.email)]
```

```

26 auth.settings.table_user = auth_table
27
28 # before
29 # auth.define_tables()

```

You can add any field you wish, but you cannot remove the required fields shown in this example.

It is important to make "password", "registration_key", "reset_password_key" and "registration_id" fields `readable=False` and `writable=False`, since a visitor must not be allowed to tamper with them.

If you add a field called "username", it will be used in place of "email" for login. If you do, you will need to add a validator as well:

```

1 auth_table.username.requires = IS_NOT_IN_DB(db, auth_table.username)

```

8.1.5 Renaming Auth tables

The actual names of the Auth tables are stored in

```

1 auth.settings.table_user_name = 'auth_user'
2 auth.settings.table_group_name = 'auth_group'
3 auth.settings.table_membership_name = 'auth_membership'
4 auth.settings.table_permission_name = 'auth_permission'
5 auth.settings.table_event_name = 'auth_event'

```

The names of the table can be changed by reassigning the above variables after the `auth` object is defined and before the Auth tables are defined. For example:

```

1 auth = Auth(globals(),db)
2 auth.settings.table_user_name = 'person'
3 #...
4 auth.define_tables()

```

The actual tables can also be referenced, independently of their actual names, by

```

1 auth.settings.table_user
2 auth.settings.table_group
3 auth.settings.table_membership
4 auth.settings.table_permission
5 auth.settings.table_event

```

8.1.6 Other Login Methods and Login Forms

Auth provides multiple login methods and hooks to create new login methods. Each supported login method corresponds to a file in the folder

```
1 gluon/contrib/login_methods/
```

Refer to the documentation in the files themselves for each login method, but here we provide some examples.

First of all we need to make a distinction between two types of alternate login methods:

- login methods that use a web2py login form (although the credentials are verified outside web2py). An example is LDAP.
- login methods that require an external single-sign-on form (an example is Google and Facebook).

In the latter case web2py never gets the login credentials, only a login token issued by the service provider. The token is stored in `db.auth_user.registration_id`.

Let's consider examples of the first case:

Basic

Let's say you have an authentication service, for example at the url

```
1 https://basic.example.com
```

that accepts basic access authentication. That means the server accepts HTTP requests with a header of the form:

```

1 GET /index.html HTTP/1.0
2 Host: basic.example.com
3 Authorization: Basic QWxhZGRpbjpvcGVuIHNlc2FtZQ==
```

where the latter string is the base64 encoding of the string `username:password`. The service responds 200 OK if the user is authorized and 400, 401, 402, 403 or 404 otherwise.

You want to enter username and password using the standard `Auth` login form and verify the credentials against such a service. All you need to do is add the following code to your application

```

1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.basic_auth import basic_auth
2 auth.settings.login_methods.append(
3     basic_auth('https://basic.example.com'))
```

Notice that `auth.settings.login_methods` is a list of authentication methods that are executed sequentially. By default it is set to

```
1 auth.settings.login_methods = [auth]
```

When an alternate method is appended, for example `basic_auth`, `Auth` first tries to log in the visitor based on the content of `auth_user`, and when this fails, it tries the next method in the list. If a method succeeds in logging in the visitor, and if `auth.settings.login_methods[0]==auth`, `Auth` takes the following actions:

- if the user does not exist in `auth_user`, a new user is created and the user-name/email and passwords are stored.
- if the user does exist in `auth_user` but the new accepted password does not match the old stored password, the old password is replaced with the new one (notice that passwords are always stored hashed unless specified otherwise).

If you do not wish to store the new password in auth_user, then it is sufficient to change the order of login methods, or remove auth from the list. For example:

```
1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.basic_auth import basic_auth
2 auth.settings.login_methods = \
3     [basic_auth('https://basic.example.com')]
```

The same applies for any other login method described here.

SMTP and Gmail

You can verify the login credentials using a remote SMTP server, for example Gmail; i.e., you log the user in if the email and password they provide are valid credentials to access the Gmail SMTP server (`smtp.gmail.com:587`). All that is needed is the following code:

```
1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.email_auth import email_auth
2 auth.settings.login_methods.append(
3     email_auth("smtp.gmail.com:587", "@gmail.com"))
```

The first argument of `email_auth` is the address:port of the SMTP server. The second argument is the email domain.

This works with any SMTP server that requires TLS authentication.

PAM

Authentication using Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) works as in the previous cases. It allows web2py to authenticate users using the operating system accounts:

```
1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.pam_auth import pam_auth
2 auth.settings.login_methods.append(pam_auth())
```

LDAP

Authentication using LDAP works very much as in the previous cases.

To use LDAP login with MS Active Directory:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.ldap_auth import ldap_auth
2 auth.settings.login_methods.append(ldap_auth(mode='ad',
3     server='my.domain.controller',
4     base_dn='ou=Users,dc=domain,dc=com'))
```

To use LDAP login with Lotus Notes and Domino:

```

1 auth.settings.login_methods.append(ldap_auth(mode='domino',
2     server='my.domino.server'))
```

To use LDAP login with OpenLDAP (with UID):

```

1 auth.settings.login_methods.append(ldap_auth(server='my.ldap.server',
2     base_dn='ou=Users,dc=domain,dc=com'))
```

To use LDAP login with OpenLDAP (with CN):

```

1 auth.settings.login_methods.append(ldap_auth(mode='cn',
2     server='my.ldap.server', base_dn='ou=Users,dc=domain,dc=com'))
```

Google App Engine

Authentication using Google when running on Google App Engine requires skipping the web2py login form, being redirected to the Google login page, and back upon success. Because the behavior is different than in the previous examples, the API is a little different.

```

1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.gae_google_login import GaeGoogleAccount
2 auth.settings.login_form = GaeGoogleAccount()
```

OpenID

We have previously discussed integration with Janrain (which has OpenID support) and that is the easiest way to use OpenID. Yet sometime you do not want to rely on a third party service and you want to access the OpenID provider directly from the consumer (your app).

Here is an example:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.openid_auth import OpenIDAuth
2 auth.settings.login_form = OpenIDAuth(auth)

```

OpenIDAuth requires the "python-open" installed separately.

Under the hood this login method defines the following table

```

1 db.define_table('alt_logins',
2     Field('username', length=512, default=''),
3     Field('type', length =128, default='openid', readable=False),
4     Field('user', self.table_user, readable=False))

```

which stores the openid usernames for each user. If you want to display the openids for the current logged in user:

```

1 {{=auth.settings.login_form.list_user_openids()}}

```

OAuth2.0 and Facebook

We have previously discussed integration with Janrain (which has Facebook support), yet sometime you do not want to rely on a third party service and you want to access a OAuth2.0 provider directly for example Facebook. Here is how:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.oauth20_account import OAuthAccount
2 auth.settings.login_form=OAuthAccount(globals(),YOUR_CLIENT_ID,YOUR_CLIENT_SECRET)

```

Things get a little more complex if you want to use facebook oauth2.0 login to login not into your own app but into a specific Facebook to access its API. Here we provide an example to access Facebook Graph API.

First of all you must install the "pyfacebook" module.

Second, you need the following code in your model:

```

1 # import required modules
2 from facebook import GraphAPI
3 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.oauth20_account import OAuthAccount
4 # extend the OAuthAccount class

```

```

5  class FaceBookAccount(OAuthAccount):
6      """OAuth impl for FaceBook"""
7      AUTH_URL="https://graph.facebook.com/oauth/authorize"
8      TOKEN_URL="https://graph.facebook.com/oauth/access_token"
9      def __init__(self, g):
10          OAuthAccount.__init__(self, g,
11                               YOUR_CLIENT_ID,
12                               YOUR_CLIENT_SECRET,
13                               self.AUTH_URL,
14                               self.TOKEN_URL)
15          self.graph = None
16      # override function that fetches user info
17      def get_user(self):
18          "Returns the user using the Graph API"
19          if not self.accessToken():
20              return None
21          if not self.graph:
22              self.graph = GraphAPI((self.accessToken()))
23          try:
24              user = self.graph.get_object("me")
25              return dict(first_name = user['first_name'],
26                          last_name = user['last_name'],
27                          username = user['id'])
28          except GraphAPIError:
29              self.session.token = None
30              self.graph = None
31              return None
32      # use the above class to build a new login form
33      auth.settings.login_form=FaceBookAccount(globals())

```

LinkedIn

We have previously discussed integration with Janrain (which has LinkedIn support) and that is the easiest way to use OpenID. Yet sometime you do not want to rely on a third party service and you want to access LinkedIn directly to get more information than Janrain provides.

Here is an example:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.linkedin_account import LinkedInAccount
2 auth.settings.login_form=LinkedInAccount(request,KEY,SECRET,RETURN_URL)

```

LinkedInAccount requires the "python-linkedin" module installed separately.

Multiple Login Forms

Some login methods modify the `login_form`, some do not. When they do that, they may not be able to coexist. Yet some some coexist by providing multiple login forms in the same page. web2py provides a way to do it. Here is an example mix normal login (auth) and RPX login (janrain.com):

```

1 from gluon.contrib.login_methods.extended_login_form import ExtendedLoginForm
2 other_form = RPXAccount(request, api_key='...', domain='...', url='...')
3 auth.settings.login_form = ExtendedLoginForm(request,
4     auth, other_form, signals=['token'])

```

If signals are set and a parameter in request matches any signals, it will return the call of `other_form.login_form` instead. `other_form` can handle some particular situations, for example, multiple steps of OpenID login inside `other_form.login_form`.

Otherwise it will render the normal login form together with the `other_form`.

8.2 Auth and Mail

By default, email verification is disabled. To enable email, append the following lines in the model where `auth` is defined:

```

1 from gluon.tools import Mail
2 mail = Mail(globals())
3 mail.settings.server = 'smtp.example.com:25'
4 mail.settings.sender = 'you@example.com'
5 mail.settings.login = 'username:password'
6 auth.settings.mailer = mail
7 auth.settings.registration_requires_verification = False
8 auth.settings.registration_requires_approval = False
9 auth.settings.reset_password_requires_verification = True
10 auth.messages.verify_email = 'Click on the link http://' + \
    request.env.http_host + \
    URL(r=request,c='default',f='user',args=['verify_email']) + \
    '/%(key)s to verify your email'
11 auth.messages.reset_password = 'Click on the link http://' + \
    request.env.http_host + \

```

```

16 URL(r=request,c='default',f='user',args=['reset_password']) + \
17     '/%(key)s to reset your password'

```

You need to replace the mail.settings with the proper parameters for your SMTP server. Set `mail.settings.login=False` if the SMTP server does not require authentication.

You also need to replace the string

```
1 'Click on the link ...'
```

in `auth.messages.verify_email` with the proper complete URL of the action `verify_email`. This is necessary because web2py may be installed behind a proxy, and it cannot determine its own public URLs with absolute certainty.

Once `mail` is defined, it can also be used to send email explicitly via

```

1 mail.send(to=['somebody@example.com'],
2             subject='hello',
3             message='hi there')

```

`Mail` returns `True` if it succeeds in sending the email, `False` otherwise.

8.2.1 Email Debugging

For debugging purposes you can set

```
1 mail.settings.server = 'logging'
```

and emails will not be sent but logged to console instead.

8.2.2 Emails from Google App Engine

For sending emails from Google App Engine account:

```
1 mail.settings.server = 'gae'
```

At the time of writing web2py does not support attachments and encrypted emails on Google App Engine.

8.2.3 More Email Examples

Simple text email

```
1 mail.send('you@example.com',
2   'Message subject',
3   'Plain text body of the message')
```

HTML emails

```
1 mail.send('you@example.com',
2   'Message subject',
3   <html>html body</html>)
```

If the email body starts with `<html>` and ends with `</html>` it will be sent as a HTML email.

Combining Text and HTML Emails

The email message can be a tuple (text, html):

```
1 mail.send('you@example.com',
2   'Message subject',
3   ('Plain text body', <html>html body</html>))
```

CC and BCC Emails

```
1 mail.send('you@example.com',
2   'Message subject',
3   'Plain text body',
4   cc=['other1@example.com', 'other2@example.com'],
5   bcc=['other3@example.com', 'other4@example.com'])
```

Attachments

```

1 mail.send('you@example.com',
2   'Message subject',
3   '<html></html>',
4   attachments = Mail.Attachment('/path/to/photo.jpg' content_id='photo'))

```

Multiple attachments

```

1 mail.send('you@example.com,
2   'Message subject',
3   'Message body',
4   attachments = [Mail.Attachment('/path/to/fist.file'),
5                  Mail.Attachment('/path/to/second.file')])

```

8.2.4 x509 and PGP Encryption

It is possible to send x509 (SMIME) encrypted emails using the following settings:

```

1 mail.settings.cipher_type = 'x509'
2 mail.settings.sign = True
3 mail.settings.sign_passphrase = 'your passphrase'
4 mail.settings.encrypt = True
5 mail.settings.x509_sign_keyfile = 'filename.key'
6 mail.settings.x509_sign_certfile = 'filename.cert'
7 mail.settings.x509_crypt_certfiles = 'filename.cert'

```

It is possible to send PGP encrypted emails using the following settings:

```

1 from gpgme import pgp
2 mail.settings.cipher_type = 'gpg'
3 mail.settings.sign = True
4 mail.settings.sign_passphrase = 'your passphrase'
5 mail.settings.encrypt = True

```

The latter requires the python-pyme package.

8.3 Authorization

Once a new user is registered, a new group is created to contain the user. The role of the new user is conventionally "user_[id]" where [id] is the id of the newly created id. The creation of the group can be disabled with

```
1 auth.settings.create_user_groups = False
```

although we do not suggest doing so.

Users have membership in groups. Each group is identified by a name/role. Groups have permissions. Users have permissions because of the groups they belong to.

You can create groups, give membership and permissions via **appadmin** or programmatically using the following methods:

```
1 auth.add_group('role', 'description')
```

returns the id of the newly created group.

```
1 auth.del_group(group_id)
```

deletes the group with group_id.

```
1 auth.del_group(auth.id_group('user_7'))
```

deletes the group with role "user_7", i.e., the group uniquely associated to user number 7.

```
1 auth.user_group(user_id)
```

returns the id of the group uniquely associated to the user identified by user_id.

```
1 auth.add_membership(group_id, user_id)
```

gives `user_id` membership of the group `group_id`. If the `user_id` is not specified, then web2py assumes the current logged-in user.

```
1 auth.del_membership(group_id, user_id)
```

revokes `user_id` membership of the group `group_id`. If the `user_id` is not specified, then web2py assumes the current logged-in user.

```
1 auth.has_membership(group_id, user_id, role)
```

checks whether `user_id` has membership of the group `group_id` or the group with the specified role. Only `group_id` or `role` should be passed to the function, not both. If the `user_id` is not specified, then web2py assumes the current logged-in user.

```
1 auth.add_permission(group_id, 'name', 'object', record_id)
```

gives permission "name" (user defined) on the object "object" (also user defined) to members of the group `group_id`. If "object" is a tablename then the permission can refer to the entire table (`record_id==0`) or to a specific record (`record_id>0`). When giving permissions on tables, it is common to use a permission name in the set ('create', 'read', 'update', 'delete', 'select') since these permissions are understood and can be enforced by CRUD.

```
1 auth.del_permission(group_id, 'name', 'object', record_id)
```

revokes the permission.

```
1 auth.has_permission('name', 'object', record_id, user_id)
```

checks whether the user identified by `user_id` has membership in a group with the requested permission.

```
1 rows = db(accessible_query('read', db.mytable, user_id))\
2 .select(db.mytable.ALL)
```

returns all rows of table "mytable" that user `user_id` has "read" permission on. If the `user_id` is not specified, then web2py assumes the current logged-in user. The `accessible_query(...)` can be combined with other queries to

make more complex ones. `accessible_query(...)` is the only **Auth** method to require a JOIN, so it does not work on the Google App Engine.

Assuming the following definitions:

```

1 >>> from gluon.tools import Auth
2 >>> auth = Auth(globals(), db)
3 >>> auth.define_tables()
4 >>> secrets = db.define_table('document', Field('body'))
5 >>> james_bond = db.auth_user.insert(first_name='James',
6                                         last_name='Bond')
```

Here is an example:

```

1 >>> doc_id = db.document.insert(body = 'top secret')
2 >>> agents = auth.add_group(role = 'Secret Agent')
3 >>> auth.add_membership(agents, james_bond)
4 >>> auth.add_permission(agents, 'read', secrets)
5 >>> print auth.has_permission('read', secrets, doc_id, james_bond)
6 True
7 >>> print auth.has_permission('update', secrets, doc_id, james_bond)
8 False
```

8.3.1 Decorators

The most common way to check permission is not by explicit calls to the above methods, but by decorating functions so that permissions are checked relative to the logged-in visitor. Here are some examples:

```

1 def function_one():
2     return 'this is a public function'
3
4 @auth.requires_login()
5 def function_two():
6     return 'this requires login'
7
8 @auth.requires_membership(agents)
9 def function_three():
10    return 'you are a secret agent'
11
12 @auth.requires_permission('read', secrets)
13 def function_four():
```

```

14     return 'you can read secret documents'
15
16 @auth.requires_permission('delete', 'any file')
17 def function_five():
18     import os
19     for file in os.listdir('.'):
20         os.unlink(file)
21     return 'all files deleted'
22
23 @auth.requires(auth.user_id==1 or request.client=='127.0.0.1')
24 def function_six():
25     return 'you can read secret documents'
26
27 @auth.requires_permission('add', 'number')
28 def add(a, b):
29     return a + b
30
31 def function_six():
32     return add(3, 4)

```

Note that access to all functions apart from the first one is restricted based on permissions that the visitor may or may not have.

If the visitor is not logged in, then the permission cannot be checked; the visitor is redirected to the login page and then back to the page that requires permissions.

If the visitor does not have permission to access a given function, the visitor is redirect to the URL defined by

```

1 auth.settings.on_failed_authorization = \
2     URL('user',args='on_failed_authorization')

```

You can change this variable and redirect the user elsewhere.

8.3.2 Combining Requirements

Occasionally, it is necessary to combine requirements. This can be done via a generic `requires` decorator which takes a single argument, a true or false

condition. For example, to give access to agents, but only on Tuesday:

```

1 @auth.requires(auth.has_membership(group_id=agents) \
2                 and request.now.weekday()==1)
3 def function_seven():
4     return 'Hello agent, it must be Tuesday!'

```

or equivalently:

```

1 @auth.requires(auth.has_membership(role='Secret Agent') \
2                 and request.now.weekday()==1)
3 def function_seven():
4     return 'Hello agent, it must be Tuesday!'

```

8.3.3 Authorization and CRUD

Using decorators and/or explicit checks provides one way to implement access control.

Another way to implement access control is to always use CRUD (as opposed to SQLFORM) to access the database and to ask CRUD to enforce access control on database tables and records. This is done by linking Auth and CRUD with the following statement:

```
1 crud.settings.auth = auth
```

This will prevent the visitor from accessing any of the CRUD functions unless the visitor is logged in and has explicit access. For example, to allow a visitor to post comments, but only update their own comments (assuming crud, auth and db.comment are defined):

```

1 def give_create_permission(form):
2     group_id = auth.id_group('user_%s' % auth.user.id)
3     auth.add_permission(group_id, 'read', db.comment)
4     auth.add_permission(group_id, 'create', db.comment)
5     auth.add_permission(group_id, 'select', db.comment)
6
7 def give_update_permission(form):
8     comment_id = form.vars.id
9     group_id = auth.id_group('user_%s' % auth.user.id)

```

```

10 auth.add_permission(group_id, 'update', db.comment, comment_id)
11 auth.add_permission(group_id, 'delete', db.comment, comment_id)
12
13 auth.settings.register_onaccept = give_create_permission
14 crud.settings.auth = auth
15
16 def post_comment():
17     form = crud.create(db.comment, onaccept=give_update_permission)
18     comments = db(db.comment.id>0).select()
19     return dict(form=form, comments=comments)
20
21 def update_comment():
22     form = crud.update(db.comment, request.args(0))
23     return dict(form=form)

```

You can also select specific records (those you have 'read' access to):

```

1 def post_comment():
2     form = crud.create(db.comment, onaccept=give_update_permission)
3     query = auth.accessible_query('read', db.comment, auth.user.id)
4     comments = db(query).select(db.comment.ALL)
5     return dict(form=form, comments=comments)

```

The permissions names enforced by :

```
1 crud.settings.auth = auth
```

are "read", "create", "update", "delete", "select", "impersonate".

8.3.4 Authorization and Downloads

The use of decorators and the use of crud.settings.auth do not enforce authorization on files downloaded by the usual download function

```
1 def download(): return response.download(request, db)
```

If one wishes to do so, one must declare explicitly which "upload" fields contain files that need access control upon download. For example:

```
1 db.define_table('dog',
```

```

2     Field('small_image', 'upload')
3     Field('large_image', 'upload'))
4
5 db.dog.large_image.authorization = lambda record: \
6     auth.is_logged_in() and \
7     auth.has_permission('read', db.dog, record.id, auth.user.id)

```

The attribute `authorization` of upload field can be `None` (the default) or a function that decides whether the user is logged in and has permission to 'read' the current record. In this example, there is no restriction on downloading images linked by the "small_image" field, but we require access control on images linked by the "large_image" field.

8.3.5 Access Control and Basic Authentication

Occasionally, it may be necessary to expose actions that have decorators that require access control as services; i.e., to call them from a program or script and still be able to use authentication to check for authorization.

Auth enables login via basic authentication:

```
1 auth.settings.allow_basic_login = False
```

With this set, an action like

```

1 @auth.requires_login()
2 def give_me_time():
3     import time
4     return time.ctime()

```

can be called, for example, from a shell command:

```

1 wget --user=[username] --password=[password]
2   http://.../[app]/[controller]/give_me_time

```

Basic login is often the only option for services (described in the next chapter), but it is disabled by default.

8.3.6 Settings and Messages

Here is a list of all parameters that can be customized for **Auth**

The following must point to a `gluon.tools.Mail` object to allow auth to send emails:

```
1 auth.settings.mailer = None
```

The following must be the name of the controller that defined the user action:

```
1 auth.settings.controller = 'default'
```

The following is a very important setting:

```
1 auth.settings.hmac_key = None
```

It must be set to something like "sha512:a-pass-phrase" and it will be passed to the CRYPT validator for the "password" field of the `auth_user` table. It will be the algorithm and a-pass-phrase used to hash the passwords.

To disabled an action append its name to this list:

```
1 auth.settings.actions_disabled = []
```

For example:

```
1 auth.settings.actions_disabled.append('register')
```

will disable registration.

If you want to receive an email to verify registration set this to True:

```
1 auth.settings.registration_requires_verification = False
```

If new registrants should be allow to login until approved set this to True:

```
1 auth.settings.registration_requires_approval = False
```

Approval consists of setting `registration_key=="` via appadmin or programmatically.

If you do not want a new group for each new user set the following to `False`:

```
1 auth.settings.create_user_groups = True
```

The following settings determine alternative login methods and login forms, as discussed previously:

```
1 auth.settings.login_methods = [auth]
2 auth.settings.login_form = auth
```

Do you want to allow basic login?

```
1 auth.settings.allows_basic_login = False
```

The following is the URL of the `login` action:

```
1 auth.settings.login_url = URL('user', args='login')
```

If the user tried to access the register page but is already logged in, he will be redirected to this URL:

```
1 auth.settings.logged_url = URL('user', args='profile')
```

This must point to the URL of the download action, in case the profile contains images:

```
1 auth.settings.download_url = URL('download')
```

These must point to the URL you want to redirect your users to after the various possible auth actions (in case there is no referrer):

```
1 auth.settings.login_next = URL('index')
2 auth.settings.logout_next = URL('index')
3 auth.settings.profile_next = URL('index')
4 auth.settings.register_next = URL('user', args='login')
5 auth.settings.retrieve_username_next = URL('index')
6 auth.settings.retrieve_password_next = URL('index')
7 auth.settings.change_password_next = URL('index')
```

```

8 auth.settings.request_reset_password_next = URL('user', args='login')
9 auth.settings.reset_password_next = URL('user', args='login')
10 auth.settings.verify_email_next = URL('user', args='login')
```

This is the URL you want to be redirect to on failed authorization:

```

1 auth.settings.on_failed_authorization = \
2     URL('user',args='on_failed_authorization')
```

These are lists of callbacks that should be executed after form validation for each of the corresponding action before any database IO:

```

1 auth.settings.login_onvalidation = []
2 auth.settings.register_onvalidation = []
3 auth.settings.profile_onvalidation = []
4 auth.settings.retrieve_password_onvalidation = []
5 auth.settings.reset_password_onvalidation = []
```

Each callback must be a function that takes the `form` object and it can modify the attributes of the form object before database IO is performed.

These are lists of callbacks that should be executed after the database IO is performed and before redirection:

```

1 auth.settings.login_onaccept = []
2 auth.settings.register_onaccept = []
3 auth.settings.profile_onaccept = []
4 auth.settings.verify_email_onaccept = []
```

Here is an example:

```

1 auth.settings.register_onaccept.append(lambda form:\
2     mail.send(to='you@example.com',subject='new user',
3               message="new user email is %s'%form.vars.email))
```

You can enable captcha for any of the auth actions:

```

1 auth.settings.captcha = None
2 auth.settings.login_captcha = None
3 auth.settings.register_captcha = None
4 auth.settings.retrieve_username_captcha = None
5 auth.settings.retrieve_password_captcha = None
```

If the `.captcha` settings points to a `gluon.tools.Recaptcha`, all forms for which the corresponding option (like `.login_captcha`) is set to `None` will have a captcha, while those for which the corresponding option is set to `False` will not. If, instead, `.captcha` is set to `None`, only those form who have a corresponding option set to a `gluon.tools.Recaptcha` object will have catcha and the others will not.

This is the login session expiration time:

```
1 auth.settings.expiration = 3600 # seconds
```

You can change the name of the password field (in Firebrid for example "password" is a keyword and cannot be used to name a field):

```
1 auth.settings.password_field = 'password'
```

Normally the login form tries to validate an email. This can be disabled by changing this setting:

```
1 auth.settings.login_email_validate = True
```

Do you want to show the record id in the edit profile page?

```
1 auth.settings.showid = False
```

For custom forms you may want to disable automatic error notification in forms:

```
1 auth.settings.hideerror = False
```

Also for custom forms you can change the style:

```
1 auth.settings.formstyle = 'table3cols'
```

(it can be "table2cols", "divs" and "ul")

By default the login form gives the option to extend the login via "remember me" option. The expiration time can be changed or the option disabled via these settings:

```
1 auth.settings.long_expiration = 3600*30 # one month
2 auth.settings.remember_me_form = True
```

You can also customize the following messages whose use and context should be obvious:

```
1 auth.messages.submit_button = 'Submit'
2 auth.messages.verify_password = 'Verify Password'
3 auth.messages.delete_label = 'Check to delete:'
4 auth.messages.function_disabled = 'Function disabled'
5 auth.messages.access_denied = 'Insufficient privileges'
6 auth.messages.registration_verifying = 'Registration needs verification'
7 auth.messages.registration_pending = 'Registration is pending approval'
8 auth.messages.login_disabled = 'Login disabled by administrator'
9 auth.messages.logged_in = 'Logged in'
10 auth.messages.email_sent = 'Email sent'
11 auth.messages.unable_to_send_email = 'Unable to send email'
12 auth.messages.email_verified = 'Email verified'
13 auth.messages.logged_out = 'Logged out'
14 auth.messages.registration_successful = 'Registration successful'
15 auth.messages.invalid_email = 'Invalid email'
16 auth.messages.unable_send_email = 'Unable to send email'
17 auth.messages.invalid_login = 'Invalid login'
18 auth.messages.invalid_user = 'Invalid user'
19 auth.messages.is_empty = "Cannot be empty"
20 auth.messages.mismatched_password = "Password fields don't match"
21 auth.messages.verify_email = ...
22 auth.messages.verify_email_subject = 'Password verify'
23 auth.messages.username_sent = 'Your username was emailed to you'
24 auth.messages.new_password_sent = 'A new password was emailed to you'
25 auth.messages.password_changed = 'Password changed'
26 auth.messages.retrieve_username = 'Your username is: %(username)s'
27 auth.messages.retrieve_username_subject = 'Username retrieve'
28 auth.messages.retrieve_password = 'Your password is: %(password)s'
29 auth.messages.retrieve_password_subject = 'Password retrieve'
30 auth.messages.reset_password = ...
31 auth.messages.reset_password_subject = 'Password reset'
32 auth.messages.invalid_reset_password = 'Invalid reset password'
33 auth.messages.profile_updated = 'Profile updated'
34 auth.messages.new_password = 'New password'
35 auth.messages.old_password = 'Old password'
36 auth.messages.group_description = \
    'Group uniquely assigned to user %(id)s'
37 auth.messages.register_log = 'User %(id)s Registered'
38 auth.messages.login_log = 'User %(id)s Logged-in'
39 auth.messages.logout_log = 'User %(id)s Logged-out'
40 auth.messages.profile_log = 'User %(id)s Profile updated'
41 auth.messages.verify_email_log = 'User %(id)s Verification email sent'
```

```

43 auth.messages.retrieve_username_log = 'User %(id)s Username retrieved'
44 auth.messages.retrieve_password_log = 'User %(id)s Password retrieved'
45 auth.messages.reset_password_log = 'User %(id)s Password reset'
46 auth.messages.change_password_log = 'User %(id)s Password changed'
47 auth.messages.add_group_log = 'Group %(group_id)s created'
48 auth.messages.del_group_log = 'Group %(group_id)s deleted'
49 auth.messages.add_membership_log = None
50 auth.messages.del_membership_log = None
51 auth.messages.has_membership_log = None
52 auth.messages.add_permission_log = None
53 auth.messages.del_permission_log = None
54 auth.messages.has_permission_log = None
55 auth.messages.label_first_name = 'First name'
56 auth.messages.label_last_name = 'Last name'
57 auth.messages.label_username = 'Username'
58 auth.messages.label_email = 'E-mail'
59 auth.messages.label_password = 'Password'
60 auth.messages.label_registration_key = 'Registration key'
61 auth.messages.label_reset_password_key = 'Reset Password key'
62 auth.messages.label_registration_id = 'Registration identifier'
63 auth.messages.label_role = 'Role'
64 auth.messages.label_description = 'Description'
65 auth.messages.label_user_id = 'User ID'
66 auth.messages.label_group_id = 'Group ID'
67 auth.messages.label_name = 'Name'
68 auth.messages.label_table_name = 'Table name'
69 auth.messages.label_record_id = 'Record ID'
70 auth.messages.label_time_stamp = 'Timestamp'
71 auth.messages.label_client_ip = 'Client IP'
72 auth.messages.label_origin = 'Origin'
73 auth.messages.label_remember_me = "Remember me (for 30 days)"

```

add|del|has membership logs allow the use of "%(user_id)s" and "%(group_id)s".
 add|del|has permission logs allow the use of "%(user_id)s", "%(name)s", "%(table_name)s", and "%(record_id)s".

8.4 Central Authentication Service

web2py provides support for authentication and authorization via appliances. Here we discuss the **cas** appliance for Central Authentication Service (CAS). Notice that at the time of writing CAS is distinct and does not work

with **Auth**. This will change in the future.

CAS is an open protocol for distributed authentication and it works in the following way: When a visitor arrives at our web site, our application check in the session if the user is already authenticated (for example via a `session.token` object). If the user is not authenticated, the controller redirects the visitor from the CAS appliance, where the user can log in, register, and manage his credentials (name, email and password). If the user registers, he receives an email, and registration is not complete until he responds to the email. Once the user has successfully registered and logged in, the CAS appliance redirects the user to our application together with a key. Our application uses the key to get the credentials of the user via an HTTP request in the background to the CAS server.

Using this mechanism, multiple applications can use a single sign-on via a single CAS server. The server providing authentication is called a service provider. Applications seeking to authenticate visitors are called service consumers.

CAS is similar to OpenID, with one main difference. In the case of OpenID, the visitor chooses the service provider. In the case of CAS, our application makes this choice, making CAS more secure.

You can run only the consumer, only the provider, or both (in a single or separate applications).

To run CAS as consumer you must download the file:

`1 https://www.web2py.com/cas/static/cas.py`

and store it as a model file called "cas.py". Then you must edit the controllers that need authentication (for example "default.py") and, at the top, add the following code:

`1 CAS.login_url='https://www.web2py.com/cas/cas/login'
2 CAS.check_url='https://www.web2py.com/cas/cas/check'
3 CAS.logout_url='https://www.web2py.com/cas/cas/logout'`

```

4 CAS.my_url='http://127.0.0.1:8000/myapp/default/login'
5
6 if not session.token and not request.function=='login':
7     redirect(URL('login'))
8 def login():
9     session.token=CAS.login(request)
10    id,email,name=session.token
11    return dict()
12 def logout():
13    session.token=None
14    CAS.logout()

```

You must edit the attributes of the CAS object above. By default, they point to the CAS provider that runs on "https://mdp.cti.depaul.edu". We provide this service mainly for testing purposes. The `CAS.my_url` has to be the full URL to the login action defined in your application and shown in the code. The CAS provider needs to redirect your browser to this action.

Our CAS provider returns a token containing a tuple (`id`, `email`, `name`), where `id` is the unique record id of the visitor (as assigned by the provider's database), `email` is the email address of the visitor (as declared by the visitor to the provider and verified by the provider), and `name` is the name of the visitor (it is chosen by the visitor and there is no guarantee this is a real name).

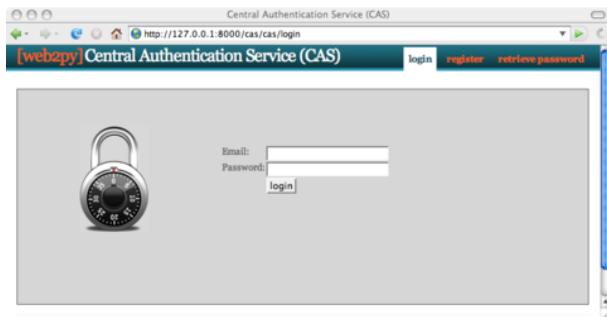
If you visit the local url:

```
1 /myapp/default/login
```

you get redirected to the CAS login page:

```
1 https://mdp.cti.depaul.edu/cas/cas/login
```

which looks like this:



You may also use third-party CAS services, but you may need to edit line 10 above, since different CAS providers may return tokens containing different values. Check the documentation of the CAS service you need to access for details. Most services only return (id, username).

After a successful login, you are redirected to the local login action. The view of the local login action is executed only after a successful CAS login.

You can download the CAS provider appliance from ref. (33) and run it yourself. If you choose to do so, you must also edit the first lines of the "email.py" model in the appliance, so that it points to your SMPT server.

You can also merge the files of the CAS provider appliance provider with those of your application (models under models, etc.) as long there is no filename conflict.

9

Services

The W3C defines a web service as "a software system designed to support interoperable machine-to-machine interaction over a network". This is a broad definition, and it encompass a large number of protocols designed not for machine-to-human communication, but for machine-to-machine communication such as XML, JSON, RSS, etc. web2py provides, out of the box, support for many protocols, including XML, JSON, RSS, CSV, XMLRPC, JSONRPC, AMFRPC, and SOAP. web2py can also be extended to support additional protocols.

Each of those protocols is supported in multiple ways, and we make a distinction between:

- Rendering the output of a function in a given format (for example XML, JSON, RSS, CSV)
- Remote Procedure Calls (for example XMLRPC, JSONRPC, AMFRPC)

9.1 Rendering a dictionary

9.1.1 HTML, XML, and JSON

Consider the following action:

```
1 def count():
2     session.counter = (session.counter or 0) + 1
3     return dict(counter=session.counter, now=request.now)
```

This action returns a counter that is increased by one when a visitor reloads the page, and the timestamp of the current page request.

Normally this page would be requested via:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/count
```

and rendered in HTML. Without writing one line of code, we can ask web2py to render this page using a different protocols by adding an extension to the URL:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/count.html
2 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/count.xml
3 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/count.json
```

The dictionary returned by the action will be rendered in HTML, XML and JSON, respectively.

Here is the XML output:

```
1 <document>
2   <counter>3</counter>
3   <now>2009-08-01 13:00:00</now>
4 </document>
```

Here is the JSON output:

```
1 { 'counter':3, 'now':'2009-08-01 13:00:00' }
```

Notice that date, time, and datetime objects are rendered as strings in ISO format. This is not part of the JSON standard, but rather a web2py convention.

9.1.2 Generic Views

When, for example, the ".xml" extension is called, web2py looks for a template file called "default/count.xml", and if it does not find it, looks for a template called "generic.xml". The files "generic.html", "generic.xml", "generic.json" are provided with the current scaffolding application. Other extensions can be easily defined by the user.

Nothing needs to be done to enable this in a web2py app. To use it in an older web2py app, you may need to copy the "generic.*" files from a later scaffolding app (after version 1.60).

Here is the code for "generic.html"

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2
3 {{=BEAUTIFY(response._vars)}}
4
5 <button onclick="document.location='{{=URL("admin", "default", "design", args=request.application)}}'">admin</button>
6 <button onclick="jQuery('#request').slideToggle()">request</button>
7 <div class="hidden" id="request"><h2>request</h2>{{=BEAUTIFY(request)}}</div>
8 <button onclick="jQuery('#session').slideToggle()">session</button>
9 <div class="hidden" id="session"><h2>session</h2>{{=BEAUTIFY(session)}}</div>
10 <button onclick="jQuery('#response').slideToggle()">response</button>
11 <div class="hidden" id="response"><h2>response</h2>{{=BEAUTIFY(response)}}</div>
12 <script>jQuery('.hidden').hide();</script>
```

Here is the code for "generic.xml"

```

1 {{{
2     try:
3         from gluon.serializers import xml
4         response.write(xml(response._vars), escape=False)
5         response.headers['Content-Type']='text/xml'
6     except:
7         raise HTTP(405,'no xml')
8 }}}
```

And here is the code for "generic.json"

```
1 {{
```

```

2 try:
3     from gluon.serializers import json
4     response.write(json(response._vars), escape=False)
5     response.headers['Content-Type'] = 'text/json'
6 except:
7     raise HTTP(405, 'no json')
8 }}
```

Any dictionary can be rendered in HTML, XML and JSON as long as it only contains python primitive types (int, float, string, list, tuple, dictionary). `response._vars` contains the dictionary returned by the action.

If the dictionary contains other user-defined or web2py-specific objects, they must be rendered by a custom view.

9.1.3 Rendering Rows

If you need to render a set of Rows as returned by a select in XML or JSON or another format, first transform the Rows object into a list of dictionaries using the `as_list()` method.

Consider for example the following mode:

```
1 db.define_table('person', Field('name'))
```

The following action can be rendered in HTML, but not in XML or JSON:

```

1 def everybody():
2     people = db().select(db.person.ALL)
3     return dict(people=people)
```

while the following action can rendered in XML and JSON:

```

1 def everybody():
2     people = db().select(db.person.ALL).as_list()
3     return dict(people=people)
```

9.1.4 Custom Formats

If, for example, you want to render an action as a Python pickle:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/count.pickle
```

you just need to create a new view file "default/count.pickle" that contains:

```
1 {{{
2     import cPickle
3     response.headers['Content-Type'] = 'application/python.pickle'
4     response.write(cPickle.dumps(response._vars),escape=False)
5 }}}
```

If you want to be able to render any action as a pickled file, you need only to save the above file with the name "generic.pickle".

Not all objects are pickleable, and not all pickled objects can be un-pickled. It is safe to stick to primitive Python objects and combinations of them. Objects that do not contain references to file streams or database connections are usually pickleable, but they can only be un-pickled in an environment where the classes of all pickled objects are already defined.

9.1.5 RSS

web2py includes a "generic.rss" view that can render the dictionary returned by the action as an RSS feed.

Because the RSS feeds have a fixed structure (title, link, description, items, etc.) then for this to work, the dictionary returned by the action must have the proper structure:

```
1 {'title'      : '',
2  'link'       : '',
3  'description': '',
4  'created_on' : '',
5  'entries'    : []}
```

and each entry in entries must have the same similar structure:

```

1 {'title'      : '',
2  'link'       : '',
3  'description': '',
4  'created_on' : ''}
```

For example the following action can be rendered as an RSS feed:

```

1 def feed():
2     return dict(title="my feed",
3                 link="http://feed.example.com",
4                 description="my first feed",
5                 entries=[
6                     dict(title="my feed",
7                         link="http://feed.example.com",
8                         description="my first feed")
9                 ])
```

by simply visiting the URL:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/feed.rss
```

Alternatively, assuming the following model:

```

1 db.define_table('rss_entry',
2                 Field('title'),
3                 Field('link'),
4                 Field('created_on','datetime'),
5                 Field('description'))
```

the following action can also be rendered as an RSS feed:

```

1 def feed():
2     return dict(title="my feed",
3                 link="http://feed.example.com",
4                 description="my first feed",
5                 entries=db().select(db.rss_entry.ALL).as_list())
```

The `as_list()` method of a Rows object converts the rows into a list of dictionaries.

If additional dictionary items are found with key names not explicitly listed here, they are ignored.

Here is the "generic.rss" view provided by web2py:

```

1 {{{
2     try:
3         from gluon.serializers import rss
4         response.write(rss(response._vars), escape=False)
5         response.headers['Content-Type'] = 'application/rss+xml'
6     except:
7         raise HTTP(405, 'no rss')
8 }}}

```

As one more example of an RSS application, we consider an RSS aggregator that collects data from the "slashdot" feed and returns a new web2py rss feed.

```

1 def aggregator():
2     import gluon.contrib.feedparser as feedparser
3     d = feedparser.parse(
4         "http://rss.slashdot.org/Slashdot/slashdot/to")
5     return dict(title=d.channel.title,
6                 link = d.channel.link,
7                 description = d.channel.description,
8                 created_on = request.now,
9                 entries = [
10                     dict(title = entry.title,
11                         link = entry.link,
12                         description = entry.description,
13                         created_on = request.now) for entry in d.entries])
14

```

It can be accessed at:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/aggregator.rss
```

9.1.6 CSV

The Comma Separated Values (CSV) format is a protocol to represent tabular data.

Consider the following model:

```

1 db.define_model('animal',
2     Field('species'),
3     Field('genus'),

```

```
4 Field('family'))
```

and the following action:

```
1 def animals():
2     animals = db().select(db.animal.ALL)
3     return dict(animals=animals)
```

web2py does not provide a "generic.csv"; you must define a custom view "default/animals.csv" that serializes the animals into CSV. Here is a possible implementation:

```
1 {{{
2 import cStringIO
3 stream=cStringIO.StringIO()
4 animals.export_to_csv_file(stream)
5 response.headers['Content-Type']='application/vnd.ms-excel'
6 response.write(stream.getvalue(), escape=False)
7 }}
```

Notice that one could also define a "generic.csv" file, but one would have to specify the name of the object to be serialized ("animals" in the example). This is why we do not provide a "generic.csv" file.

9.2 *Remote Procedure Calls*

web2py provides a mechanism to turn any function into a web service. The mechanism described here differs from the mechanism described before because:

- The function may take arguments
- The function may be defined in a model or a module instead of controller
- You may want to specify in detail which RPC method should be supported
- It enforces a more strict URL naming convention

- It is smarter than the previous methods because it works for a fixed set of protocols. For the same reason it is not as easily extensible.

To use this feature:

First, you must import and instantiate a service object.

```
1 from gluon.tools import Service
2 service = Service(globals())
```

This is already done in the "db.py" model file in the scaffolding application.

Second, you must expose the service handler in the controller:

```
1 def call():
2     session.forget()
3     return service()
```

*This is already done in the "default.py" controller of the scaffolding application.
Remove session.forget() if you plan to use session cookies with the services.*

Third, you must decorate those functions you want to expose as a service. Here is a list of currently supported decorators:

```
1 @service.run
2 @service.xml
3 @service.json
4 @service.rss
5 @service.csv
6 @service.xmlrpc
7 @service.jsonrpc
8 @service.amfrpc3('domain')
9 @service.soap('FunctionName', returns={'result':type}, args={'param1':type,})
```

As an example, consider the following decorated function:

```
1 @service.run
2 def concat(a,b):
3     return a+b
```

This function can be defined in a model or in the controller where the `call` action is defined. This function can now be called remotely in two ways:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/run/concat?a=hello&b=world
2 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/run/concat/hello/world
```

In both cases the http request returns:

```
1 helloworld
```

If the `@service.xml` decorator is used, the function can be called via:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/xml/concat?a=hello&b=world
2 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/xml/concat/hello/world
```

and the output is returned as XML:

```
1 <document>
2   <result>helloworld</result>
3 </document>
```

It can serialize the output of the function even if this is a DAL Rows object. In this case, in fact, it will call `as_list()` automatically.

If the `@service.json` decorator is used, the function can be called via:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/json/concat?a=hello&b=world
2 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/json/concat/hello/world
```

and the output returned as JSON.

If the `@service.csv` decorator is used, the service handler requires, as the return value, an iterable object of iterable objects, such as a list of lists. Here is an example:

```
1 @service.csv
2 def table1(a,b):
3   return [[a,b],[1,2]]
```

This service can be called by visiting one of the following URLs:

```

1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/csv/table1?a=hello&b=world
2 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/csv/table1/hello/world

```

and it returns:

```

1 hello,world
2 1,2

```

The `@service.rss` decorator expects a return value in the same format as the "generic.rss" view discussed in the previous section.

Multiple decorators are allowed for each function.

So far, everything discussed in this section is simply an alternative to the method described in the previous section. The real power of the service object comes with XMLRPC, JSONRPC and AMFRPC, as discussed below.

9.2.1 XMLRPC

Consider the following code, for example, in the "default.py" controller:

```

1 @service.xmlrpc
2 def add(a,b):
3     return a+b
4
5 @service.xmlrpc
6 def div(a,b):
7     return a/b

```

Now in a python shell you can do

```

1 >>> from xmlrpclib import ServerProxy
2 >>> server = ServerProxy(
3     'http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/xmlrpc')
4 >>> print server.add(3,4)
5
6 >>> print server.add('hello','world')
7 'helloworld'
8 >>> print server.div(12,4)

```

```

9 3
10 >>> print server.div(1,0)
11 ZeroDivisionError: integer division or modulo by zero

```

The Python `xmlrpclib` module provides a client for the XMLRPC protocol. `web2py` acts as the server.

The client connects to the server via `ServerProxy` and can remotely call decorated functions in the server. The data (a,b) is passed to the function(s), not via GET/POST variables, but properly encoded in the request body using the XMLRPC protocol, and thus it carries with itself type information (int or string or other). The same is true for the return value(s). Moreover, any exception raised on the server propagates back to the client.

There are XMLRPC libraries for many programming languages (including C, C++, Java, C#, Ruby, and Perl), and they can interoperate with each other. This is one the best methods to create applications that talk to each other independent of the programming language.

The XMLRPC client can also be implemented inside a `web2py` action, so that one action can talk to another `web2py` application (even within the same installation) using XMLRPC. Beware of session deadlocks in this case. If an action calls via XMLRPC a function in the same app, the caller must release the session lock before the call:

```

1 session.forget()
2 session._unlock(response)

```

9.2.2 JSONRPC and Pyjamas

JSONRPC is very similar to XMLRPC, but uses the JSON-based protocol instead of XML to encode the data. As an example of application here, we discuss its usage with Pyjamas. Pyjamas is a Python port of the Google Web Toolkit (originally written in Java). Pyjamas allows writing a client applica-

tion in Python. Pyjamas translates this code into JavaScript. web2py serves the JavaScript and communicates with it via AJAX requests originating from the client and triggered by user actions.

Here we describe how to make Pyjamas work with web2py. It does not require any additional libraries other than web2py and Pyjamas.

We are going to build a simple "todo" application with a Pyjamas client (all JavaScript) that talks to the server exclusively via JSONRPC.

First, create a new application called "todo".

Second, in "models/db.py", enter the following code:

```

1 db=SQLDB('sqlite://storage.sqlite')
2 db.define_table('todo', Field('task'))
3
4 from gluon.tools import Service      # import rpc services
5 service = Service(globals())

```

Third, in "controllers/default.py", enter the following code:

```

1 def index():
2     redirect(URL('todoApp'))
3
4     @service.jsonrpc
5     def getTasks():
6         todos = db(db.todo.id>0).select()
7         return [(todo.task,todo.id) for todo in todos]
8
9     @service.jsonrpc
10    def addTask(taskFromJson):
11        db.todo.insert(task= taskFromJson)
12        return getTasks()
13
14    @service.jsonrpc
15    def deleteTask (idFromJson):
16        del db.todo[idFromJson]
17        return getTasks()
18
19    def call():
20        session.forget()
21        return service()
22

```

```

23     def todoApp():
24         return dict()

```

The purpose of each function should be obvious.

Fourth, in "views/default/todoApp.html", enter the following code:

```

1 <html>
2   <head>
3     <meta name="pygwt:module"
4       content="{{=URL('static','output/todoapp')}}" />
5     <title>
6       simple todo application
7     </title>
8   </head>
9   <body bgcolor="white">
10    <h1>
11      simple todo application
12    </h1>
13    <i>
14      type a new task to insert in db,
15      click on existing task to delete it
16    </i>
17    <script language="javascript"
18      src="{{=URL('static','output/pygwt.js')}}">
19    </script>
20  </body>
21</html>

```

This view just executes the Pyjamas code in "static/output/todoapp". Code that we have not yet created.

Fifth, in "static/TodoApp.py" (notice it is TodoApp, not todoApp!), enter the following client code:

```

1 from pyjamas.ui.RootPanel import RootPanel
2 from pyjamas.ui.Label import Label
3 from pyjamas.ui.VerticalPanel import VerticalPanel
4 from pyjamas.ui.TextBox import TextBox
5 import pyjamas.ui.KeyboardListener
6 from pyjamas.ui.ListBox import ListBox
7 from pyjamas.ui.HTML import HTML
8 from pyjamas.JSONService import JSONProxy
9
10 class TodoApp:

```

```
11  def onModuleLoad(self):
12      self.remote = DataService()
13      panel = VerticalPanel()
14
15      self.todoTextBox = TextBox()
16      self.todoTextBox.addKeyboardListener(self)
17
18      self.todoList = ListBox()
19      self.todoList.setVisibleItemCount(7)
20      self.todoList.setWidth("200px")
21      self.todoList.addClickListener(self)
22      self.Status = Label("")
23
24      panel.add(Label("Add New Todo:"))
25      panel.add(self.todoTextBox)
26      panel.add(Label("Click to Remove:"))
27      panel.add(self.todoList)
28      panel.add(self.Status)
29      self.remote.getTasks(self)
30
31      RootPanel().add(panel)
32
33  def onKeyUp(self, sender, keyCode, modifiers):
34      pass
35
36  def onKeyDown(self, sender, keyCode, modifiers):
37      pass
38
39  def onKeyPress(self, sender, keyCode, modifiers):
40      """
41          This function handles the onKeyPress event, and will add the
42          item in the text box to the list when the user presses the
43          enter key. In the future, this method will also handle the
44          auto complete feature.
45      """
46      if keyCode == KeyboardListener.KEY_ENTER and \
47          sender == self.todoTextBox:
48          id = self.remote.addTask(sender.getText(),self)
49          sender.setText("")
50          if id<0:
51              RootPanel().add(HTML("Server Error or Invalid Response"))
52
53  def onClick(self, sender):
54      id = self.remote.deleteTask(
55          sender.getValue(sender.getSelectedIndex()),self)
56      if id<0:
57          RootPanel().add(
58              HTML("Server Error or Invalid Response"))
```

```

60     def onRemoteResponse(self, response, request_info):
61         self.todoList.clear()
62         for task in response:
63             self.todoList.addItem(task[0])
64             self.todoList.setValue(self.todoList.getItemCount()-1,
65                                   task[1])
66
67     def onRemoteError(self, code, message, request_info):
68         self.Status.setText("Server Error or Invalid Response: " \
69                             + "ERROR " + code + " - " + message)
70
71 class DataService(JSONProxy):
72     def __init__(self):
73         JSONProxy.__init__(self, "../../default/call/jsonrpc",
74                            ["getTasks", "addTask","deleteTask"])
75
76 if __name__ == '__main__':
77     app = TodoApp()
78     app.onModuleLoad()

```

Sixth, run Pyjamas before serving the application:

```

1 cd /path/to/todo/static/
2 python /python/pyjamas-0.5p1/bin/pyjsbuild TodoApp.py

```

This will translate the Python code into JavaScript so that it can be executed in the browser.

To access this application, visit the URL:

```

1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/todo/default/todoApp

```

This subsection was created by Chris Prinos with help from Luke Kenneth Casson Leighton (creators of Pyjamas), updated by Alexei Vinidiktov. It has been tested with Pyjamas 0.5p1. The example was inspired by this Django page in ref. (74).

9.2.3 AMFRPC

AMFRPC is the Remote Procedure Call protocol used by Flash clients to communicate with a server. web2py supports AMFRPC, but it requires that you run web2py from source and that you preinstall the PyAMF library. This can be installed from the Linux or Windows shell by typing:

```
1 easy_install pyamf
```

(please consult the PyAMF documentation for more details).

In this subsection we assume that you are already familiar with ActionScript programming.

We will create a simple service that takes two numerical values, adds them together, and returns the sum. We will call our web2py application "pyamf_test", and we will call the service `addNumbers`.

First, using Adobe Flash (any version starting from MX 2004), create the Flash client application by starting with a new Flash FLA file. In the first frame of the file, add these lines:

```
1 import mx.remoting.Service;
2 import mx.rpc.RelayResponder;
3 import mx.rpc.FaultEvent;
4 import mx.rpc.ResultEvent;
5 import mx.remoting.PendingCall;
6
7 var val1 = 23;
8 var val2 = 86;
9
10 service = new Service(
11     "http://127.0.0.1:8000/pyamf_test/default/call/amfrpc3",
12     null, "mydomain", null, null);
13
14 var pc:PendingCall = service.addNumbers(val1, val2);
15 pc.responder = new RelayResponder(this, "onResult", "onFault");
16
17 function onResult(re:ResultEvent):Void {
18     trace("Result : " + re.result);
19     txt_result.text = re.result;
```

```

20 }
21
22 function onFault(fault:FaultEvent):Void {
23     trace("Fault: " + fault.fault.faultstring);
24 }
25
26 stop();

```

This code allows the Flash client to connect to a service that corresponds to a function called "addNumbers" in the file "/pyamf_test/default/gateway". You must also import ActionScript version 2 MX remoting classes to enable Remoting in Flash. Add the path to these classes to the classpath settings in the Adobe Flash IDE, or just place the "mx" folder next to the newly created file.

Notice the arguments of the Service constructor. The first argument is the URL corresponding to the service that we want will create. The third argument is the domain of the service. We choose to call this domain "mydomain".

Second, create a dynamic text field called "txt_result" and place it on the stage.

Third, you need to set up a web2py gateway that can communicate with the Flash client defined above.

Proceed by creating a new web2py app called pyamf_test that will host the new service and the AMF gateway for the flash client. Edit the "default.py" controller and make sure it contains

```

1 @service.amfrpc3('mydomain')
2 def addNumbers(val1, val2):
3     return val1 + val2
4
5 def call(): return service()

```

Fourth, compile and export/publish the SWF flash client as `pyamf_test.swf`, place the "pyamf_test.amf", "pyamf_test.html", "AC_RunActiveContent.js", and "crossdomain.xml" files in the "static" folder of the newly created appliance

that is hosting the gateway, "pyamf_test".

You can now test the client by visiting:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/pyamf_test/static/pyamf_test.html
```

The gateway is called in the background when the client connects to addNumbers.

If you are suing AMFo instead of AMF3 you can also use the decorator:

```
1 @service.amfrpc
```

instead of:

```
1 @service.amfrpc3('mydomain')
```

In this case you also need to change the service URL to:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/pyamf_test/default/call/amfrpc
```

9.2.4 SOAP

web2py includes a SOAP client and server created by Mariano Reingart. It can be used very much like XML-RPC:

Consider the following code, for example, in the "default.py" controller:

```
1 @service.soap('MyAdd', returns={'result':int}, args={'a':int, 'b':int,})
2 def add(a,b):
3     return a+b
```

Now in a python shell you can do:

```
1 >>> from gluon.contrib.pysimplesoap.client import SoapClient
2 >>> client = SoapClient(wsdl="http://localhost:8000/app/default/call/soap?WSDL")
3 >>> print client.MyAdd(a=1,b=2)
4 {'result': 3}
```

To get proper encoding when returning a text values, specify string as u'proper utf8 text'.

You can obtain the WSDL for the service at

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/soap?WSDL
```

And you can obtain documentation for any of the exposed methods:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/app/default/call/soap
```

9.3 Low Level API and Other Recipes

9.3.1 simplejson

web2py includes gluon.contrib.simplejson, developed by Bob Ippolito. This module provides the most standard Python-JSON encoder-decoder.

SimpleJSON consists of two functions:

- `gluon.contrib.simplejson.dumps(a)` encodes a Python object `a` into JSON.
- `gluon.contrib.simplejson.loads(b)` decodes a JavaScript object `b` into a Python object.

Object types that can be serialized include primitive types, lists, and dictionaries. Compound objects can be serialized with the exception of user defined classes.

Here is a sample action (for example in controller "default.py") that serializes the Python list containing weekdays using this low level API:

```
1 def weekdays():
2     names=['Sunday','Monday','Tuesday','Wednesday',
3           'Thursday','Friday','Saturday']
```

```

4 import gluon.contrib.simplejson
5 return gluon.contrib.simplejson.dumps(names)

```

Below is a sample HTML page that sends an Ajax request to the above action, receives the JSON message and stores the list in a corresponding JavaScript variable:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <script>
3 $.getJSON('/application/default/weekdays',
4         function(data){ alert(data); });
5 </script>

```

The code uses the jQuery function `$.getJSON`, which performs the Ajax call and, on response, stores the weekdays names in a local JavaScript variable `data` and passes the variable to the callback function. In the example the callback function simply alerts the visitor that the data has been received.

9.3.2 PyRTF

Another common need of web sites is that of generating Word-readable text documents. The simplest way to do so is using the Rich Text Format (RTF) document format. This format was invented by Microsoft and it has since become a standard. `web2py` includes `gluon.contrib.pyrtf`, developed by Simon Cusack and revised by Grant Edwards. This module allows you to generate RTF documents programmatically including colored formatted text and pictures.

In the following example we instantiate two basic RTF classes, `Document` and `Section`, append the latter to the former and insert some dummy text in the latter:

```

1 def makertf():
2     import gluon.contrib.pyrtf as q
3     doc=q.Document()
4     section=q.Section()
5     doc.Sections.append(section)

```

```

6     section.append('Section Title')
7     section.append('web2py is great. '*100)
8     response.headers['Content-Type']='text/rtf'
9     return q.dumps(doc)

```

In the end the Document is serialized by `q.dumps(doc)`. Notice that before returning an RTF document it is necessary to specify the content-type in the header else the browser does not know how to handle the file.

Depending on the configuration, the browser may ask you whether to save this file or open it using a text editor.

9.3.3 ReportLab and PDF

web2py can also generate PDF documents, with an additional library called "ReportLab" (73).

If you are running web2py from source, it is sufficient to have ReportLab installed. If you are running the Windows binary distribution, you need to unzip ReportLab in the "web2py/" folder. If you are running the Mac binary distribution, you need to unzip ReportLab in the folder:

```
1 web2py/app/Contents/Resources/
```

From now on we assume ReportLab is installed and that web2py can find it. We will create a simple action called "get_me_a_pdf" that generates a PDF document.

```

1 from reportlab.platypus import *
2 from reportlab.lib.styles import getSampleStyleSheet
3 from reportlab.rl_config import defaultPageSize
4 from reportlab.lib.units import inch, mm
5 from reportlab.lib.enums import TA_LEFT, TA_RIGHT, TA_CENTER, TA_JUSTIFY
6 from reportlab.lib import colors
7 from uuid import uuid4
8 from cgi import escape
9 import os
10

```

```

11 def get_me_a_pdf():
12     title = "This The Doc Title"
13     heading = "First Paragraph"
14     text = 'bla ' * 10000
15
16     styles = getSampleStyleSheet()
17     tmpfilename=os.path.join(request.folder,'private',str(uuid4()))
18     doc = SimpleDocTemplate(tmpfilename)
19     story = []
20     story.append(Paragraph(escape(title),styles["Title"]))
21     story.append(Paragraph(escape(heading),styles["Heading2"]))
22     story.append(Paragraph(escape(text),styles["Normal"]))
23     story.append(Spacer(1,2*inch))
24     doc.build(story)
25     data = open(tmpfilename,"rb").read()
26     os.unlink(tmpfilename)
27     response.headers[ 'Content-Type' ]='application/pdf'
28     return data

```

Notice how we generate the PDF into a unique temporary file, `tmpfilename`, we read the generated PDF from the file, then we deleted the file.

For more information about the ReportLab API, refer to the ReportLab documentation. We strongly recommend using the Platypus API of ReportLab, such as `Paragraph`, `Spacer`, etc.

9.4 Services and Authentication

In the previous chapter we have discussed the use of the following decorators:

```

1 @auth.requires_login()
2 @auth.requires_membership(...)
3 @auth.requires_permission(...)

```

For normal actions (not decorated as services), these decorators can be used even if the output is rendered in a format other than HTML.

For functions defined as services and decorated using the `@service...` decorators, the `@auth...` decorators should not be used. The two types of decorators cannot be mixed. If authentication is to be performed, it is the `call` actions that needs to be decorated:

```
1 @auth.requires_login()
2 def call(): return service()
```

Notice that it also possible to instantiate multiple service objects, register the same different functions with them, and expose some of them with authentication and some not:

```
1 public_services=Service(globals())
2 private_services=Service(globals())
3
4 @public_service.jsonrpc
5 @private_service.jsonrpc
6 def f(): return 'public'
7
8 @private_service.jsonrpc
9 def g(): return 'private'
10
11 def public_call(): return public_service()
12
13 @auth.requires_login()
14 def private_call(): return private_service()
```

This assumes that the caller is passing credentials in the HTTP header (a valid session cookie or using basic authentication, as discussed in the previous section). The client must support it; not all clients do.

10

Ajax Recipes

While web2py is mainly for server-side development, the **welcome** scaffolding app comes with the base jQuery library (32), jQuery calendars (date picker, datetime picker and clock), the "superfish.js" menu, and some additional JavaScript functions based on jQuery.

Nothing in web2py prevents you from using other Ajax (75) libraries such as Prototype, ExtJS, or YUI, but we decided to package jQuery because we find it to be easier to use and more powerful than other equivalent libraries. We also find that it captures the web2py spirit of being functional and concise.

10.1 web2py_ajax.html

The scaffolding web2py application "welcome" includes a file called

```
views/web2py_ajax.html
```

This file is included in the HEAD of the default "layout.html" and it provides the following services:

- Includes static/jquery.js.
- Includes static/calendar.js and static/calendar.css, if they exist.
- Defines an ajax function (based on jQuery \$.ajax).
- Makes any DIV of class "error" or any tag object of class "flash" slide down.
- Prevents typing invalid integers in INPUT fields of class "integer".
- Prevents typing invalid floats in INPUT fields of class "double".
- Connects INPUT fields of type "date" with a popup date picker.
- Connects INPUT fields of type "datetime" with a popup datetime picker.
- Connects INPUT fields of type "time" with a popup time picker.
- Defines web2py_ajax_component, a very important tool that will be described in Chapter 13.

It also includes `popup`, `collapse`, and `fade` functions for backward compatibility.

Here is an example of how the other effects play well together.

Consider a **test** app with the following model:

```

1 db = DAL("sqlite://db.db")
2 db.define_table('child',
3     Field('name'),
4     Field('weight', 'double'),
5     Field('birth_date', 'date'),
6     Field('time_of_birth', 'time'))
7
8 db.child.name.requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()
9 db.child.weight.requires=IS_FLOAT_IN_RANGE(0,100)
10 db.child.birth_date.requires=IS_DATE()
11 db.child.time_of_birth.requires=IS_TIME()
```

with this "default.py" controller:

```

1 def index():
2     form = SQLFORM(db.child)
3     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
4         response.flash = 'record inserted'
5     return dict(form=form)
```

and the following "default/index.html" view:

```
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 {{=form}}
```

The "index" action generates the following form:

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Weight:	<input type="text"/>
Birth Date:	<input type="text"/>
Time Of Birth:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

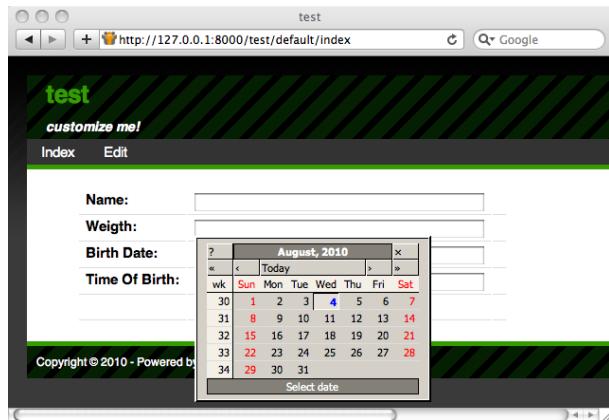
If an invalid form is submitted, the server returns the page with a modified form containing error messages. The error messages are DIVs of class "error", and because of the above web2py_ajax code, the errors appears with a slide-down effect:

Name:	<input type="text"/>
	<div style="background-color: red; color: white; padding: 2px;">enter a value</div>
Weight:	<input type="text"/>
	<div style="background-color: red; color: white; padding: 2px;">enter a number between 0.0 and 100.0</div>
Birth Date:	<input type="text"/>
	<div style="background-color: red; color: white; padding: 2px;">enter date and time as 1963-08-28 14:30:59</div>
Time Of Birth:	<input type="text"/>
	<div style="background-color: red; color: white; padding: 2px;">enter time as hh:mm:ss (seconds, am, pm optional)</div>
<input type="button" value="Submit"/>	

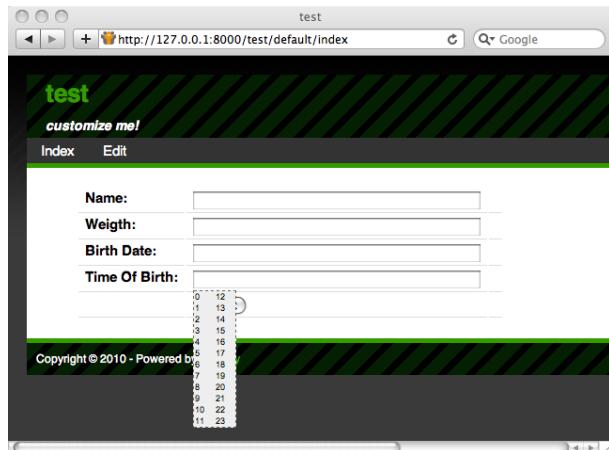
The color of the errors is given in the CSS code in "layout.html".

The web2py_ajax code prevents you from typing an invalid value in the input field. This is done before and in addition to, not as a substitute for, the server-side validation.

The web2py_ajax code displays a date picker when you enter an INPUT field of class "date", and it displays a datetime picker when you enter an INPUT field of class "datetime". Here is an example:

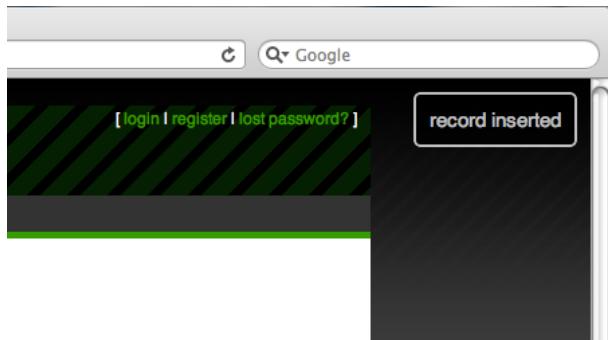


The web2py_ajax code also displays the following time picker when you try to edit an INPUT field of class "time":



Upon submission, the controller action sets the response flash to the message "record inserted". The default layout renders this message in a DIV with

`id="flash"`. The `web2py_ajax` code is responsible for making this DIV appear and disappear when you click on it:



These and other effects are accessible programmatically in the views and via helpers in controllers.

10.2 jQuery Effects

The basic effects described here do not require any additional files; everything you need is already included in `web2py_ajax.html`.

HTML/XHTML objects can be identified by their type (for example a DIV), their classes, or their id. For example:

```
1 <div class="one" id="a">Hello</div>
2 <div class="two" id="b">World</div>
```

They belong to class "one" and "two" respectively. They have ids equal to "a" and "b" respectively.

In jQuery you can refer to the former with the following a CSS-like equivalent notations

```
1 jQuery('.one') // address object by class "one"
```

```

2 jQuery('#a')      // address object by id "a"
3 jQuery('DIV.one') // address by object of type "DIV" with class "one"
4 jQuery('DIV #a')  // address by object of type "DIV" with id "a"

```

and to the latter with

```

1 jQuery('.two')
2 jQuery('#b')
3 jQuery('DIV.two')
4 jQuery('DIV #b')

```

or you can refer to both with

```
1 jQuery('DIV')
```

Tag objects are associated to events, such as "onclick". jQuery allows linking these events to effects, for example "slideToggle":

```

1 <div class="one" id="a" onclick="jQuery('.two').slideToggle()">Hello</div>
2 <div class="two" id="b">World</div>

```

Now if you click on "Hello", "World" disappears. If you click again, "World" reappears. You can make a tag hidden by default by giving it a hidden class:

```

1 <div class="one" id="a" onclick="jQuery('.two').slideToggle()">Hello</div>
2 <div class="two hidden" id="b">World</div>

```

You can also link actions to events outside the tag itself. The previous code can be rewritten as follows:

```

1 <div class="one" id="a">Hello</div>
2 <div class="two" id="b">World</div>
3 <script>
4   jQuery('.one').click(function(){jQuery('.two').slideToggle()});
5 </script>

```

Effects return the calling object, so they can be chained.

When the `click` sets the callback function to be called on click. Similarly for `change`, `keyup`, `keydown`, `mouseover`, etc.

A common situation is the need to execute some JavaScript code only after the entire document has been loaded. This is usually done by the `onload` attribute of BODY but jQuery provides an alternative way that does not require editing the layout:

```
1 <div class="one" id="a">Hello</div>
2 <div class="two" id="b">World</div>
3 <script>
4   jQuery(document).ready(function(){
5     jQuery('.one').click(function(){jQuery('.two').slideToggle()});
6   });
7 </script>
```

The body of the unnamed function is executed only when the document is ready, after it has been fully loaded.

Here is a list of useful event names:

Form Events

- `onchange`: Script to be run when the element changes
- `onsubmit`: Script to be run when the form is submitted
- `onreset`: Script to be run when the form is reset
- `onselect`: Script to be run when the element is selected
- `onblur`: Script to be run when the element loses focus
- `onfocus`: Script to be run when the element gets focus

Keyboard Events

- `onkeydown`: Script to be run when key is pressed
- `onkeypress`: Script to be run when key is pressed and released
- `onkeyup`: Script to be run when key is released

Mouse Events

- onclick: Script to be run on a mouse click
- ondblclick: Script to be run on a mouse double-click
- onmousedown: Script to be run when mouse button is pressed
- onmousemove: Script to be run when mouse pointer moves
- onmouseout: Script to be run when mouse pointer moves out of an element
- onmouseover: Script to be run when mouse pointer moves over an element
- onmouseup: Script to be run when mouse button is released

Here is a list of useful effects defined by jQuery:

Effects

- `jQuery(...).attr(name)`: Returns the name of the attribute value
- `jQuery(...).attr(name, value)`: Sets the attribute name to value
- `jQuery(...).show()`: Makes the object visible
- `jQuery(...).hide()`: Makes the object hidden
- `jQuery(...).slideToggle(speed, callback)`: Makes the object slide up or down
- `jQuery(...).slideUp(speed, callback)`: Makes the object slide up
- `jQuery(...).slideDown(speed, callback)`: Makes the object slide down
- `jQuery(...).fadeIn(speed, callback)`: Makes the object fade in
- `jQuery(...).fadeOut(speed, callback)`: Makes the object fade out

The speed argument is usually "slow", "fast" or omitted (the default). The callback is an optional function that is called when the effect is completed. jQuery effects can also easily be embedded in helpers, for example, in a view:

```
1 {{=DIV('click me!', _onclick="jQuery(this).fadeOut()")}}
```

jQuery is a very compact and concise Ajax library; therefore web2py does not need an additional abstraction layer on top of jQuery (except for the

ajax function discussed below). The jQuery APIs are accessible and readily available in their native form when needed.

Consult the documentation for more information about these effects and other jQuery APIs.

The jQuery library can also be extended using plugins and User Interface Widgets. This topic is not covered here; see ref. (77) for details.

10.2.1 Conditional Fields in Forms

A typical application of jQuery effects is a form that changes its appearance based on the value of its fields.

This is easy in web2py because the SQLFORM helper generates forms that are "CSS friendly". The form contains a table with rows. Each row contains a label, an input field, and an optional third column. The items have ids derived strictly from the name of the table and names of the fields.

The convention is that every INPUT field has an id tablename_fieldname and is contained in a row with id tablename_fieldname_row.

As an example, create an input form that asks for a taxpayer's name and for the name of the taxpayer's spouse, but only if he/she is married.

Create a test application with the following model:

```

1 db = DAL('sqlite://db.db')
2 db.define_table('taxpayer',
3     Field('name'),
4     Field('married', 'boolean'),
5     Field('spouse_name'))
```

the following "default.py" controller:

```

1 def index():
```

```

2     form = SQLFORM(db.taxpayer)
3     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
4         response.flash = 'record inserted'
5     return dict(form=form)

```

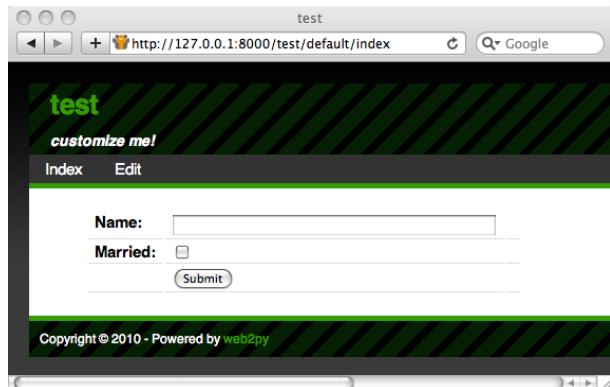
and the following "default/index.html" view:

```

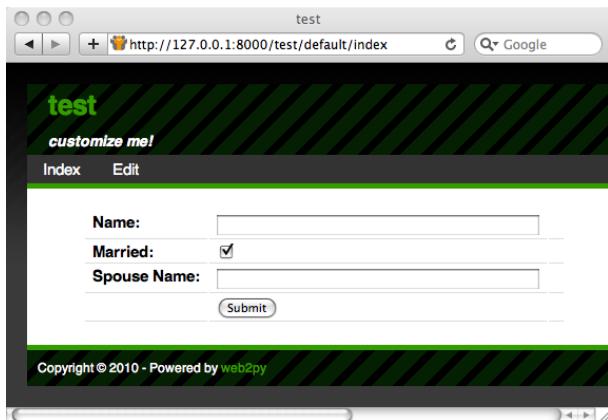
1  {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2  {{=form}}
3  <script>
4  jQuery(document).ready(function(){
5      jQuery('#taxpayer_spouse_name_row').hide();
6      jQuery('#taxpayer_married').change(function(){
7          if(jQuery('#taxpayer_married').attr('checked')){
8              jQuery('#taxpayer_spouse_name_row').show();
9          } else jQuery('#taxpayer_spouse_name_row').hide();});
10 });
11 </script>

```

The script in the view has the effect of hiding the row containing the spouse's name:



When the taxpayer checks the "married" checkbox, the spouse's name field reappears:



Here "taxpayer_married" is the checkbox associated to the "boolean" field "married" of table "taxpayer". "taxpayer_spouse_name_row" is the row containing the input field for "spouse_name" of table "taxpayer".

10.2.2 Confirmation on Delete

Another useful application is requiring confirmation when checking a "delete" checkbox such as the delete checkbox that appears in edit forms.

Consider the above example and add the following controller action:

```

1 def edit():
2     row = db.taxpayer[request.args(0)]
3     form = SQLFORM(db.taxpayer, row, deletable=True)
4     if form.accepts(request.vars, session):
5         response.flash = 'record updated'
6     return dict(form=form)

```

and the corresponding view "default/edit.html"

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 {{=form}}

```

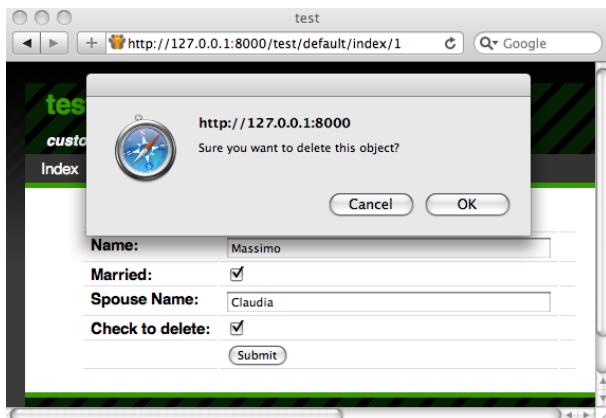
The `deletable=True` argument in the `SQLFORM` constructor instructs web2py

to display a "delete" checkbox in the edit form. It is `False` by default. web2py's "web2py_ajax.html" includes the following code:

```
1  jQuery(document).ready(function(){
2      jQuery('input.delete').attr('onclick',
3          'if(this.checked) if(!confirm(
4              "{{=T("Sure you want to delete this object?")}}"))
5              this.checked=false;');
6  });

```

By convention this checkbox has a class equal to "delete". The jQuery code above connects the onclick event of this checkbox with a confirmation dialog (standard in JavaScript) and unchecks the checkbox if the taxpayer does not confirm:



10.3 The ajax Function

In `web2py_ajax.html`, web2py defines a function called `ajax` which is based on, but should not be confused with, the jQuery function `$.ajax`. The latter is much more powerful than the former, and for its usage, we refer you to ref. (32) and ref. (76). However, the former function is sufficient for many complex tasks, and is easier to use.

The `ajax` function is a JavaScript function that has the following syntax:

```
1 ajax(url, [id1, id2, ...], target)
```

It asynchronously calls the `url` (first argument), passes the values of the fields with the `id` equal to one of the ids in the list (second argument), then stores the response in the `innerHTML` of the tag with the `id` equal to `target` (the third argument).

Here is an example of a `default` controller:

```
1 def one():
2     return dict()
3
4 def echo():
5     return request.vars.name
```

and the associated "default/one.html" view:

```
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <form>
3     <input id="name" onkeyup="ajax('echo', ['name'], 'target')" />
4 </form>
5 <div id="target"></div>
```

When you type something in the INPUT field, as soon as you release a key (onkeyup), the `ajax` function is called, and the value of the `id="name"` field is passed to the action "echo", which sends the text back to the view. The `ajax` function receives the response and displays the echo response in the "target" DIV.

10.3.1 Eval target

The third argument of the `ajax` function can be the string "`:eval`". This means that the string returned by server will not be embedded in the document but it will be evaluated instead.

Here is an example of a `default` controller:

```

1 def one():
2     return dict()
3
4 def echo():
5     return "jQuery('#target').html(%s);" % repr(request.vars.name)

```

and the associated "default/one.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <form>
3     <input id="name" onkeyup="ajax('echo', ['name'], ':eval')" />
4 </form>
5 <div id="target"></div>

```

This allows for more articulated responses than simple strings.

10.3.2 Auto-completion

Web2py contains a built-in autocomplete widget, described in the chapter about Forms. Here we will build a simpler one from scratch.

Another application of the above ajax function is auto-completion. Here we wish to create an input field that expects a month name and, when the visitor types an incomplete name, performs auto-completion via an Ajax request. In response, an auto-completion drop-box appears below the input field.

This can be achieved via the following default controller:

```

1 def month_input():
2     return dict()
3
4 def month_selector():
5     if not request.vars.month: return ''
6     months = ['January', 'February', 'March', 'April', 'May',
7                'June', 'July', 'August', 'September', 'October',
8                'November', 'December']
9     month_start = request.vars.month.capitalize()
10    selected = [m for m in months if m.startswith(month_start)]
11    return DIV(*[DIV(k,
12                  _onclick="jQuery('#month').val('%s')" % k,

```

```

13     _onmouseover="this.style.backgroundColor='yellow'",
14     _onmouseout="this.style.backgroundColor='white'"
15 ) for k in selected])

```

and the corresponding "default/month_input.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <style>
3 #suggestions { position: relative; }
4 .suggestions { background: white; border: solid 1px #55A6C8; }
5 .suggestions DIV { padding: 2px 4px 2px 4px; }
6 </style>
7
8 <form>
9   <input type="text" id="month" name="month" style="width: 250px" /><br />
10  <div style="position: absolute;" id="suggestions"
11    class="suggestions"></div>
12 </form>
13 <script>
14 jQuery("#month").keyup(function(){
15   ajax('month_selector', ['month'], 'suggestions'));
16 </script>

```

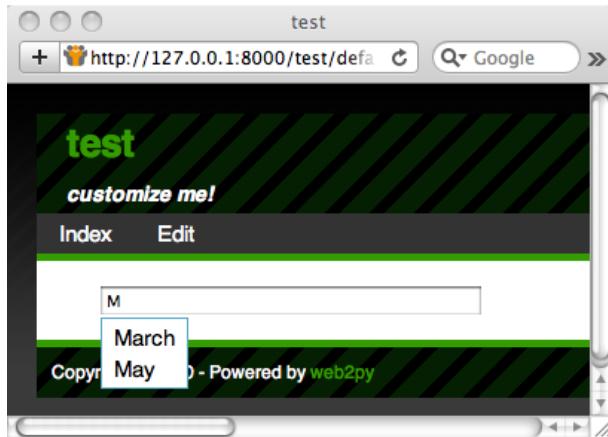
The jQuery script in the view triggers the Ajax request each time the visitor types something in the "month" input field. The value of the input field is submitted with the Ajax request to the "month_selector" action. This action finds a list of month names that start with the submitted text (selected), builds a list of DIVs (each one containing a suggested month name), and returns a string with the serialized DIVs. The view displays the response HTML in the "suggestions" DIV. The "month_selector" action generates both the suggestions and the JavaScript code embedded in the DIVs that must be executed when the visitor clicks on each suggestion. For example when the visitor types "Ma" the callback action returns:

```

1 <div onclick="jQuery('#month').val('February')"
2   onmouseout="this.style.backgroundColor='white'"
3   onmouseover="this.style.backgroundColor='yellow'">February</div>

```

Here is the final effect:



If the months are stored in a database table such as:

```
1 db.define_table('month', Field('name'))
```

then simply replace the `month_selector` action with:

```
1 def month_input():
2     return dict()
3
4 def month_selector():
5     if not request.vars.month:
6         return ""
7     pattern = request.vars.month.capitalize() + '%'
8     selected = [row.name for row in db(db.month.name.like(pattern)).select()]
9     return ".join([DIV(k,
10                     _onclick="jQuery('#month').val('%s')" % k,
11                     _onmouseover="this.style.backgroundColor='yellow'",
12                     _onmouseout="this.style.backgroundColor='white'"
13                     ).xml() for k in selected])"
```

jQuery provides an optional Auto-complete Plugin with additional functionalities, but that is not discussed here.

10.3.3 Ajax Form Submission

Here we consider a page that allows the visitor to submit messages using Ajax without reloading the entire page. Web2py provides a better mechanism for doing it than described here using the LOAD helper and it will be described in Chapter 13, yet here we want to show you how to do it simply using jQuery.

It contains a form "myform" and a "target" DIV. When the form is submitted, the server may accept it (and perform a database insert) or reject it (because it did not pass validation). The corresponding notification is returned with the Ajax response and displayed in the "target" DIV.

Build a test application with the following model:

```
1 db = DAL('sqlite://db.db')
2 db.define_table('post', Field('your_message', 'text'))
3 db.post.your_message.requires = IS_NOT_EMPTY()
```

Notice that each post has a single field "your_message" that is required to be not-empty.

Edit the default.py controller and write two actions:

```
1 def index():
2     return dict()
3
4 def new_post():
5     form = SQLFORM(db.post)
6     if form.accepts(request.vars, formname=None):
7         return DIV("Message posted")
8     elif form.errors:
9         return TABLE(*[TR(k, v) for k, v in form.errors.items()])
```

The first action does nothing other than return a view.

The second action is the Ajax callback. It expects the form variables in request.vars, processes them and returns DIV("Message posted") upon success or a TABLE of error messages upon failure.

Now edit the "default/index.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2
3 <div id="target"></div>
4
5 <form id="myform">
6   <input name="your_message" id="your_message" />
7   <input type="submit" />
8 </form>
9
10 <script>
11   jQuery('#myform').submit(function() {
12     ajax('{{=URL('new_post')}}',
13           ['your_message'], 'target');
14     return false;
15   });
16 </script>
```

Notice how in this example the form is created manually using HTML, but it is processed by the SQLFORM in a different action than the one that displays the form. The SQLFORM object is never serialized in HTML. SQLFORM.accepts in this case does not take a session and sets formname=None, because we chose not to set the form name and a form key in the manual HTML form.

The script at the bottom of the view connects the "myform" submit button to an inline function which submits the INPUT with id="your_message" using the web2py ajax function, and displays the answer inside the DIV with id="target".

10.3.4 Voting and Rating

Another Ajax application is voting or rating items in a page. Here we consider an application that allows visitors to vote on posted images. The application consists of a single page that displays the images sorted according to their vote. We will allow visitors to vote multiple times, although it is easy to change this behavior if visitors are authenticated, by keeping track of the individual votes in the database and associating them with the

`request.env.remote_addr` of the voter.

Here is a sample model:

```

1 db = DAL('sqlite:///images.db')
2 db.define_table('item',
3     Field('image', 'upload'),
4     Field('votes', 'integer', default=0))

```

Here is the default controller:

```

1 def list_items():
2     items = db().select(db.item.ALL, orderby=db.item.votes)
3     return dict(items=items)
4
5 def download():
6     return response.download(request, db)
7
8 def vote():
9     item = db.item[request.vars.id]
10    new_votes = item.votes + 1
11    item.update_record(votes=new_votes)
12    return str(new_votes)

```

The download action is necessary to allow the list_items view to download images stored in the "uploads" folder. The votes action is used for the Ajax callback.

Here is the "default/list_items.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2
3 <form><input type="hidden" id="id" value="" /></form>
4 {{for item in items:}}
5 <p>
6 
8 <br />
9 Votes=<span id="item{{=item.id}}">{{=item.votes}}</span>
10 [<span onclick="jQuery('#id').val('{{=item.id}}');"
11      ajax('vote', ['id'], 'item{{=item.id}}');>vote up</span>]
12 </p>
13 {{pass}}

```

When the visitor clicks on "[vote up]" the JavaScript code stores the item.id in the hidden "id" INPUT field and submits this value to the server via an Ajax request. The server increases the votes counter for the corresponding record and returns the new vote count as a string. This value is then inserted in the target `item{{=item.id}}` SPAN.

*Ajax callbacks can be used to perform computations in the background, but we recommend using **cron** or a background process instead (discussed in chapter 4), since the web server enforces a timeout on threads. If the computation takes too long, the web server kills it. Refer to your web server parameters to set the timeout value.*

11

Deployment Recipes

There are multiple ways to deploy web2py in a production environment; the details depend on the configuration and the services provided by the host.

In this chapter we consider the following issues:

- Production deployment (Apache, Lighttpd, Cherokee)
- Security
- Scalability
- Deployment on the Google App Engine platform(GAE (13))

web2py comes with an SSL (21) enabled web server, the Rocket wsgiserver (22). While this is a fast web server, it has limited configuration capabilities. For this reason it is best to deploy web2py behind Apache (79), Lighttpd (86) or Cherokee (87). These are free and open-source web servers that are customizable and have been proven to be reliable in high traffic production environments. They can be configured to serve static files directly, deal with HTTPS, and pass control to web2py for dynamic content.

Until a few years ago, the standard interface for communication between web

servers and web applications was the Common Gateway Interface (CGI) (78). The main problem with CGI is that it creates a new process for each HTTP request. If the web application is written in an interpreted language, each HTTP request served by the CGI scripts starts a new instance of the interpreter. This is slow, and it should be avoided in a production environment. Moreover, CGI can only handle simple responses. It cannot handle, for example, file streaming. web2py provides a file `modpythonhandler.py` to interface to CGI.

One solution to this problem is to use the `mod_python` module for Apache. We discuss it here because its use is still very common but the `mod_python` project has officially been abandoned by the Apache Software Foundation. `mod_python` starts one instance of the Python interpreter when Apache starts, and serves each HTTP request in its own thread without having to restart Python each time. This is a better solution than CGI, but it is not an optimal solution, since `mod_python` uses its own interface for communication between the web server and the web application. In `mod_python`, all hosted applications run under the same user-id/group-id, which presents security issues. web2py provides a file `cgihandler.py` to interface to `mod_python`.

In the last few years, the Python community has come together behind a new standard interface for communication between web servers and web applications written in Python. It is called Web Server Gateway Interface (WSGI) (17; 18). web2py was built on WSGI, and it provides handlers for using other interfaces when WSGI is not available.

Apache supports WSGI via the module `mod_wsgi` (85) developed by Graham Dumpleton. web2py provides a file `wsgihandler.py` to interface to WSGI.

Some web hosting services do not support `mod_wsgi`. In this case, we must use Apache as a proxy and forward all incoming requests to the web2py built-in web server (running for example on `localhost:8000`).

In both cases, with `mod_wsgi` and/or `mod_proxy`, Apache can be configured to serve static files and deal with SSL encryption directly, taking the burden

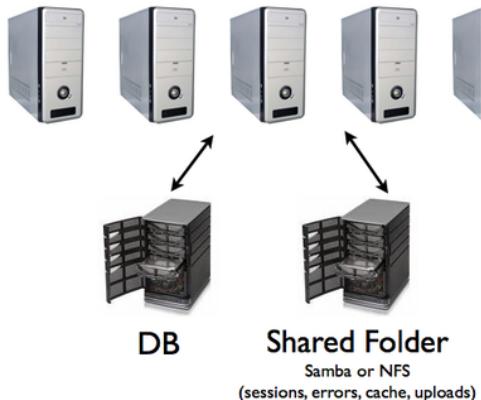
off web2py.

The Lighttpd web server does not currently support the WSGI interface, but it does support the FastCGI (88) interface, which is an improvement over CGI. FastCGI's main aim is to reduce the overhead associated with interfacing the web server and CGI programs, allowing a server to handle more HTTP requests at once.

According to the Lighttpd web site, "Lighttpd powers several popular Web 2.0 sites such as YouTube and Wikipedia. Its high speed IO-infrastructure allows them to scale several times better with the same hardware than with alternative web-servers". Lighttpd with FastCGI is, in fact, faster than Apache with mod_wsgi. web2py provides a file `fcgihandler.py` to interface to FastCGI. web2py also includes a `gaehandler.py` to interface with the Google App Engine (GAE). On GAE, web applications run "in the cloud". This means that the framework completely abstracts any hardware details. The web application is automatically replicated as many times as necessary to serve all concurrent requests. Replication in this case means more than multiple threads on a single server; it also means multiple processes on different servers. GAE achieves this level of scalability by blocking write access to the file system and all persistent information must be stored in the Google BigTable datastore or in memcache.

On non-GAE platforms, scalability is an issue that needs to be addressed, and it may require some tweaks in the web2py applications. The most common way to achieve scalability is by using multiple web servers behind a load-balancer (a simple round robin, or something more sophisticated, receiving heartbeat feedback from the servers).

Even if there are multiple web servers, there must be one, and only one, database server. By default, web2py uses the file system for storing sessions, error tickets, uploaded files, and the cache. This means that in the default configuration, the corresponding folders have to be shared folders:



In the rest of the chapter, we consider various recipes that may provide an improvement over this naive approach, including:

- Store sessions in the database, in cache or do not store sessions at all.
- Store tickets on local filesystems and move them into the database in batches.
- Use memcache instead of cache.ram and cache.disk.
- Store uploaded files in the database instead of the shared filesystem.

While we recommend following the first three recipes, the fourth recipe may provide an advantage mainly in the case of small files, but may be counter-productive for large files.

11.1 Linux/Unix

11.1.1 One Step Production Deployment

Here are some steps to install apache+python+mod_wsgi+web2py+postgresql from scratch.

On Ubuntu:

```
1 wget http://web2py.googlecode.com/svn/trunk/scripts/setup-web2py-ubuntu.sh
2 chmod +x setup-web2py-ubuntu.sh
3 sudo ./setup-web2py-ubuntu.sh
```

On Fedora:

```
1 wget http://web2py.googlecode.com/svn/trunk/scripts/setup-web2py-fedora.sh
2 chmod +x setup-web2py-fedora.sh
3 sudo ./setup-web2py-fedora.sh
```

Both these script should run out of the box but every Linux installation is a bit different and you want inside the source code. So make sure you run the source code of these script before you run. Most of what they do is explained below in the ubuntu case. They do not implement the scalability optimizations discussed below.

11.1.2 Apache setup

In this section, we use Ubuntu 8.04 Server Edition as the reference platform. The configuration commands are very similar on other Debian-based Linux distribution, but they may differ for Fedora-based systems (which uses yum instead of apt-get).

First, make sure all the necessary Python and Apache packages are installed by typing the following shell commands:

```
1 sudo apt-get update
2 sudo apt-get -y upgrade
3 sudo apt-get -y install openssh-server
4 sudo apt-get -y install python
```

```

5 sudo apt-get -y install python-dev
6 sudo apt-get -y install apache2
7 sudo apt-get -y install libapache2-mod-wsgi
8 sudo apt-get -y install libapache2-mod-proxy-html

```

Then, enable the SSL module, the proxy module, and the WSGI module in Apache:

```

1 sudo ln -s /etc/apache2/mods-available/proxy_http.load \
           /etc/apache2/mods-enabled/proxy_http.load
2 sudo a2enmod ssl
3 sudo a2enmod proxy
4 sudo a2enmod proxy_http
5 sudo a2enmod wsgi

```

Create the SSL folder, and put the SSL certificates inside it:

```
1 sudo mkdir /etc/apache2/ssl
```

You should obtain your SSL certificates from a trusted Certificate Authority such as verisign.com, but, for testing purposes, you can generate your own self-signed certificates following the instructions in ref. (84)

Then restart the web server:

```
1 sudo /etc/init.d/apache2 restart
```

The Apache configuration file is:

```
1 /etc/apache2/sites-available/default
```

The Apache logs are in:

```
1 /var/log/apache2/
```

11.1.3 mod_wsgi

Download and unzip web2py source on the machine where you installed the web server above.

Install web2py under `/users/www-data/`, for example, and give ownership to user `www-data` and group `www-data`. These steps can be performed with the following shell commands:

```

1 cd /users/www-data/
2 sudo wget http://web2py.com/examples/static/web2py_src.zip
3 sudo unzip web2py_src.zip
4 sudo chown -R www-data:www-data /user/www-data/web2py

```

To set up web2py with `mod_wsgi`, create a new Apache configuration file:

```
1 /etc/apache2/sites-available/web2py
```

and include the following code:

```

1 <VirtualHost *:80>
2   ServerName web2py.example.com
3   WSGIDaemonProcess web2py user=www-data group=www-data \
4                               display-name=%{GROUP}
5   WSGIProcessGroup web2py
6   WSGIScriptAlias / /users/www-data/web2py/wsgihandler.py
7
8   <Directory /users/www-data/web2py>
9     AllowOverride None
10    Order Allow,Deny
11    Deny from all
12    <Files wsgihandler.py>
13      Allow from all
14    </Files>
15  </Directory>
16
17  AliasMatch ^/([^\/]+)/static/(.*) \
18    /users/www-data/web2py/applications/$1/static/$2
19  <Directory /users/www-data/web2py/applications/*/*static/>
20    Order Allow,Deny
21    Allow from all
22  </Directory>
23
24  <Location /admin>
25    Deny from all
26  </Location>
27
28  <LocationMatch ^/([^\/]+)/appadmin>
29    Deny from all
30  </LocationMatch>
31
32  CustomLog /private/var/log/apache2/access.log common

```

```

33   ErrorLog /private/var/log/apache2/error.log
34 </VirtualHost>

```

When you restart Apache, it should pass all the requests to web2py without going through the Rocket wsgiserver.

Here are some explanations:

```

1 WSGIDaemonProcess web2py user=www-data group=www-data
2           display-name=%{GROUP}

```

defines a daemon process group in context of "web2py.example.com". By defining this inside of the virtual host, only this virtual host, including any virtual host for same server name but on a different port, can access this using WSGIProcessGroup. The "user" and "group" options should be set to the user who has write access to the directory where web2py was setup. You do not need to set "user" and "group" if you made the web2py installation directory writable to the user that Apache runs as by default. The "display-name" option is so that process name appears in ps output as "(wsgi:web2py)" instead of as name of Apache web server executable. As no "processes" or "threads" options specified, the daemon process group will have a single process with 15 threads running within that process. This is usually more than adequate for most sites and should be left as is. If overriding it, do not use "processes=1" as doing so will disable any in browser WSGI debugging tools that check the "wsgi.multiprocess" flag. This is because any use of the "processes" option will cause that flag to be set to true, even if a single process and such tools expect that it be set to false. Note that if your own application code or some third party extension module you are using with Python is not thread safe, instead use options "processes=5 threads=1". This will create five processes in the daemon process group where each process is single threaded. You might consider using "maximum-requests=1000" if your application leaks Python objects through inability for them to be garbage collected properly.

```

1 WSGIProcessGroup web2py

```

delegates running of all WSGI applications to the daemon process group that was configured using the WSGIDaemonProcess directive.

```
1 WSGIScriptAlias / /users/www-data/web2py/wsgihandler.py
```

mounts the web2py application. In this case it is mounted at the root of the web site. Not known how to get web2py to mount at a sub URL as doesn't appear to be a good WSGI citizen and work out where it is mounted from value of SCRIPT_NAME and then automatically adjust everything appropriately without further manual user configuration.

```
1 <Directory /users/www-data/web2py>
2 ...
3 </Directory>
```

gives Apache permission to access the WSGI script file.

```
1 <Directory /users/www-data/web2py/applications/*/*static/>
2   Order Allow,Deny
3   Allow from all
4 </Directory>
```

Instructs Apache to bypass web2py when searching static files.

```
1 <Location /admin>
2   Deny from all
3 </Location>
```

and

```
1 <LocationMatch ^/([^\]+)appadmin>
2   Deny from all
3 </LocationMatch>
```

block public access to **admin** and **appadmin**

Normally would just allow permission to the whole directory the WSGI script file is located in, but can't do that with web2py, as it places the WSGI script file in a directory which contains other source code, including the file containing the admin interface password. Opening up the whole directory would cause

security issues, because technically Apache would be given permission to serve all the files up to a user if there was any way of traversing to that directory via a mapped URL. To avoid security problems, explicitly deny access to the contents of the directory, except for the WSGI script file and prohibit a user from doing any overrides from a htaccess file to be extra safe.

You can find a completed, commented, Apache wsgi configuration file in:

```
1 scripts/web2py-wsgi.conf
```

This section was created with help from Graham Dumpleton, developer of mod_wsgi.

11.1.4 mod_wsgi and SSL

To force some applications (for example **admin** and **appadmin**) to go over HTTPS, store the SSL certificate and key files:

```
1 /etc/apache2/ssl/server.crt
2 /etc/apache2/ssl/server.key
```

and edit the Apache configuration file `web2py.conf` and append:

```
1 <VirtualHost *:443>
2   ServerName web2py.example.com
3   SSLEngine on
4   SSLCertificateFile /etc/apache2/ssl/server.crt
5   SSLCertificateKeyFile /etc/apache2/ssl/server.key
6
7   WSGIProcessGroup web2py
8
9   WSGIScriptAlias / /users/www-data/web2py/wsgihandler.py
10
11  <Directory /users/www-data/web2py>
12    AllowOverride None
13    Order Allow,Deny
14    Deny from all
15    <Files wsgihandler.py>
16      Allow from all
17    </Files>
```

```

18   </Directory>
19
20 AliasMatch ^/([^\/]+)/static/(.*) \
21     /users/www-data/web2py/applications/$1/static/$2
22
23 <Directory /users/www-data/web2py/applications/*/*>
24   Order Allow,Deny
25   Allow from all
26 </Directory>
27
28 CustomLog /private/var/log/apache2/access.log common
29 ErrorLog /private/var/log/apache2/error.log
30
31 </VirtualHost>

```

Restart Apache and you should be able to access:

```

1 https://www.example.com/admin
2 https://www.example.com/examples/appadmin
3 http://www.example.com/examples

```

but not:

```

1 http://www.example.com/admin
2 http://www.example.com/examples/appadmin

```

11.1.5 mod_proxy

Some Unix/Linux distributions can run Apache, but do not support mod_wsgi. In this case, the simplest solution is to run Apache as a proxy and have Apache deal with static files only.

Here is a minimalist Apache configuration:

```

1 NameVirtualHost *:80
2 ### deal with requests on port 80
3 <VirtualHost *:80>
4   Alias / /users/www-data/web2py/applications
5   ### serve static files directly
6   <LocationMatch "^/welcome/static/.*">
7     Order Allow, Deny

```

```

8     Allow from all
9   </LocationMatch>
10  ### proxy all the other requests
11  <Location "/welcome">
12    Order deny,allow
13    Allow from all
14    ProxyRequests off
15    ProxyPass http://localhost:8000/welcome
16    ProxyPassReverse http://localhost:8000/
17    ProxyHTMLURLMap http://127.0.0.1:8000/welcome/ /welcome
18  </Location>
19  LogFormat "%h %l %u %t \"%r\" %>s %b" common
20  CustomLog /var/log/apache2/access.log common
21 </VirtualHost>
```

The above script exposes only the "welcome" application. To expose other applications, you need to add the corresponding `<Location>...</Location>` with the same syntax as done for the "welcome" app.

The script assumes there is a web2py server running on port 8000. Before restarting Apache, make sure this is the case:

```
1 nohup python web2py.py -a '<recycle>' -i 127.0.0.1 -p 8000 &
```

You can specify a password with the `-a` option or use the "`<recycle>`" parameter instead of a password. In the latter case, the previously stored password is reused and the password is not stored in the shell history.

You can also use the parameter "`<ask>`", to be prompted for a password.

The `nohup` command makes sure the server does not die when you close the shell. `nohup` logs all output into `nohup.out`.

To force admin and appadmin over HTTPS use the following Apache configuration file instead:

```

1 NameVirtualHost *:80
2 NameVirtualHost *:443
3 ### deal with requests on port 80
4 <VirtualHost *:80>
5   Alias / /usres/www-data/web2py/applications
```

```
6  ##### admin requires SSL
7  <LocationMatch "^/admin">
8      SSLRequireSSL
9  </LocationMatch>
10 ##### appadmin requires SSL
11 <LocationMatch "^/welcome/appadmin/.*">
12     SSLRequireSSL
13 </LocationMatch>
14 ##### serve static files directly
15 <LocationMatch "^/welcome/static/.*">
16     Order Allow,Deny
17     Allow from all
18 </LocationMatch>
19 ##### proxy all the other requests
20 <Location "/welcome">
21     Order deny,allow
22     Allow from all
23     ProxyPass http://localhost:8000/welcome
24     ProxyPassReverse http://localhost:8000/
25 </Location>
26 LogFormat "%h %l %u %t \"%r\" %>s %b" common
27 CustomLog /var/log/apache2/access.log common
28 </VirtualHost>
29 <VirtualHost *:443>
30     SSLEngine On
31     SSLCertificateFile /etc/apache2/ssl/server.crt
32     SSLCertificateKeyFile /etc/apache2/ssl/server.key
33     <Location "/">
34         Order deny,allow
35         Allow from all
36         ProxyPass http://localhost:8000/
37         ProxyPassReverse http://localhost:8000/
38     </Location>
39     LogFormat "%h %l %u %t \"%r\" %>s %b" common
40     CustomLog /var/log/apache2/access.log common
41 </VirtualHost>
```

The administrative interface must be disabled when web2py runs on a shared host with mod_proxy, or it will be exposed to other users.

11.1.6 Start as Linux Daemon

Unless you are using mod_wsgi, you should setup the web2py server so that it can be started/stopped/restarted as any other Linux daemon, and so it can start automatically at the computer boot stage.

The process to set this up is specific to various Linux/Unix distributions.

In the web2py folder, there are two scripts which can be used for this purpose:

```
1 scripts/web2py.ubuntu.sh
2 scripts/web2py.fedora.sh
```

On Ubuntu, or other Debian-based Linux distribution, edit "web2py.ubuntu.sh" and replace the "/usr/lib/web2py" path with the path of your web2py installation, then type the following shell commands to move the file into the proper folder, register it as a startup service, and start it:

```
1 sudo cp scripts/web2py.ubuntu.sh /etc/init.d/web2py
2 sudo update-rc.d web2py defaults
3 sudo /etc/init.d/web2py start
```

On Fedora, or any other distributions based on Fedora, edit "web2py.fedora.sh" and replace the "/usr/lib/web2py" path with the path of your web2py installation, then type the following shell commands to move the file into the proper folder, register it as a startup service and start it:

```
1 sudo cp scripts/web2py.fedora.sh /etc/rc.d/init.d/web2pyd
2 sudo chkconfig --add web2pyd
3 sudo service web2py start
```

11.1.7 Lighttpd

You can install Lighttpd on a Ubuntu or other Debian-based Linux distribution with the following shell command:

```
1 apt-get -y install lighttpd
```

Once installed, edit /etc/rc.local and create a fcgi web2py background process

```
1 cd /var/www/web2py && sudo -u www-data nohup python fcgihandler.py &
```

Then, you need to edit the Lighttpd configuration file

```
1 /etc/lighttpd/lighttpd.conf
```

so that it can find the socket created by the above process. In the config file, write something like:

```
1 server.modules          = (
2     "mod_access",
3     "mod_alias",
4     "mod_compress",
5     "mod_rewrite",
6     "mod_fastcgi",
7     "mod_redirect",
8     "mod_accesslog",
9     "mod_status",
10 )
11
12 server.port = 80
13 server.bind = "0.0.0.0"
14 server.event-handler = "freebsd-kqueue"
15 server.error-handler-404 = "/test.fcgi"
16 server.document-root = "/users/www-data/web2py/"
17 server.errorlog        = "/tmp/error.log"
18
19 fastcgi.server = (
20     "/handler_web2py.fcgi" => (
21         "handler_web2py" => ( #name for logs
22             "check-local" => "disable",
23             "socket" => "/tmp/fcgi.sock"
24         )
25     ),
26 )
27
28 $HTTP["host"] = "(^|\.example\.com$" {
29     server.document-root="/var/www/web2py"
30     url.rewrite-once =
31         "^/(.+?/static/.+)$" => "/applications$1",
```

```

32     "(^|/.*)$" => "/handler_web2py.fcgi$1",
33
34 }
```

Now check for syntax errors:

```
1 lighttpd -t -f /etc/lighttpd/lighttpd.conf
```

and (re)start the web server with:

```
1 /etc/init.d/lighttpd restart
```

Notice that FastCGI binds the web2py server to a Unix socket, not to an IP socket:

```
1 /tmp/fcgi.sock
```

This is where Lighttpd forwards the HTTP requests to and receives responses from. Unix sockets are lighter than Internet sockets, and this is one of the reasons Lighttpd+FastCGI+web2py is fast. As in the case of Apache, it is possible to setup Lighttpd to deal with static files directly, and to force some applications over HTTPS. Refer to the Lighttpd documentation for details.

Examples in this section were taken from John Heenan post in [web2pyslices](#).

The administrative interface must be disabled when web2py runs on a shared host with FastCGI, or it will be exposed to the other users.

11.1.8 Shared Hosting with mod_python

There are times, specifically on shared hosts, when one does not have the permission to configure the Apache config files directly. At the time of writing most of these hosts still run mod_python even if it is not maintained any more in favor of mod_wsgi.

You can still run web2py. Here we show an example of how to set it up.

Place contents of web2py into the "htdocs" folder.

In the web2py folder, create a file "web2py_modpython.py" file with the following contents:

```

1 from mod_python import apache
2 import modpythonhandler
3
4 def handler(req):
5     req.subprocess_env['PATH_INFO'] = req.subprocess_env['SCRIPT_URL']
6     return modpythonhandler.handler(req)

```

Create/update the file ".htaccess" with the following contents:

```

1 SetHandler python-program
2 PythonHandler web2py_modpython
3 #PythonDebug On

```

This example was provided by Niktar.

11.1.9 Cherokee with FastCGI

Cherokee is a very fast web server and, like web2py, it provides an AJAX-enabled web-based interface for its configuration. Its web interface is written in Python. In addition, there is no restart required for most of the changes.

Here are the steps required to setup web2py with Cherokee:

Download Cherokee (87)

Untar, build, and install:

```

1 tar -xzf cherokee-0.9.4.tar.gz
2 cd cherokee-0.9.4
3 ./configure --enable-fcgi && make
4 make install

```

Start web2py normally at least once to make sure it creates the "applications" folder.

Write a shell script named "startweb2py.sh" with the following code:

```
1 #!/bin/bash
2 cd /var/web2py
3 python /var/web2py/fcgihandler.py &
```

and give the script execute privileges and run it. This will start web2py under FastCGI handler.

Start Cherokee and cherokee-admin:

```
1 sudo nohup cherokee &
2 sudo nohup cherokee-admin &
```

By default, cherokee-admin only listens at local interface on port 9090. This is not a problem if you have full, physical access on that machine. If this is not the case, you can force it to bind to an IP address and port by using the following options:

```
1 -b, --bind[=IP]
2 -p, --port=NUM
```

or do an SSH port-forward (more secure, recommended):

```
1 ssh -L 9090:localhost:9090 remotehost
```

Open "http://localhost:9090" in your browser. If everything is ok, you will get cherokee-admin.

In cherokee-admin web interface, click "info sources". Choose "Local Interpreter". Write in the following code, then click "Add New".

```
1 Nick: web2py
2 Connection: /tmp/fcgi.sock
3 Interpreter: /var/web2py/startweb2py.sh
```

Finally, perform the following remaining steps:

- Click "Virtual Servers", then click "Default".
- Click "Behavior", then, under that, click "default".
- Choose "FastCGI" instead of "List and Send" from the list box.
- At the bottom, select "web2py" as "Application Server"
- Put a check in all the checkboxes (you can leave Allow-x-sendfile). If there is a warning displayed, disable and enable one of the checkboxes. (It will automatically re-submit the application server parameter. Sometimes it doesn't, which is a bug).
- Point your browser to "http://yoursite", and "Welcome to web2py" will appear.

11.1.10 PostgreSQL

PostgreSQL is a free and open source database which is used in demanding production environments, for example, to store the.org domain name database, and has been proven to scale well into hundreds of terabytes of data. It has very fast and solid transaction support, and provides an auto-vacuum feature that frees the administrator from most database maintenance tasks.

On an Ubuntu or other Debian-based Linux distribution, it is easy to install PostgreSQL and its Python API with:

```
1 sudo apt-get -y install postgresql  
2 sudo apt-get -y install python-psycopg2
```

It is wise to run the web server(s) and the database server on different machines. In this case, the machines running the web servers should be connected with a secure internal (physical) network, or should establish SSL tunnels to securely connect with the database server.

Edit the PostgreSQL configuration file

```
1 sudo nano /etc/postgresql/8.4/main/postgresql.conf
```

and make sure it contains these two lines

```
1 ...
2 track_counts = on
3 ...
4 autovacuum = on    # Enable autovacuum subprocess? 'on'
5 ...
```

Start the database server with:

```
1 sudo /etc/init.d/postgresql restart
```

When restarting the PostgreSQL server, it should notify which port it is running on. Unless you have multiple database servers, it should be 5432.

The PostgreSQL logs are in:

```
1 /var/log/postgresql/
```

Once the database server is up and running, create a user and a database so that web2py applications can use it:

```
1 sudo -u postgres createuser -PE -s myuser
2 postgresql> createdb -O myself -E UTF8 mydb
3 postgresql> echo 'The following databases have been created:'
4 postgresql> psql -l
5 postgresql> psql mydb
```

The first of the commands will grant superuser-access to the new user, called `myuser`. It will prompt you for a password.

Any web2py application can connect to this database with the command:

```
1 db = DAL("postgres://myuser:mypassword@localhost:5432/mydb")
```

where `mypassword` is the password you entered when prompted, and `5432` is the port where the database server is running.

Normally you use one database for each application, and multiple instances of the same application connect to the same database. It is also possible for different applications to share the same database.

For database backup details, read the PostgreSQL documentation; specifically the commands `pg_dump` and `pg_restore`.

11.2 Windows

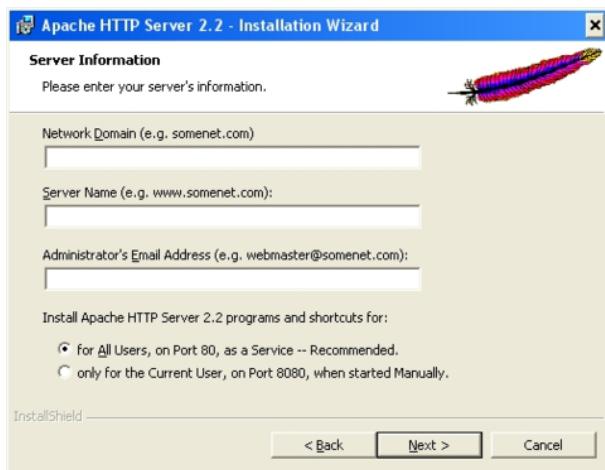
11.2.1 Apache and mod_wsgi

Installing Apache, and mod_wsgi under Windows requires a different procedure. Here are assuming Python 2.5 is installed, you are running from source and web2py is located at `c:/web2py`.

First download the requires packages:

- Apache `apache_2.2.11-win32-x86-openssl-0.9.8i.msi` from (80)
- `mod_wsgi` from (81)

Second, run `apache...msi` and follow the wizard screens. On the server information screen



enter all requested values:

- **Network Domain:** enter the DNS domain in which your server is or will be registered in. For example, if your server's full DNS name is server.mydomain.net, you would type mydomain.net here
- **ServerName:** Your server's full DNS name. From the example above, you would type server.mydomain.net here. Enter a fully qualified domain name or IP address from the web2py install, not a shortcut, for more information see (83).
- **Administrator's Email Address.** Enter the server administrator's or webmaster's email address here. This address will be displayed along with error messages to the client by default.

Continue with a typical install to the end unless otherwise required

The wizard, by default, installed Apache in the folder:

```
C:/Program Files/Apache Software Foundation/Apache2.2/
```

From now on we refer to this folder simply as Apache2.2.

Third, copy the downloaded mod_wsgi.so to Apache2.2/modules written by Chris Travers, published by the Open Source Software Lab at Microsoft, December 2007.

Fourth, create server.crt and server.key certificates (as discussed in the previous section) and place them in the folder Apache2.2/conf. Notice the cnf file is in Apache2.2/conf/openssl.cnf.

Fifth, edit Apache2.2/conf/httpd.conf, remove the comment mark (the # character) from the line

```
1 LoadModule ssl_module modules/mod_ssl.so
```

add the following line after all the other LoadModule lines

```
1 LoadModule wsgi_module modules/mod_wsgi.so
```

look for "Listen 80" and add this line after it

```
1 Listen 443
```

append the following lines at the end changing drive letter, port number, ServerName according to your values

```
1 NameVirtualHost *:443
2 <VirtualHost *:443>
3   DocumentRoot "C:/web2py/applications"
4   ServerName server1
5
6   <Directory "C:/web2py">
7     Order allow,deny
8     Deny from all
9   </Directory>
10
11  <Location "/">
12    Order deny,allow
13    Allow from all
14  </Location>
15
16  <LocationMatch "^(/[^w_]*static/.*)">
17    Order Allow,Deny
18    Allow from all
```

```

19   </LocationMatch>
20
21 WSGIScriptAlias / "C:/web2py/wsgihandler.py"
22
23 SSLEngine On
24 SSLCertificateFile conf/server.crt
25 SSLCertificateKeyFile conf/server.key
26
27 LogFormat "%h %l %u %t \"%r\" %>s %b" common
28 CustomLog logs/access.log common
29 </VirtualHost>

```

Save and check the config using: [Start > Program > Apache HTTP Server 2.2 > Configure Apache Server > Test Configuration]

If there are no problems you will see a command screen open and close. Now you can start Apache:

[Start > Program > Apache HTTP Server 2.2 > Control Apache Server > Start] or better yet start the taskbar monitor

[Start > Program > Apache HTTP Server 2.2 > Control Apache Server]

Now you can right click on the red feather like taskbar icon to Open Apache Monitor and from it start, stop and restart Apache as required.

This section was created by Jonathan Lundell.

11.2.2 Start as Windows Service

What Linux calls a daemon, Windows calls a service. The web2py server can easily be installed/started/stopped as a Windows service.

In order to use web2py as a Windows service, you must create a file "options.py" with startup parameters:

```

1 import socket, os

```

```

2 ip = socket.gethostname()
3 port = 80
4 password = '<recycle>'
5 pid_filename = 'httpserver.pid'
6 log_filename = 'httpserver.log'
7 ssl_certificate =
8 ssl_private_key =
9 numthreads = 10
10 server_name = socket.gethostname()
11 request_queue_size = 5
12 timeout = 10
13 shutdown_timeout = 5
14 folder = os.getcwd()

```

You don't need to create "options.py" from scratch since there is already an "options_std.py" in the web2py folder that you can use as a model.

After creating "options.py" in the web2py installation folder, you can install web2py as a service with:

```
1 python web2py.py -W install
```

and start/stop the service with:

```

1 python web2py.py -W start
2 python web2py.py -W stop

```

11.3 Securing Sessions and **admin**

It is very dangerous to publicly expose the **admin** application and the **appadmin** controllers unless they run over HTTPS. Moreover, your password and credentials should never be transmitted unencrypted. This is true for web2py and any other web application.

In your applications, if they require authentication, you should make the session cookies secure with:

```
1 session.secure()
```

An easy way to setup a secure production environment on a server is to first stop web2py and then remove all the `parameters_*.py` files from the web2py installation folder. Then start web2py without a password. This will completely disable admin and appadmin.

Next, start a second Python instance accessible only from localhost:

```
1 nohup python web2py -p 8001 -i 127.0.0.1 -a '<ask>' &
```

and create an SSH tunnel from the local machine (the one from which you wish to access the administrative interface) to the server (the one where web2py is running, example.com), using:

```
1 ssh -L 8001:127.0.0.1:8001 username@example.com
```

Now you can access the administrative interface locally via the web browser at `localhost:8001`.

This configuration is secure because **admin** is not reachable when the tunnel is closed (the user is logged out).

This solution is secure on shared hosts if and only if other users do not have read access to the folder that contains web2py; otherwise users may be able to steal session cookies directly from the server.

11.4 Efficiency and Scalability

web2py is designed to be easy to deploy and to setup. This does not mean that it compromises on efficiency or scalability, but it means you may need to tweak it to make it scalable.

In this section we assume multiple web2py installations behind a NAT server that provides local load-balancing.

In this case, web2py works out-of-the-box if some conditions are met. In particular, all instances of each web2py application must access the same database servers and must see the same files. This latter condition can be implemented by making the following folders shared:

```
1 applications/myapp/sessions  
2 applications/myapp/errors  
3 applications/myapp/uploads  
4 applications/myapp/cache
```

The shared folders must support file locking. Possible solutions are ZFS (ZFS was developed by Sun Microsystems and is the preferred choice.), NFS (With NFS you may need to run the `lockmgr` daemon to allow file locking.), or Samba (SMB).

It is possible, but not a good idea, to share the entire web2py folder or the entire applications folder, because this would cause a needless increase of network bandwidth usage.

We believe the configuration discussed above to be very scalable because it reduces the database load by moving to the shared filesystems those resources that need to be shared but do not need transactional safety (only one client at a time is supposed to access a session file, cache always needs a global lock, uploads and errors are write once/read many files).

Ideally, both the database and the shared storage should have RAID capability. Do not make the mistake of storing the database on the same storage as the shared folders, or you will create a new bottle neck there.

On a case-by-case basis, you may need to perform additional optimizations and we will discuss them below. In particular, we will discuss how to get rid of these shared folders one-by-one, and how to store the associated data in the database instead. While this is possible, it is not necessarily a good solution. Nevertheless, there may be reasons to do so. One such reason is that sometimes we do not have the freedom to set up shared folders.

11.4.1 Efficiency Tricks

These are the most important tricks to make your application efficient:

- Set `DAL(..., pool_size=10)` (unless using GAE or sqlite)
- Run once with `migrate=True` then set all your tables to `migrate=False`.
- Bytecode compile your app using **admin**.
- Use `cache.ram` as much as you can but make sure to use a finite set of keys else the amount of cache used will grow arbitrarily.
- Minimize the code in models: do not define functions in there, define functions in the controllers that need them or - even better - define functions in modules, import them and use those functions as needed.
- Do not put many functions in the same controller but use many controllers with few functions.
- Set `session.forget()` in all controllers and/or functions that do not change the session.
- Try void web2py cron, and use a background process instead. web2py cron can start too many Python instances and cause excessive memory usage.

11.4.2 Sessions in Database

It is possible to instruct web2py to store sessions in a database instead of in the sessions folder. This has to be done for each individual web2py application although they may all use the same database to store sessions.

Given a database connection

```
1 db = DAL(...)
```

you can store the sessions in this database (db) by simply stating the following, in the same model file that establishes the connection:

```
1 session.connect(request, response, db)
```

If it does not exist already, web2py creates, under the hood, a table in the database called `web2py_session_appname` containing the following fields:

```
1 Field('locked', 'boolean', default=False),
2 Field('client_ip'),
3 Field('created_datetime', 'datetime', default=now),
4 Field('modified_datetime', 'datetime'),
5 Field('unique_key'),
6 Field('session_data', 'text')
```

"`unique_key`" is a uuid key used to identify the session in the cookie. "`session_data`" is the cPickled session data.

To minimize database access, you should avoid storing sessions when they are not needed with:

```
1 session.forget()
```

With this tweak the "sessions" folder does not need to be a shared folder because it will no longer be accessed.

Notice that, if sessions are disabled, you must not pass the session to form.accepts and you cannot use session.flash nor CRUD.

11.4.3 HAProxy a High Availability Load Balancer

If you need multiple web2py processes running on multiple machines, instead of storing sessions in the database or in cache, you have the option to use a load balancer with sticky sessions.

Pound (89) and HAProxy (90) are two HTTP load balancers and Reverse proxies that provides sticky sessions. Here we discuss the latter because it seems to be more common on commercial VPS hosting.

By sticky sessions, we mean that once a session cookie has been issued, the load balancer will always route requests from the client associated to the session, to the same server. This allows you to store the session in the local filesystem without need for a shared filesystem.

To use HAProxy:

First, install it, on our Ubuntu test machine:

```
1 sudo apt-get -y install haproxy
```

Second edit the configuration file "/etc/haproxy.cfg" to something like this:

```
1 # this config needs haproxy-1.1.28 or haproxy-1.2.1
2
3 global
4     log 127.0.0.1    local0
5     maxconn 1024
6     daemon
7
8 defaults
9     log      global
10    mode     http
11    option   httplog
12    option   httpchk
13    option   httpclose
14    retries 3
15    option  redispatch
16    contimeout      5000
17    clitimeout      50000
18    srvtimeout      50000
19
20 listen 0.0.0.0:80
21     balance url_param WEB2PYSTICKY
22     balance roundrobin
23     server L1_1 10.211.55.1:7003 check
24     server L1_2 10.211.55.2:7004 check
25     server L1_3 10.211.55.3:7004 check
26     appsession WEB2PYSTICKY len 52 timeout 1h
```

The `listen` directive tells HAProxy, which port to wait for connection from. The `server` directive tells HAProxy where to find the proxied servers. The `appsession` directive makes a sticky session and uses the a cookie called

WEB2PYSTICKY for this purpose.

Third, enable this config file and start HAProxy:

```
1 /etc/init.d/haproxy restart
```

You can find similar instructions to setup Pound at the URL

```
1 http://web2pyslices.com/main/slices/take_slice/33
```

11.4.4 Cleanup Sessions

If you choose to keep your sessions in the filesystem, you should be aware that on a production environment they pile up fast. web2py provides a script called:

```
1 scripts/sessions2trash.py
```

that when run in the background, periodically deletes all sessions that have not been accessed for a certain amount of time. This is the content of the script:

```
1 SLEEP_MINUTES = 5
2 EXPIRATION_MINUTES = 60
3 import os, time, stat
4 path = os.path.join(request.folder, 'sessions')
5 while 1:
6     now = time.time()
7     for file in os.listdir(path):
8         filename = os.path.join(path, file)
9         t = os.stat(filename)[stat.ST_MTIME]
10        if now - t > EXPIRATION_MINUTES * 60:
11            os.unlink(filename)
12        time.sleep(SLEEP_MINUTES * 60)
```

You can run the script with the following command:

```
1 nohup python web2py.py -S myapp -R scripts/sessions2trash.py &
```

where myapp is the name of your application.

11.4.5 Upload Files in Database

By default, all uploaded files handled by SQLFORMs are safely renamed and stored in the filesystem under the "uploads" folder. It is possible to instruct web2py to store uploaded files in the database instead.

Now, consider the following table:

```

1 db.define_table('dog',
2     Field('name')
3     Field('image', 'upload'))
```

where `dog.image` is of type `upload`. To make the uploaded image go in the same record as the name of the dog, you must modify the table definition by adding a blob field and link it to the upload field:

```

1 db.define_table('dog',
2     Field('name')
3     Field('image', 'upload', uploadfield='image_data'),
4     Field('image_data', 'blob'))
```

Here "image_data" is just an arbitrary name for the new blob field.

Line 3 instructs web2py to safely rename uploaded images as usual, store the new name in the `image` field, and store the data in the `uploadfield` called "`image_data`" instead of storing the data on the filesystem. All of this is be done automatically by SQLFORMs and no other code needs to be changed.

With this tweak, the "uploads" folder is no longer needed.

On Google App Engine files are stored by default in the database without need to define an `uploadfield`, one is created by default.

11.4.6 Collecting Tickets

By default, web2py stores tickets (errors) on the local file system. It would not make sense to store tickets directly in the database, because the most common origin of error in a production environment is database failure.

Storing tickets is never a bottleneck, because this is ordinarily a rare event, hence, in a production environment with multiple concurrent servers, it is more than adequate to store them in a shared folder. Nevertheless, since only the administrator needs to retrieve tickets, it is also OK to store tickets in a non-shared local "errors" folder and periodically collect them and/or clear them.

One possibility is to periodically move all local tickets to a database.

For this purpose, web2py provides the following script:

```
1 scripts/tickets2db.py
```

which contains:

```
1 import sys
2 import os
3 import time
4 import stat
5 import datetime
6
7 from gluon.utils import md5_hash
8 from gluon.restricted import RestrictedError
9
10 SLEEP_MINUTES = 5
11 DB_URI = 'sqlite://tickets.db'
12 ALLOW_DUPLICATES = True
13
14 path = os.path.join(request.folder, 'errors')
15
16 db = SQLDB(DB_URI)
17 db.define_table('ticket', SQLField('app'), SQLField('name'),
18                 SQLField('date_saved', 'datetime'), SQLField('layer'),
19                 SQLField('traceback', 'text'), SQLField('code', 'text'))
20
21 hashes = {}
```

```

22
23 while 1:
24     for file in os.listdir(path):
25         filename = os.path.join(path, file)
26
27     if not ALLOW_DUPLICATES:
28         file_data = open(filename, 'r').read()
29         key = md5_hash(file_data)
30
31     if key in hashes:
32         continue
33
34     hashes[key] = 1
35
36     error = RestrictedError()
37     error.load(request, request.application, filename)
38
39     modified_time = os.stat(filename)[stat.ST_MTIME]
40     modified_time = datetime.datetime.fromtimestamp(modified_time)
41
42     db.ticket.insert(app=request.application,
43                      date_saved=modified_time,
44                      name=file,
45                      layer=error.layer,
46                      traceback=error.traceback,
47                      code=error.code)
48
49     os.unlink(filename)
50
51     db.commit()
52     time.sleep(SLEEP_MINUTES * 60)

```

This script should be edited. Change the DB_URI string so that it connects to your database server and run it with the command:

```
1 nohup python web2py.py -S myapp -M -R scripts/tickets2db.py &
```

where myapp is the name of your application.

This script runs in the background and every 5 minutes moves all tickets to the database server in a table called "ticket" and removes the local tickets. If ALLOW_DUPLICATES is set to False, it will only store tickets that correspond to different types of errors. With this tweak, the "errors" folder does not need to be a shared folder any more, since it will only be accessed locally.

11.4.7 Memcache

We have shown that web2py provides two types of cache: `cache.ram` and `cache.disk`. They both work on a distributed environment with multiple concurrent servers, but they do not work as expected. In particular, `cache.ram` will only cache at the server level; thus it becomes useless. `cache.disk` will also cache at the server level unless the "cache" folder is a shared folder that supports locking; thus, instead of speeding things up, it becomes a major bottleneck.

The solution is not to use them, but to use memcache instead. web2py comes with a memcache API.

To use memcache, create a new model file, for example `0_memcache.py`, and in this file write (or append) the following code:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.memcache import MemcacheClient
2 memcache_servers = ['127.0.0.1:11211']
3 cache.memcache = MemcacheClient(request, memcache_servers)
4 cache.ram = cache.disk = cache.memcache

```

The first line imports memcache. The second line has to be a list of memcache sockets (server:port). The third line redefines `cache.ram` and `cache.disk` in terms of memcache.

You could choose to redefine only one of them to define a totally new cache object pointing to the Memcache object.

With this tweak the "cache" folder does not need to be a shared folder any more, since it will no longer be accessed.

This code requires having memcache servers running on the local network. You should consult the memcache documentation for information on how to setup those servers.

11.4.8 Sessions in Memcache

If you do need sessions and you do not want to use a load balancer with sticky sessions, you have the option to store sessions in memcache:

```
1 from gluon.contrib.memdb import MEMDB
2 session.connect(request,response,db=MEMDB(cache.memcache))
```

11.4.9 Removing Applications

In a production setting, it may be better not to install the default applications: **admin**, **examples** and **welcome**. Although these applications are quite small, they are not necessary.

Removing these applications is as easy as deleting the corresponding folders under the applications folder.

11.4.10 Using Replicated Databases Servers

In a high performance environment you may have a master-slave database architecture with many replicated slaves and perhaps a couple of replicated servers. The DAL can handle this situation and conditionally connect to different servers depending on the request parameters. The API to do this was described in Chapter 6. Here is an example:

```
1 from random import shuffle
2 db = DAL(shuffle(['mysql://...1','mysql://...2','mysql://...3']))
```

In this case different HTTP requests will be served by different databases at random and each DB will be hit more or less with the same probability.

We can also implement a simple Round-Robin

```

1 def fail_safe_round_robin(*uris):
2     i = cache.ram('round-robin', lambda: 0, None)
3     uris = uris[i:] + uris[:i] # rotate the list of uris
4     cache.ram('round-robin', lambda: (i+1)%len(uris), 0)
5     return uris
6 db = DAL(fail_safe_round_robin('mysql://...1','mysql://...2','mysql://...3'))

```

This is fail-safe in the sense that if the database server assigned to the request fails to connect, DAL will try the next one in the order.

If also possible to connect to different databases depending on the requested action or controller. In a master-slave database configuration, some action performs only a read and some person both read/write. The format can safely connect to a slave db server, while the latter should connect to a master. So you can do:

```

1 if request.action in read_only_actions:
2     db = DAL(shuffle(['mysql://...1','mysql://...2','mysql://...3']))
3 else:
4     db = DAL(shuffle(['mysql://...3','mysql://...4','mysql://...5']))

```

where 1,2,3 are replicated servers and 3,4,5 are slaves.

11.5 Google App Engine

It is possible to run web2py code on Google App Engine (GAE) (13), including DAL code, with some limitations. The GAE platform provides several advantages over normal hosting solutions:

- Ease of deployment. Google completely abstracts the underlying architecture.
- Scalability. Google will replicate your app as many times as it takes to serve all concurrent requests.
- BigTable. On GAE, instead of a normal relational database, you store persistent information in BigTable, the datastore Google is famous for.

The limitations are (at the time of writing):

- No read or write access to the file system.
- No transactions.
- No complex datastore queries. In particular there are no JOIN, LIKE, and DATE/DATETIME operators.
- No multiple OR sub-queries unless they involve one and the same field.
- No HTTPS unless you use the `appspot.com` domain with a Google certificate.

This means that web2py cannot store sessions, error tickets, cache files and uploaded files in the filesystem; they must be stored in the datastore and not in the filesystem.

Here we provide a quick overview of GAE and we focus on web2py specific issues, we refer you to the official GAE documentation online for details.

Attention: At the time of writing GAE supports only Python 2.5. Any other version will cause problems. You also must run the web2py source distribution, not a binary distribution.

11.5.1 Configuration

There are two configuration files to be aware of:

```
1 web2py/app.yaml
2 web2py/index.yaml
```

"app.yaml"" has the following structure (it has been shortened using...):

```
1 application: web2py
2 version: 1
3 api_version: 1
```

```

4 runtime: python
5 handlers:
6 - url: /_ah/stats.*
7   ...
8 - url: /(?P<a>.+?)/static/(?P<b>.+)
9   ...
10 - url: /_ah/admin/*
11   ...
12 - url: /_ah/queue/default
13   ...
14 - url: .*
15   ...
16 skip_files:
17 ...

```

You must replace web2py with the application id that you used when registering with Google App Engine.

`url: /_ah/stats.*` instructs GAE to expose the "/stats" URL with statistics and profiling information.

`url: /(.+)/static/(.+)` instructs GAE to serve your app static files directly, without calling web2py logic, for speed.

`url: /_ah/admin/*` instructs GAE to expose the GAE administrative interface.

`url: /_ah/queue/default` instructs GAE to expose an interface to the task queue. This is used by web2py in order to keep reloading your pages automatically and keep them cached for faster service.

`url:.*` instructs web2py to use the `gahandler.py` for every other request.

The `skip_files:` session is list of regular expressions for files that do not need to be deployed on GAE. In particular the line:

```
1 ((admin|examples|welcome)\.tar)|
```

tells GAE not to deploy the default applications. You can add here more application to be ignored.

Except for the application id you probably do not need to edit `app.yaml`.

The file `index.yaml` is automatically generated when you run your application locally using the GAE appserver (the web server that comes with the GOOGLE SDK). It contains something like this:

```

1 indexes:
2 - kind: person
3   properties:
4     - name: name
5       direction: desc

```

In this example it tells GAE to create an index for table "person" that will be used to sort by "name" in reversed alphabetical order. You will not be able to search and sort records in your app without corresponding indexes.

It is important to always run your apps locally with the appserver and try every functionality of your app, before deployment. This will be important for testing purposes but also to automatically generate the "`index.yaml`" file. Occasionally you may want to edit this file and perform cleanup, such as removing duplicate entries.

11.5.2 Running and Deployment

Here we assume you have installed the GAE SDK. You can run your app from inside the "`web2py`" folder by using the appserver command:

```

1 python2.5 dev_appserver ../web2py

```

This will start the appserver and you can run your application at the URL:

```

1 http://127.0.0.1:8080/

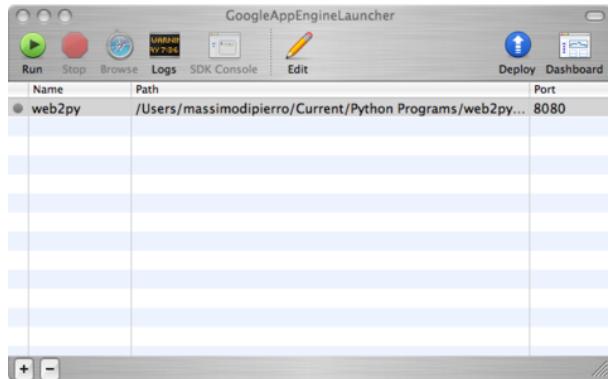
```

In order to upload your app on GAE, make sure you have edited the "app.yaml" file as explained before and set the proper application id, then run:

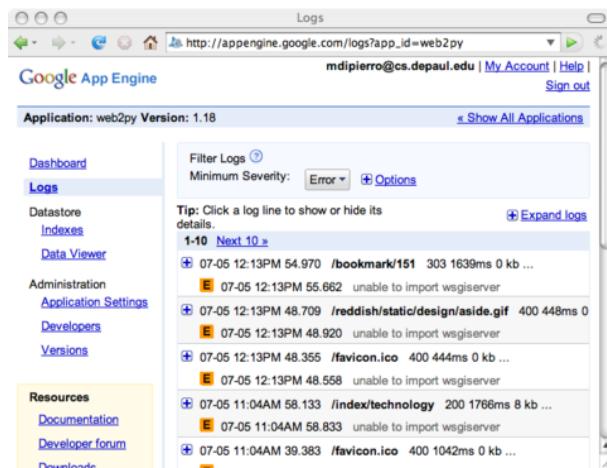
```
1 python2.5 appcfg.py update ../web2py
```

On Mac and Widows you can also use the Google App Engine Launcher. You can download the software from ref. (13).

Choose [File][Add Existing Application], set the path to the path of the top-level web2py folder, and press the [Run] button in the toolbar. After you have tested that it works locally, you can deploy it on GAE by simply clicking on the [Deploy] button on the toolbar (assuming you have an account).



On GAE, the web2py tickets/errors are also logged into the GAE administration console where logs can be accessed and searched online.



11.5.3 Configuring the Handler

The file `gaehandler.py` is responsible for serving files on GAE and it has a few options. Here are their default values:

```

1 KEEP_CACHED = False
2 LOG_STATS = False
3 APPSTATS = True
4 DEBUG = False
5 AUTO_RETRY = True

```

`KEEP_CACHED` asks GAE to store tasks in the task queue that keep calling a dummy action thus forcing GAE to cache your application. This will make GAE serve your users faster but it will consume some extra cycles.

`LOG_STATS` will log the time to serve pages in the GAE logs.

`APPSTATS` will enable GAE appstats which provides profiling statistics. They will be made available at the URL:

```
1 http://localhost:8080/_ah/stats
```

`DEBUG` sets debug mode. It make no difference in practice unless checked explicitly in your code via `gluon.settings.web2py_runtime`.

`AUTO_RETRY` instructs GAE to try commit again in case of failure.

11.5.4 Avoid the Filesystem

On GAE you have no access to the filesystem. You cannot open any file for writing.

For this purpose, on GAE, web2py automatically stores all uploaded files in the datastore, whether or not "upload" Field(s) have a `uploadfield` attribute.

You also should store sessions and tickets in the database and you have to be explicit:

```

1 if request.env.web2py_runtime_gae
2     db = DAL('gae')
3     session.connect(request, response, db)
4 else:
5     db = DAL('sqlite://storage.sqlite')
```

The above code checks whether you are running on GAE, connects to BigTable, and instructs web2py to store sessions and tickets in there. It connects to a sqlite database otherwise. This code is already in the scaffolding app in the file "db.py".

11.5.5 Memcache

If you prefer, you can store sessions in memcache:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.gae_memcache import MemcacheClient
2 from gluon.contrib.memdb import MEMDB
3 cache.memcache = MemcacheClient(request)
4 cache.ram = cache.disk = cache.memcache
```

```

5 db = DAL('gae')
6 session.connect(request,response,MEMDB(cache.memcache))
7

```

Notice that on GAE cache.ram and cache.disk should not be used, so we make them point to cache.memcache.

11.5.6 Database Issues

The absence of multi-entity transactions and typical functionalities of relational databases are what sets GAE apart from other hosting environment. This is the price to pay for high scalability. GAE is an excellent platform if these limitations are tolerable; if not, then a regular hosting platform with a relational database should rather be considered.

If a web2py application does not run on GAE, it is because of one of the limitations discussed above. Most issues can be resolved by removing JOINs from web2py queries and de-normalizing the database.

Google App Engine supports some special field types, such as `ListProperty` and `StringListProperty`. You can use these types with web2py using the following old syntax:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.gql import gae
2 db.define_table('product',
3     Field('name'),
4     Field('tags', type=gae.StringListProperty())

```

or the equivalent new syntax:

```

1 db.define_table('product',
2     Field('name'),
3     Field('tags', 'list:string')

```

In both cases the "tags" field is a `StringListProperty` therefore its values must be lists of strings, compatibly with the GAE documentation. The second

notation is to be preferred because web2py will treat the field in a smarter way in the context of forms and because it will work with relational databases too.

Similarly, web2py supports `list:integer` and `list:reference` which map into a `ListProperty(int)`.

`list` types are discussed in more detail in Chapter 6.

11.5.7 GAE and HTTPS

If your application has id "myapp" your GAE domain is

```
1 http://myapp.appspot.com/
```

and it can also be accessed via HTTPS

```
1 https://myapp.appspot.com/
```

In this case it will use an "appspot.com" certificate provided by Google.

You can register a DNS entry and use any other domain name you own for your app but, in this case, you will not be able to use HTTPS. At the time of writing this a GAE limitation.

12

Other Recipes

12.1 Upgrading

In the "site" page of the administrative interface there is an "upgrade now" button. In case this is not feasible or does not work (for example because of a file locking issue), upgrading web2py manually is very easy.

Simply unzip the latest version of web2py over the old installation.

This will upgrade all the libraries as well as the applications **admin**, **examples**, **welcome**. It will also create a new empty file "NEWINSTALL". Upon restarting, web2py will delete the empty file and package the welcome app into "welcome.w2p" that will be used as new scaffolding app. web2py does not upgrade any file in other existing applications.

12.2 How to Distribute your Applications as Binaries

It is possible to bundle your app with the web2py binary distribution and distribute them together. The license allows this as long you make clear in the license of your app that you are bundling with web2py and add a link to the web2py.com.

Here we explain how to do it for Windows:

- Create your app as usual
- Using **admin**, bytecode compile your app (one click)
- Using **admin**, pack your app compiled (another click)
- Create a folder "myapp"
- Download a web2py windows binary distribution
- Unzip it in folder "myapp" and start it (two clicks)
- Upload using **admin** the previously packed and compiled app with the name "init" (one click)
- Create a file "myapp/start.bat" that contains "cd web2py; web2py.exe"
- Create a file "myapp/license" that contains a license for your app and make sure it states that it is being "distributed with an unmodified copy of web2py from web2py.com"
- Zip the myapp folder into a file "myapp.zip"
- Distribute and/or sell "myapp.zip"

When users will unzip "myapp.zip" and click "run" they will see your app instead of the "welcome" app. There is no requirement on the user side, not even Python pre-installed.

For Mac binaries the process is the same but there is no need for the "bat" file.

12.3 Fetching an external URL

Python includes the `urllib` library for fetching urls:

```
1 import urllib
2 page = urllib.urlopen('http://www.web2py.com').read()
```

This is often fine, but the `urllib` module does not work on the Google App Engine. Google provides a different API for downloading URL that works on GAE only. In order to make your code portable, web2py includes a `fetch` function that works on GAE as well as other Python installations:

```
1 from google.tools import fetch
2 page = fetch('http://www.web2py.com')
```

12.4 Pretty dates

It is often useful to represent a datetime not as "2009-07-25 14:34:56" but as "one year ago". web2py provides a utility function for this:

```
1 d = datetime.datetime(2009,7,25,14,34,56)
2 from google.tools import prettydate
3 pretty_d = prettydate(d,T)
```

The second argument (T) must be passed to allow internationalization for the output.

12.5 Geocoding

If you need to convert an address (for example: "243 S Wabash Ave, Chicago, IL, USA") into geographical coordinates (latitude and longitude), web2py provides a function to do so.

```

1 from gluon.tools import geocode
2 address = '243 S Wabash Ave, Chicago, IL, USA'
3 (latitude, longitude) = geocode(address)

```

The function `geocode` requires a network connection and it connects to the Google geocoding service for the geocoding. The function returns `(0,0)` in case of failure. Notice that the Google geocoding service caps the number of requests and you should check their service agreement. The `geocode` function is built on top of the `fetch` function and thus it works on GAE.

12.6 Pagination

This recipe is a useful trick to minimize database access in case of pagination, e.g., when you need to display a list of rows from a database but you want to distribute the rows over multiple pages.

Start by creating a `primes` application that stores the first 1000 prime numbers in a database.

Here is the model `db.py`:

```

1 db = DAL('sqlite://primes.db')
2 db.define_table('prime',Field('value','integer'))
3 def isprime(p):
4     for i in range(2,p):
5         if p%i==0: return False
6     return True
7 if len(db().select(db.prime.id))==0:
8     p=2
9     for i in range(1000):
10        while not isprime(p): p+=1
11        db.prime.insert(value=p)
12        p+=1

```

Now create an action `list_items` in the "default.py" controller that reads like this:

```

1 def list_items():

```

```

2 if len(request.args): page=int(request.args[0])
3 else: page=0
4 items_per_page=20
5 limitby=(page*items_per_page,(page+1)*items_per_page+1)
6 rows=db().select(db.prime.ALL,limitby=limitby)
7 return dict(rows=rows,page=page,items_per_page=items_per_page)

```

Notice that this code selects one more item than is needed, $20+1$. The reason is that the extra element tells the view whether there is a next page.

Here is the "default/list_items.html" view:

```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2
3 {{for i,row in enumerate(rows):}}
4 {{if i==items_per_page: break}}
5 {{=row.value}}<br />
6 {{pass}}
7
8 {{if page:}}
9 <a href="{{=URL(args=[page-1])}}">previous</a>
10 {{pass}}
11
12 {{if len(rows)>items_per_page:}}
13 <a href="{{=URL(args=[page+1])}}">next</a>
14 {{pass}}

```

In this way we have obtained pagination with one single select per action, and that one select only selects one row more than we need.

12.7 *httpserver.log and the Log File Format*

The web2py web server logs all requests to a file called:

```

1 httpserver.log

```

in the root web2py directory. An alternative filename and location can be specified via web2py command-line options.

New entries are appended to the end of the file each time a request is made. Each line looks like this:

```
1 127.0.0.1, 2008-01-12 10:41:20, GET, /admin/default/site, HTTP/1.1, 200, 0.270000
```

The format is:

```
1 ip, timestamp, method, path, protocol, status, time_taken
```

Where

- ip is the IP address of the client who made the request
- timestamp is the date and time of the request in ISO 8601 format, YYYY-MM-DDT HH:MM:SS
- method is either GET or POST
- path is the path requested by the client
- protocol is the HTTP protocol used to send to the client, usually HTTP/1.1
- status is the one of the HTTP status codes (92)
- time_taken is the amount of time the server took to process the request, in seconds, not including upload/download time.

In the appliances repository (34), you will find an appliance for log analysis.

This logging is disabled by default when using mod_wsgi since it would be the same as the Apache log.

12.8 Populating Database with Dummy Data

For testing purposes it is convenient to be able to populate database tables with dummy data. web2py includes a Bayesian classifier already trained to generate dummy but readable text for this purpose.

Here is the simplest way to use it:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.populate import populate
2 populate(db.mytable,100)

```

It will insert 100 dummy records into db.mytable. It will try to do intelligently by generating short text for string fields, longer text for text fields, integers, doubles, dates, datetimes, times, booleans, etc. for the corresponding fields. It will try to respect requirements imposed by validators. For fields containing the word "name" it will try to generate dummy names. For reference fields it will generate valid references.

If you have two tables (A and B) where B references A, make sure to populate A first and B second.

Because population is done in a transaction, do not attempt to populate too many records at once, in particular if references are involved. Instead, populate 100 at the time, commit, loop.

```

1 for i in range(10):
2     populate(db.mytable,100)
3     db.commit()

```

You can use the Bayesian classifier to learn some text and generate dummy text that sounds similar but should not make sense:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.populate import Learner, IUP
2 ell=Learner()
3 ell.learn('some very long input text ...')
4 print ell.generate(1000,prefix=None)

```

12.9 Send an SMS

Sending SMS messages from a web2py application requires a third party service that can relay the messages to the receiver. Usually this is not a free service, but it differs from country to country. We have tried a few of these services with little success because phone companies block emails originating from these services since they are eventually used as a source of spam.

A better way is to use the phone companies themselves to relay the SMS. Each phone company has an email address uniquely associated every cell-phone number the SMS can be sent as an email to that phone number. web2py comes with a module to help in this process:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.sms_utils import SMSCODES, sms_email
2 email = sms_email('1 (111) 111-1111','T-Mobile USA (tmail)')
3 mail.sent(to=email,subject='test',message='test')
```

SMSCODES is a dictionary that maps names of major phone companies to the email address postfix. The `sms_email` function takes a phone number (as a string) and the name of a phone company and returns the email address of the phone.

12.10 Accepting Credit Card Payments

web2py provides multiple ways for your application to accept credit card payments. For example:

Google Checkout Plugin

```
1 http://web2py.com/plugins/static/web2py.plugin.google_checkout.w2p
```

PayPal

```
1 http://www.web2pyslices.com/main/slices/take_slice/9
```

Authorize.Net

The first two mechanisms above delegate the process of authenticating the payee to an external service. While this is the best solution for security (your app does not handle at all any credit card information) it makes the process cumbersome (the user must login twice, with your app, and with Google for example) and does not allow your app to handle recurrent payments in an automated way.

There are times when you need more control. For this reason we provide integration out of the box with the Authorize.Net API (the module was developed by John Conde and slightly modified). Here is an example of workflow and all the variables that are exposed:

```

1 from gluon.contrib.AuthorizeNet import AIM
2 payment = AIM(login='cnpdev4289',
3                 transkey='SR2P8g4jdEn7vFLQ',
4                 testmod=True)
5 payment.setTransaction(creditcard, expiration, total, cvv, tax, invoice)
6 payment.setParameter('x_duplicate_window', 180) # three minutes duplicate windows
7 payment.setParameter('x_cust_id', '1324')      # customer ID
8 payment.setParameter('x_first_name', 'Agent')
9 payment.setParameter('x_last_name', 'Smith')
10 payment.setParameter('x_company', 'Test Company')
11 payment.setParameter('x_address', '1234 Main Street')
12 payment.setParameter('x_city', 'Townsville')
13 payment.setParameter('x_state', 'NJ')
14 payment.setParameter('x_zip', '12345')
15 payment.setParameter('x_country', 'US')
16 payment.setParameter('x_phone', '800-555-1234')
17 payment.setParameter('x_description', 'Test Transaction')
18 payment.setParameter('x_customer_ip', socket.gethostbyname(socket.gethostname()))
19 payment.setParameter('x_email', 'you@example.com')
20 payment.setParameter('x_email_customer', False)
21
22 payment.process()
23 if payment.isApproved():
24     print 'Response Code: ', payment.response.ResponseCode
25     print 'Response Text: ', payment.response.ResponseText
26     print 'Response: ', payment.getResultResponseFull()
27     print 'Transaction ID: ', payment.response.TransactionID
28     print 'CVV Result: ', payment.response.CVVResponse
29     print 'Approval Code: ', payment.response.AuthCode
30     print 'AVS Result: ', payment.response.AVSResponse
31 elif payment.isDeclined():
32     print 'Your credit card was declined by your bank'
33 elif payment.isError():
34     print 'It did not work'
35 print 'approved',payment.isApproved()
36 print 'declined',payment.isDeclined()
37 print 'error',payment.isError()
```

Notice the code above uses a dummy test account. You need to register with Authorize.Net (it is not a free service) and provide your own login, transkey, testmode=True or False to the AIM constructor.

12.11 Twitter API

Here are some quick examples on how to post/get tweets. No third-party libraries are required, since Twitter uses simple RESTful APIs.

Here is an example of how to post a tweet:

```

1 def post_tweet(username,password,message):
2     import urllib, urllib2, base64
3     import gluon.contrib.simplejson as sj
4     args= urllib.urlencode([('status',message)])
5     headers={}
6     headers['Authorization'] = 'Basic ' +base64.b64encode(username+':'+password)
7     request = urllib2.Request('http://twitter.com/statuses/update.json', args,
8                               headers)
9     return sj.loads(urllib2.urlopen(req).read())

```

Here is an example of how to receive tweets:

```

1 def get_tweets():
2     user='web2py'
3     import urllib
4     import gluon.contrib.simplejson as sj
5     page = urllib.urlopen('http://twitter.com/%s?format=json' % user).read()
6     tweets=XML(sj.loads(page)['#timeline'])
7     return dict(tweets=tweets)

```

For more complex operations, refer to the Twitter API documentation.

12.12 Streaming Virtual Files

It is common for malicious attackers to scan web sites for vulnerabilities. They use security scanners like Nessus to explore the target web sites for scripts that are known to have vulnerabilities. An analysis of web server logs from a scanned machine or directly of the Nessus database reveals that most of the known vulnerabilities are in PHP scripts and ASP scripts. Since we are running web2py, we do not have those vulnerabilities, but we will still

be scanned for them. This annoying, so we like to respond to those vulnerability scans and make the attacker understand their time is being wasted.

One possibility is to redirect all requests for.php,.asp, and anything suspicious to a dummy action that will respond to the attack by keeping the attacker busy for a large amount of time. Eventually the attacker will give up and will not scan us again.

This recipe requires two parts.

A dedicated application called **jammer** with a "default.py" controller as follows:

```
1 class Jammer():
2     def read(self,n): return 'x'*n
3     def jam(): return response.stream(Jammer(),40000)
```

When this action is called, it responds with an infinite data stream full of "x"-es. 40000 characters at a time.

The second ingredient is a "route.py" file that redirects any request ending in.php,.asp, etc. (both upper case and lower case) to this controller.

```
1 route_in=(
2     ('.*\.(php|PHP|asp|ASP|jsp|JSP)', 'jammer/default/jam'),
3 )
```

The first time you are attacked you may incur a small overhead, but our experience is that the same attacker will not try twice.

12.13 Jython

web2py normally runs on CPython (the Python interpreter coded in C), but it can also run on Jython (the Python interpreter coded in Java). This allows

web2py to run in a Java infrastructure.

Even though web2py runs with Jython out of the box, there is some trickery involved in setting up Jython and in setting up zxJDBC (the Jython database adaptor). Here are the instructions:

- Download the file "jython_installer-2.5.0.jar" (or 2.5.x) from Jython.org
- Install it:

```
1 java -jar jython_installer-2.5.0.jar
```

- Download and install "zxJDBC.jar" from (94)
- Download and install the file "sqlitejdbc-v056.jar" from (95)
- Add zxJDBC and sqlitejdbc to the java CLASSPATH
- Start web2py with Jython

```
1 /path/to/jython web2py.py
```

At the time of writing we only support sqlite and postgres on Jython.

13

Components and Plugins

Components and plugins are relatively new features of web2py, and there is some disagreement between developers about what they are and what should be. Most of the confusion originates from the different use of these terms in other software projects and from the fact that developers are still working to finalize the specifications.

But they are an important feature and we need to provide definitions. These definitions are not meant to be final, but just consistent with the programming patterns we want to discuss in this chapter.

We try to address two issues here:

- How can we build modular applications that minimize server load and maximize code reuse?
- How can we distribute pieces of code in a more or less plugin-and-play fashion?

components address the first issue; *plugins* address the second.

13.1 Components

A **component** is a functionally autonomous part of a web page.

A component may be composed of modules, controllers, and views, but there is no strict requirement other than, when embedded in a web page, it must be localized within a html tag (for example a DIV, a SPAN, or an IFRAME) and it must perform its task independently of the rest of the page. We are specifically interested in components that are loaded in the page and communicate with the component controller function via Ajax.

An example of a component is a "comments component" that is contained into a DIV and shows users' comments and a post-new-comment form. When the form is submitted, it is sent to the server via Ajax, the list is updated, and the comment is stored server-side in the database. The DIV content is refreshed without reloading the rest of the page.

The web2py LOAD function makes this easy to do without explicit JavaScript/Ajax knowledge or programming.

Our goal is to be able to develop web applications by assembling components into page layouts.

Consider a simple web2py app "test" that extends the default scaffolding app with a custom model in file "models/db_comments.py":

```

1 db.define_table('comment',
2     Field('body','text',label='Your comment'),
3     Field('posted_on','datetime',default=request.now),
4     Field('posted_by',db.auth_user,default=auth.user_id))
5 db.comment.posted_on.writable=db.comment.posted_on.readable=False
6 db.comment.posted_by.writable=db.comment.posted_by.readable=False

```

one action in "controllers/comments.py"

```

1 @auth.requires_login()
2 def post():

```

```

3     return dict(form=crud.create(db.comment),
4                  comments=db(db.comment.id>0).select())

```

and the corresponding "views/comments/post.html"

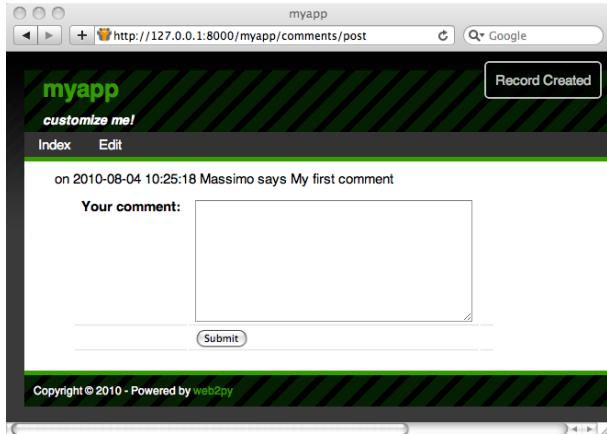
```

1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 {{for comment in comments:}}
3 <div class="comment">
4   on {{=comment.posted_on}} {{=comment.posted_by.first_name}}
5   says <span class="comment_body">{{=comment.body}}</span>
6 </div>
7 {{pass}}
8 {{=form}}

```

You can access it as usual at:

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/test/comments/post
```



So far there is nothing special in this action, but we can turn it into a component by defining a new view with extension ".load" that does not extend the layout.

Hence we create a "views/comments/post.load":

```

1 {{#extend 'layout.html' <- notice this is commented out!}}
2 {{for comment in comments:}}

```

```

3 <div class="comment">
4   on {{=comment.posted_on}} {{=comment.posted_by.first_name}}
5   says <span class="comment_body">{{=comment.body}}</span>
6 </div>
7 {{=pass}}
8 {{=form}}

```

We can access it at the URL

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/test/comments/post.load
```

and it will look like this:



This is a component that we can embed into any other page by simply doing

```
1 {{=LOAD('comments','post.load',ajax=True)}}
```

For example in "controllers/default.py" we can edit

```

1 def index():
2     return dict()

```

and in the corresponding view add the component:

```

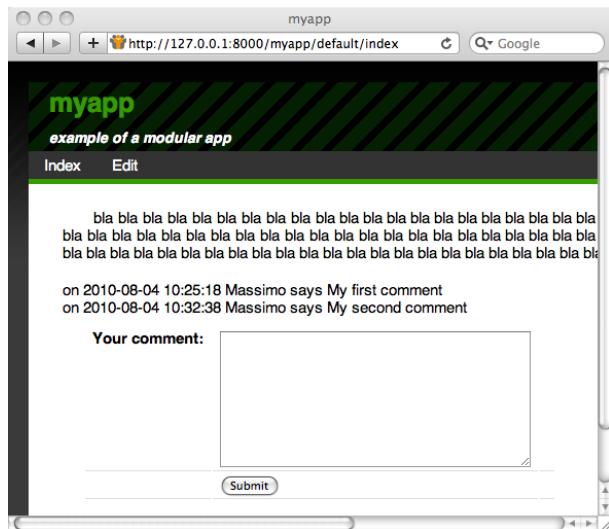
1 {{extend 'layout.html'}}
2 <p>{{='bla '*100}}</p>
3 {{=LOAD('comments','post.load',ajax=True)}}

```

Visiting the page

```
1 http://127.0.0.1:8000/test/default/index
```

will show the normal content and the comments component:



The `\{{=LOAD(...)\}}` component is rendered as follows:

```
1 <script type="text/javascript"><!--  
2 web2py_component("/test/comment/post.load", "c282718984176")  
3 //--></script><div id="c282718984176">loading...</div>
```

(the actual generated code depends on the options passed to the LOAD function).

The `web2py_component(url,id)` function is defined in "web2py_ajax.html" and it performs all the magic: it calls the `url` via Ajax and embeds the response into the DIV with corresponding `id`; it traps every form submission into the DIV and submits those forms via Ajax. The Ajax target is always the DIV itself.

The full signature of the LOAD helper is the following:

```
1 LOAD(c=None, f='index', args=[], vars={},
2       extension=None, target=None,
3       ajax=False, ajax_trap=False,
```

```
    url=None) :
```

Here:

- the first two arguments `c` and `f` are the controller and the function that we want to call respectively.
- `args` and `vars` are the arguments and variables that we want to pass to the function. The former is a list, the latter is a dictionary.
- `extension` is an optional extension. Notice that the extension can also be passed as part of the function as in `f='index.load'`.
- `target` is the `id` of the target DIV. If it is not specified a random target `id` is generated.
- `ajax` should be set to `True` if the DIV has to be filled via Ajax and to `False` if the DIV has to be filled before the current page is returned (thus avoiding the Ajax call).
- `ajax_trap=True` means that any form submission in the DIV must be captured and submitted via Ajax, and the response must be rendered inside the DIV. `ajax_trap=False` indicates that forms must be submitted normally, thus reloading the entire page. `ajax_trap` is ignored and assumed to be `True` if `ajax=True`.
- `url`, if specified, overrides the values of `c`, `f`, `args`, `vars`, and `extension` and loads the component at the `url`. It is used to load as components pages served by other applications (which may or may not be created with web2py).

If no `.load` view is specified, there is a generic `.load` that renders the dictionary returned by the action without layout. It works best if the dictionary contains a single item.

If you LOAD a component having the `.load` extension and the corresponding controller function redirects to another action (for example a login form), the `.load` extension propagates and the new url (the one to redirect too) is also loaded with a `.load` extension.

13.1.1 Client-Server Component Communications

When the action of a component is called via Ajax, web2py passes two HTTP headers with the request:

```
1 web2py-component-location
2 web2py-component-element
```

which can be accessed by the action via the variables:

```
1 request.env.http_web2py_component_location
2 request.env.http_web2py_component_element
```

the latter is also accessible via:

```
1 request.cid
```

The former contains the URL of the page that called the component action. The latter contains the `id` of the DIV that will contain the response.

The component action can also store data in two special HTTP response headers that will be interpreted by the full page upon response. They are:

```
1 web2py-component-flash
2 web2py-component-command
```

and they can be set via:

```
1 response.headers['web2py-component-flash']='...'
2 response.headers['web2py-component-command']='...'
```

or (if the action is called by a component) automatically via:

```
1 response.flash='...'
2 response.js='...'
```

The former contains text that you want to be flashed upon response. The latter contains JavaScript code that you want to be executed upon response. It cannot contain newlines.

As an example, let's define a contact form component in "controllers/contact/ask.py" that allows the user to ask a question. The component will email the question to the system administrator, flash a "thank you" message, and remove the component from the page:

```

1 def ask():
2     form=SQLFORM.factory(
3         Field('your_email',requires=IS_EMAIL()),
4         Field('question',requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()))
5     if form.accepts(request.vars,session):
6         if mail.send(to='admin@example.com',
7                     subject='from %s' % form.vars.your_email,
8                     message = form.vars.question):
9             response.flash = 'Thank you'
10            response.js = "jQuery('#%s').hide()" % request.cid
11        else:
12            form.errors.your_email = "Unable to send the email"
13    return dict(form=form)

```

The first four lines define the form and accept it. The mail object used for sending is defined in the default scaffolding application. The last four lines implement all the component-specific logic by getting data from the HTTP request headers and setting the HTTP response headers.

Now you can embed this contact form in any page via

```

1 {{=LOAD('contact','ask.load',ajax=True)}}

```

Notice that we did not define a .load view for our ask component. We do not have to because it returns a single object (form) and therefore the "generic.load" will do just fine.

13.1.2 Trapped Ajax Links

Normally a link is not trapped an by clicking in a link inside a component, the entire linked page is loaded. Sometimes you want the linked page to be loaded inside the component. This can be achieved using the A helper:

```

1 {{=A('linked page',_href='http://example.com',cid=request.cid)}}

```

If `cid` is specified, the linked page is loaded via Ajax. The `cid` is the `id` of the html element where to place the loaded page content. In this case we set it to `request.cid`, i.e. the `id` of the component that generates the ink. The linked page can be and usually is an internal URL generated using the `URL` command.

You can block access to a function except from a component ajax call by using a decorator that looks for the `cid`:

```
1 @auth.requires(request.cid)
```

13.2 Plugins

A **plugin** is any subset of the files of an application.

and we really mean *any*:

- A plugin is not a module, it not a model, it is not a controller, it not a view, yet it may contain modules, models, controllers and/or views.
- A plugin does not need to be functionally autonomous and it may depend on other plugins or specific user code.
- A *plugin* is not a *plugins system* and therefore has no concept of registration nor isolation, although we will give rules to try to achieve some isolation.
- We are talking about a plugin for your app, not a plugin for web2py.

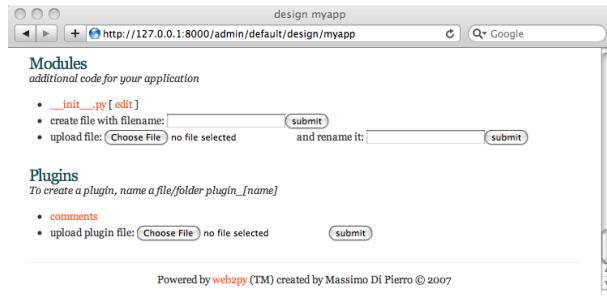
So why is it called a *plugin*? Because it provides a mechanism for packing a subset of an app and unpacking it over another app (i.e. *plug-in*). Under this definition, any file in your app can be treated as plugin.

When the app its distributed, its plugins are packed and distributed with it.

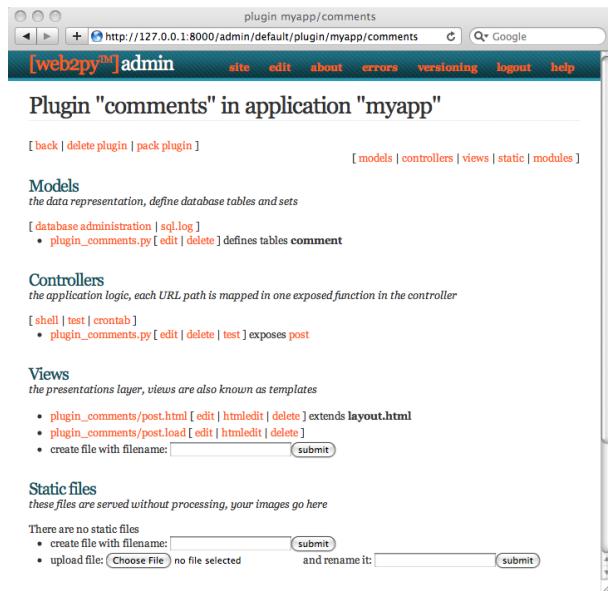
In practice, the **admin** provides an interface for packing and unpacking plugins separately from your app. Files and folder of your application that have names with the prefix `plugin_name` can be packed together into a file called:

`web2py.plugin.name.w2p`

And distributed together.



The files that compose a plugin are not treated by web2py any differently than other files except that **admin** understands from their names that they are meant to be distributed together, and it displays them in a separate page:



Yet as a matter of fact, by the definition above, these plugins are more general than those recognized as such by **admin**.

In practice we will only be concerned with two types of plugins:

- *Component Plugins*. These are plugins that contain components as defined in the previous section. A component plugin can contain one or more components. We can think for example of a `plugin_comments` that contains the `comments` component proposed above. Another example could be `plugin_tagging` that contains a `tagging` component and a `tag-cloud` component that share some database tables also defined by the plugin.
- *Layout Plugins*. These are plugins that contain a layout view and the static files required by such layout. When the plugin is applied it gives the app a new look and feel.

By the above definitions, the components created in the previous section, for example "controllers/contact.py", are already plugins. We can move them

from one app to another and use the components they define. Yet they are not recognized as such by **admin** because there is nothing that labels them as plugins. So there are two problems we need to solve:

- Name the plugin files using a convention, so that **admin** can recognize them as belonging to the same plugin
- If the plugin has model files, establish a convention so that the objects it defines do not pollute the namespace and do not conflict with each other.

Let's assume a plugin is called *name*. Here are the rules that should be followed:

Rule 1: Plugin models and controllers should be called, respectively

- `models/plugin_name.py`
- `controllers/plugin_name.py`

and plugin views, modules, static, and private files should be in folders called, respectively:

- `views/plugin_name/`
- `modules/plugin_name/`
- `static/plugin_name/`
- `private/plugin_name/`

Rule 2: Plugin models can only define objects with names that start with

- `plugin_name`
- `PluginName`
- `_`

Rule 3: Plugin models can only define session variables with names that start with

- `session.plugin_name`
- `session.PluginName`

Rule 4: Plugins should include license and documentation. These should be placed in:

- `static/plugin_name/license.html`
- `static/plugin_name/about.html`

Rule 5: The plugin can only rely on the existence of the global objects defined in scaffolding "db.py", i.e.

- a database connection called `db`
- an `Auth` instance called `auth`
- a `Crud` instance called `crud`
- a `Service` instance called `service`

Some plugins may be more sophisticated and have a configuration parameter in case more than one db instance exists.

Rule 6: If a plugin needs configuration parameters, these should be set via a `PluginManager` as described below.

By following the above rules we can make sure that:

- `admin` recognizes all the `plugin_name` files and folder as part of a single entity.
- plugins do not interfere with each other.

The rules above do not solve the problem of plugin versions and dependencies. That is beyond our scope.

13.2.1 Component Plugins

Component plugins are plugins that define components. Components usually access the database and define with their own models.

Here we turn the previous comments component into a comments_plugin by using the same code we wrote before, but following all of the previous rules.

First, we create a model called "models/plugin_comments.py":

```

1 db.define_table('plugin_comments_comment',
2     Field('body','text', label='Your comment'),
3     Field('posted_on', 'datetime', default=request.now),
4     Field('posted_by', db.auth_user, default=auth.user_id))
5 db.plugin_comments_comment.posted_on.writable=False
6 db.plugin_comments_comment.posted_on.readable=False
7 db.plugin_comments_comment.posted_by.writable=False
8 db.plugin_comments_comment.posted_by.readable=False
9
10 def plugin_comments():
11     return LOAD('plugin_comments','post',ajax=True)

```

(notice the last two lines define a function that will simplify the embedding of the plugin)

Second, we define a "controllers/plugin_comments.py"

```

1 @auth.requires_login()
2 def post():
3     comment = db.plugin_comments_comment
4     return dict(form=crud.create(comment),
5                 comments=db(comment.id>0).select())

```

Third, we create a view called "views/plugin_comments/post.load":

```

1 {{for comment in comments:}}

```

```

2 <div class="comment">
3   on {{=comment.posted_on}} {{=comment.posted_by.first_name}}
4   says <span class="comment_body">{{=comment.body}}</span>
5 </div>
6 {{pass}}
7 {{=form}}

```

Now we can use **admin** to pack the plugin for distribution. Admin will save this plugin as:

```
1 web2py.plugin.comments.w2p
```

We can use the plugin in any view by simply installing the plugin via the **edit** page in **admin** and adding this to our own views

```
1 {{=plugin_comments()}}
```

Of course we can make the plugin more sophisticated by having components that take parameters and configuration options. The more complex the components the more difficult it becomes to avoid name collisions. The Plugin Manager described below is designed to avoid this problem.

13.2.2 Plugin Manager

The **PluginManager** is a class defined in `gluon.tools`. Before we explain how it works inside we will explain how to use it.

Here we consider the previous `comments_plugin` and we make it better. We want to be able to customize:

```
1 db.plugin_comments_comment.body.label
```

without having to edit the plugin code itself.

Here is how we can do it:

First, rewrite the plugin "models/plugin_comments.py" in this way:

```

1 db.define_table('plugin_comments_comment',
2     Field('body','text',label=plugin_comments.comments.body_label),
3     Field('posted_on', 'datetime', default=request.now),
4     Field('posted_by', db.auth_user, default=auth.user_id))
5
6 def plugin_comments():
7     from gluon.tools import PluginManager
8     plugins = PluginManager('comments', body_label='Your comment')
9
10    comment = db.plugin_comments_comment
11    comment.label=plugins.comments.body_label
12    comment.posted_on.writable=False
13    comment.posted_on.readable=False
14    comment.posted_by.writable=False
15    comment.posted_by.readable=False
16    return LOAD('plugin_comments','post.load',ajax=True)

```

Notice how all the code except the table definition is encapsulated in a single function. Also notice how the function creates an instance of a `PluginManager`.

Now in any other model in your app, for example in "models/db.py", you can configure this plugin as follows:

```

1 from gluon.tools import PluginManager
2 plugins = PluginManager()
3 plugins.comments.body_label = T('Post a comment')

```

The `plugins` object is already instantiated in the default scaffolding app in "models/db.py"

The `PluginManager` object is a thread-level singleton Storage object of Storage objects. That means you can instantiate as many as you like within the same application but (whether they have the same name or not) they act as if there were a single `PluginManager` instance.

In particular each plugin file can make its own `PluginManager` object and register itself and its default parameters with it:

```

1 plugins = PluginManager('name', param1='value', param2='value')

```

You can override these parameters elsewhere (for example in "models/db.py") with the code:

```
1 plugins = PluginManager()
2 plugins.name.param1 = 'other value'
```

You can configure multiple plugins in one place.

```
1 plugins = PluginManager()
2 plugins.name.param1 = '...'
3 plugins.name.param2 = '...'
4 plugins.name1.param3 = '...'
5 plugins.name2.param4 = '...'
6 plugins.name3.param5 = '...'
```

When the plugin is defined, the PluginManager must take arguments: the plugin name and optional named arguments which are default parameters. Instead, when the plugins are configured, the PluginManager constructor must take no arguments. The configuration must precede the definition of the plugin (i.e. it must be in a model file that comes first alphabetically).

13.2.3 Layout plugins

Layout plugins are simpler than component plugins because usually they do not contain code, but only views and static files. Yet there is good practice you should follow:

First, create a folder called "static/plugin_layout_name/" (where name is the name of your layout) and place all your static files in there.

Second, create a layout file called "views/plugin_layout_name/layout.html" that contains your layout and links the images, CSS and JavaScript files in "static/plugin_layout_name/"

Third, modify the "views/layout.html" so that it reads, simply as:

```
1 {{include 'plugin_layout_name/layout.html'}}
```

The benefit of this design is that users of this plugin can install multiple layouts and choose which one to apply simply by editing "views/layout.html". Moreover, "views/layout.html" will not be packed by **admin** together with the plugin, so there is no risk that the plugin overrides the user's code in the previously installed layout.

13.3 plugin_wiki

DISCLAIMER: plugin_wiki is still very much under development and therefore we do not promise backward compatibility to the same level as for web2py core functions.

plugin_wiki is a plugin on steroids. What we mean is that it defines multiple useful components and it may change the way you develop your applications:

You can download it from

```
1 http://web2py.com/examples/static/web2py.plugin.wiki.w2p
```

The idea behind **plugin_wiki** is that most applications include pages that are semi-static. These are pages that do not include complex custom logic. They contain structured text (think of a help page), images, audio, video, crud forms, or a set of standard components (comments, tags, charts, maps), etc. These pages may be public, require login or have other authorization restrictions. These pages may be linked by a menu or only be reachable via wizard form. **plugin_wiki** provides an easy way to add pages that fit in this category to your regular web2py applications.

In particular **plugin_wiki** provides:

- A wiki-like interface that allows to add pages to your app and reference

them by a slug. These pages (which we will refer to as wiki pages) have versions and are stored in the database.

- Public and private pages (require login). If a page requires login, it may also require that the user have a particular group membership.
- Three levels: 1,2,3. At level 1, pages can only include text, images, audio and video. At level 2, pages can also include widgets (these are components as defined in the previous section that can be embedded in wiki pages). At level 3, pages can also include web2py template code.
- A choice of editing pages with the markmin syntax or in HTML using a WYSIWYG editor.
- A collection of widgets: implemented as components, they are self-documenting and can be embedded as regular components in normal web2py views or, using a simplified syntax, into wiki pages.
- A set of special pages (`meta-code`, `meta-menu`, etc.) that can be used to customize the plugin (for example define code the plugin should run, customize the menu, etc.)

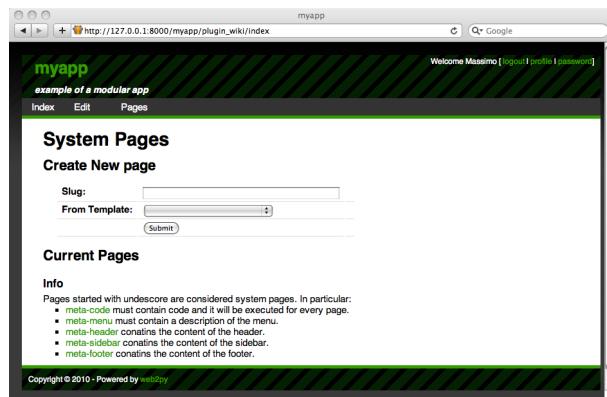
*The **welcome** app plus the **plugin_wiki** can be thought of as a development environment in itself that is suitable for building simple web applications such as a blog.*

From here on we will assume the **plugin_wiki** is applied to a copy of the **welcome** scaffolding app.

The first thing you notice after installing the plugin is that it adds a new menu item called *pages*.

Click on the *pages* menu item and you will be redirected to the plugin action:

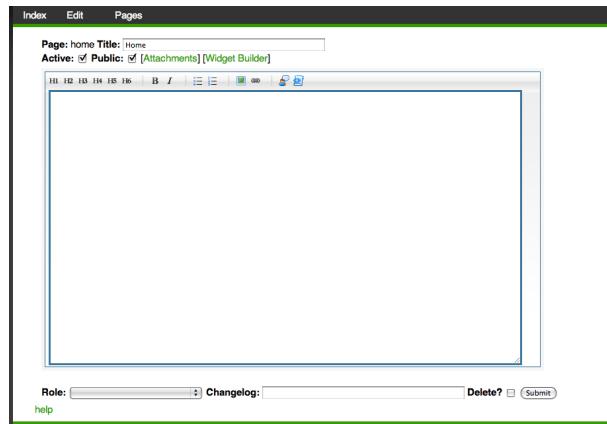
¹ http://127.0.0.1:8000/myapp/plugin_wiki/index



The plugin index page lists the pages created using the plugin itself and allows you to create new ones by choosing a *slug*. Try creating a `home` page. You will be redirected to

http://127.0.0.1:8000/myapp/plugin_wiki/page/home

Click on *create page* to edit its content.



By default, the plugin is at level 3, which means you can insert widgets as well as code in pages. By default it uses the markmin syntax for describing the page content.

13.3.1 Markmin syntax

Here is a primer for the markmin syntax:

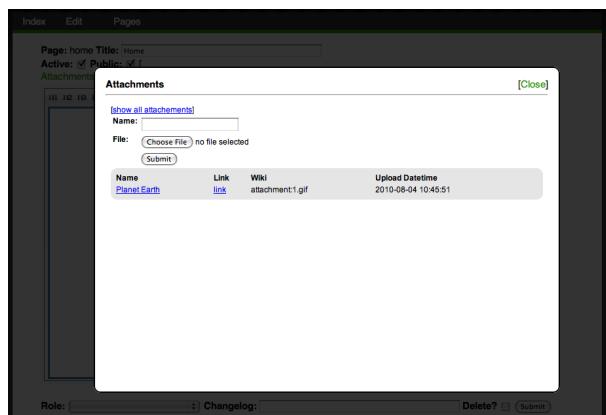
markmin	html
# title	<h1>title</h1>
## subtitle	<h2>subtitle</h2>
### subsubtitle	<h3>subsubtitle</h3>
bold	bold
"italic"	<i>italic</i>
http://...com	http:...com
[[name http://example.com]]	name
[[name http://...png left 200px]]	

You can add link other pages

```
[[mylink name page:slug]]
```

If the page does not exist you will be asked to create one.

The edit page allows you to add attachments to pages (i.e. static files)



and you can link them as

```
1 [[mylink name attachment:3.png]]
```

or embed them with

```
1 [[myimage attachment:3.png center 200px]]
```

The size (200px) is optional. center is not optional but it may be replaced by left or right.

You can embed blockquoted text with

```
1 -----
2 this is blockquoted
3 -----
```

as well as tables

```
1 -----
2 0 | 0 | X
3 0 | X | 0
4 X | 0 | 0
5 -----
```

and verbatim text

```
1 ``
2 verbatim text
3 ``
```

You can also prepend a optional :class to the final --- or the final ". For blockquoted text and tables it will be translated in the class of the tag, for example:

```
1 -----
2 test
3 -----:abc
```

renders as

```
1 <blockquote class="abc">test</blockquote>
```

For verbatim text the class can be used to embed content of different types.

You can, for example, embed code with syntax highlighting by specifying the language with :code_language

```

1 ``
2 def index(): return 'hello world'
3 ``:code_python

```

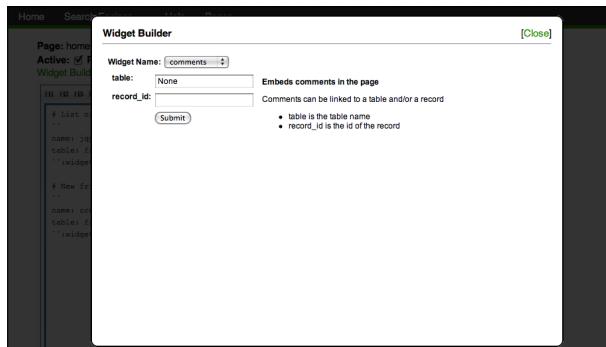
You can embed widgets:

```

1 ``
2 name: widget_name
3 attribute1: value1
4 attribute2: value2
5 ``:widget

```

From the edit page you can click on "widget builder" to insert widgets from a list, interactively:



(for a list of widgets see the next subsection).

You can also embed web2py template language code:

```

1 ``
2 {{for i in range(10):}}<h1>{{=i}}</h1>{{pass}}
3 ``:template

```

13.3.2 Page Permissions

When editing a page you will find the following fields:

- **active** (defaults to True). If a page is not active, it will not be accessible to visitors (even if public).
- **public** (defaults to True). If a page is public it can be accessed by visitors without logging in.
- **Role** (defaults to None). If a page has a role, the page can be accessed only by visitors who are logged in and are members of the group with the corresponding role.

13.3.3 Special Pages

meta-menu contains the menu. If this page does not exist web2py uses the `response.menu` defined in "models/menu.py". The content of the meta-menu page overrides the menu. The syntax is the following:

```

1 Item 1 Name http://link1.com
2   Submenu Item 11 Name http://link11.com
3     Submenu Item 12 Name http://link12.com
4       Submenu Item 13 Name http://link13.com
5 Item 2 Name http://link1.com
6   Submenu Item 21 Name http://link21.com
7     Submenu Item 211 Name http://link211.com
8       Submenu Item 212 Name http://link212.com
9     Submenu Item 22 Name http://link22.com
10    Submenu Item 23 Name http://link23.com

```

where the indentation determines the submenu structure. Each item is composed of the text of the menu item followed by a link. A link can be `page:slug`. A link can be `None` if the menu item does not link any page. Extra spaces are ignored.

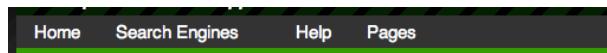
Here is another example:

```

1 Home      page:home
2 Search Engines None
3   Yahoo    http://yahoo.com
4   Google   http://google.com
5   Bing     http://bing.com
6 Help      page:help

```

This renders as follows:



meta-code is another special page and it must contain web2py code. This is an extension of your models, and in fact you can put model code in here. It is executed when "models/plugin_wiki.py" code is executed.

You can define tables in **meta-code**.

You can for example create a simple table friends by placing this in **meta-code**:

```
1 db.define_table('friend',Field('name',requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()))
```

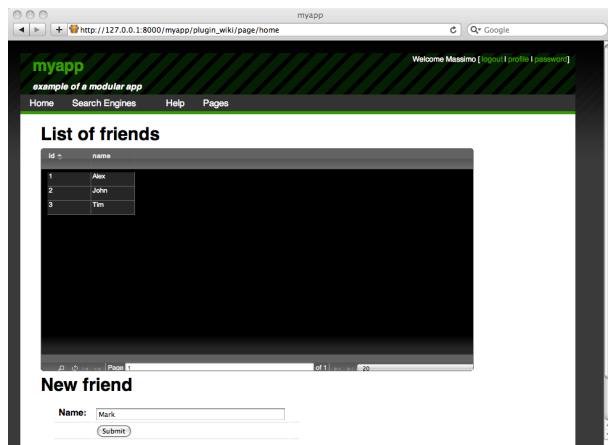
and you can create a friend-management interface with by embedding in a page of your choice the following code:

```

1 # List of friends
```
3 name: jqgrid
4 table: friend
```:widget
6
7 # New friend
```
9 name: create
10 table: friend
```:widget
11

```

The page has two headers (starting with #): "List of friends" and "New friend". The page contains two widgets (under the corresponding headers): a jqgrid widget that lists friends and a crud create widget to add a new friend.



`meta-header`, `meta-footer`, `meta-sidebar` are not used by the default layout in "welcome/views/layout.html". If you want to use them edit "layout.html" using `admin` (or the shell) and place the following tags in the appropriate places:

```

1 {{=plugin_wiki.embed_page('meta-header') or ''}}
2 {{=plugin_wiki.embed_page('meta-sidebar') or ''}}
3 {{=plugin_wiki.embed_page('meta-footer') or ''}}
```

In this way the content of those pages will show up in the header, sidebar and footer in the layout.

13.3.4 Configuring plugin_wiki

As with any other plugins in "models/db.py" you can do

```

1 from gluon.tools import PluginManager
2 plugins = PluginManager()
3 plugins.wiki.editor = auth.user.email == mail.settings.sender
4 plugins.wiki.level = 3
5 plugins.wiki.mode = 'markmin' or 'html'
6 plugins.wiki.theme = 'ui-darkness'
```

where

- **editor** is true if the current logged-in user is authorized to edit plugin_wiki pages
 - **level** is the permission: 1 to edit regular pages, 2 to embed widgets in pages, 3 to embed code
 - **mode** determines whether to use a "markmin" editor or a WYSIWYG "html" editor.
 - **theme** is the name of the required jQuery UI Theme. By default only the color-neutral "ui-darkness" is installed.

You can add themes here:

```
1 static/plugin_wiki/ui/%(theme)s/jquery-ui-1.8.1.custom.css
```

13.3.5 Current Widgets

Each widget can be embedded both in plugin_wiki pages and in normal web2py templates.

For example to embed a YouTube video in a plugin_wiki page you can do

```
1 ``  
2 name: youtube  
3 code: l7AWnffFRc7g  
4 ``:widget
```

or to embed the same widget in a web2py view you can do:

```
1 {{=plugin_wiki.widget('youtube',code='l7AWhfFRc7g')}}
```

In either case this is the output:



Widget arguments that do not have a default value are required.

Here is a list of all current widgets:

```
1 read(table, record_id=None)
```

Reads and displays a record

- `table` is the name of a table
- `record_id` is a record number

```
1 create(table,message='',next='',readonly_fields='',
2       hidden_fields='',default_fields '')
```

Displays a record create form

- `table` is the name of a table

- `message` is a the message to be displayed after record is created
- `next` is where to redirect, example "page/index/[id]"
- `readonly_fields` is a list of comma separated fields
- `hidden_fields` is a list of comma separated fields
- `default_fields` is a list of comma separated "fieldname=value"

```
1 update(table,record_id='',message='',
2        readonly_fields='',hidden_fields='',default_fields='')
```

Displays a record update form

- `table` is the name of a table
- `record_id` is he record to be updated or {{=request.args(-1)}}
- `message` is a the message to be displayed after record is created
- `next` is where to redirect, example "page/index/[id]"
- `readonly_fields` is a list of comma separated fields
- `hidden_fields` is a list of comma separated fields
- `default_fields` is a list of comma separated "fieldname=value"

```
1 select(table,query_field='',query_value='',fields='')
```

Lists all records in the table

- `table` is the name of a table
- `query_field` and `query_value` if present will filter records by according to the query `query_field == query_value`
- `fields` is a list of comma separate fields to be displayed

```
1 search(table,fields='')
```

A Widgets for selecting records

- `table` is the name of a table
- `fields` is a list of comma separated fields to be displayed

```
1 jqgrid(table,fieldname=None,fieldvalue=None,col_widths='',
2       _id=None,fields='',col_width=80,width=700,height=300)
```

Embeds a jqGrid plugin

- `table` is the table name
- `fieldname`, `fieldvalue` are an optional filter (`fieldname==fieldvalue`)
- `_id` is the "id" of the DIV that contains the jqGrid
- `columns` is a list of columns names to be displayed
- `col_width` is the width of each column (default)
- `height` is the height of the jqGrid
- `width` is the width of the jqGrid

```
1 latex(expression)
```

Uses Google charting API to embed LaTeX

```
1 pie_chart(data='1,2,3',names='a,b,c',width=300,height=150,align='center')
```

Embed a pie chart

- `data` is a list of comma separated values
- `names` is a list of comma separated labels (one for data item)
- `width` is the width of the image
- `height` is the height of the image
- `align` determines the alignment of the image

```
1 bar_chart(data='1,2,3',names='a,b,c',width=300,height=150,align='center')
```

Uses Google charting API to embed a bar chart

- `data` is a list of comma separated values
- `names` is a list of comma separated labels (one for data item)
- `width` is the width of the image
- `height` is the height of the image
- `align` determines the alignment of the image

```
1 slideshow(table, field='image', transition='fade', width=200, height=200)
```

Embeds a slideshow. It gets the images from a table.

- `table` is the table name
- `field` is the upload field in the table that contains images
- `transition` determines the type of transition, e.g. fade, etc.
- `width` is the width of the image
- `height` is the height of the image

```
1 youtube(code, width=400, height=250)
```

Embeds a youtube video (by code)

- `code` is the code of the video
- `width` is the width of the image
- `height` is the height of the image

```
1 vimeo(code, width=400, height=250)
```

Embeds a vimeo video (by code)

- `code` is the code of the video
- `width` is the width of the image
- `height` is the height of the image

```
1 mediaplayer(src, width=400, height=250)
```

Embeds a media file (such as flash video or an mp3 file)

- `src` is the src of the video
- `width` is the width of the image
- `height` is the height of the image

```
1 comments(table='None', record_id=None)
```

Embeds comments in the page Comments can be linked to a table and/or a record

- `table` is the table name
- `record_id` is the id of the record

```
1 tags(table='None', record_id=None)
```

Embeds tags in the page tags can be linked to a table and/or a record

- `table` is the table name
- `record_id` is the id of the record

```
1 tag_cloud()
```

Embeds a tag cloud

```
1 map(key='....', table='auth_user', width=400, height=200)
```

Embeds a Google map Gets points on the map from a table

- `key` is the google map api key (default works for 127.0.0.1)
- `table` is the table name

- `width` is the map width
- `height` is the map height

```

1 The table must have columns: latitude, longitude and map_popup.
2 When clicking on a dot, the map_popup message will appear.
```

```
1 iframe(src, width=400, height=300)
```

Embeds a page in an `<iframe></iframe>`

```
1 load_url(src)
```

Loads the content of the url using the LOAD function

```
1 load_action(action, controller='', ajax=True)
```

Loads the content of URL(`request.application, controller, action`) using the LOAD function

13.3.6 Extending Widgets

Adding widgets to `plugin_wiki` can be done by creating a new model file called "`models/plugin_wiki_name`" where `name` is arbitrary and that file that contains something like:

```

1 class PluginWikiWidgets(PluginWikiWidgets):
2     @staticmethod
3     def my_new_widget(arg1, arg2='value', arg3='value'):
4         """
5         document the widget
6         """
7         return "body of the widget"
```

The first line states that you are extending the list of widgets. Inside the class, you can define as many functions as needed. Each static function is a new widget, except functions that start by underscore. The function can take an arbitrary number of arguments which may or not have default values. The

docstring of the function must document the function using the markmin syntax itself.

When widgets are embedded into plugin_wiki pages, arguments will be passed to the widget as strings. This means the widget function must be able to accept strings for every argument and eventually convert them into the required representation. You can decide what the string representation must be, just make sure this is documented in the docstring.

The widget can return a string of web2py helpers. In this latter case they will be serialized using `.xml()`.

Notice how the new widget can access any variable declared in the global namespace.

As an example we are going to create a new widget that display the "contact/ask" form created at the beginning of this chapter. This can be done by creating a file "models/plugin_wiki_contact" that contains:

```

1 class PluginWikiWidgets(PluginWikiWidgets):
2     @staticmethod
3     def ask(email_label='Your email', question_label='question'):
4         """
5             This plugin will display a contact us form that allows
6             the visitor to ask a question.
7             The question will be emailed to you and the widget will
8             disappear from the page.
9             The arguments are
10
11             - email_label: the label of the visitor email field
12             - question_label: the label of the question field
13
14         """
15         form=SQLFORM.factory(
16             Field('your_email', requires=IS_EMAIL(), label=email_label),
17             Field('question', requires=IS_NOT_EMPTY()), label=question_label)
18         if form.accepts(request.vars,session):
19             if mail.send(to='admin@example.com',
20                         subject='from %s' % form.vars.your_email,
21                         message = form.vars.question):
22                 command="jQuery('#%s').hide()" % div_id
23             response.flash = 'Thank you'
```

```
24     response.js = "jQuery('#%s').hide()" % request.cid
25 else:
26     form.errors.your_email="Unable to send the email"
27     return form.xml()
```

plugin_wiki widgets are not rendered by a view unless the response.render(...) function is called explicitly by the widget.

Index

- `_init__.py`, 155
- `_and`, 343
- `_count`, 279
- `_dbname`, 239
- `_delete`, 279
- `_insert`, 279
- `_lastdb`, 251
- `_select`, 279
- `_update`, 279
- `_uri`, 239
- A, 204, 496
- about, 130, 155
- accepts, 94, 108, 290
- Access Control, 349
- access restriction, 42
- Active Directory, 363
- admin, 83, 127, 455
- admin.py, 130
- Adobe Flash, 403
- Ajax, 115, 411, 490
- Ajax links, 496
- ALL, 256
- and, 262
- Apache, 431
- appadmin, 100, 138
- appliances, 83
- `as_dict`, 264
- `as_list`, 264, 390
- ASCII, 57
- ASP, 33
- asynchronous, 427
- Auth, 349
- auth.user, 354
- auth.user_id, 354
- Authentication, 382, 409
- autocomplete, 347
- autodelete, 311
- B, 205
- bar chart, 518
- belongs, 278
- blob, 244
- block, 229
- BODY, 205
- bulk_insert, 249
- cache, 155, 156, 166
- cache clear, 168
- cache controller, 167
- cache select, 286
- cache view, 168
- cache.disk, 166
- cache.ram, 166
- CAPTCHA, 357
- CAS, 382
- CENTER, 205
- CGI, 431
- checkbox, 209
- Cherokee, 447
- class, 68
- CLEANUP, 341
- CODE, 205
- command line, 142
- comments, 520
- commit, 249
- component, 489
- component plugin, 502
- compute, 266
- confirmation, 421
- connection pooling, 236
- connection strings, 235
- contains, 274, 276
- content-disposition, 307
- controllers, 155
- cookies, 175
- cooperation, 190
- count, 263
- cPickle, 77
- cron, 182
- cross site scripting, 40

CRUD, 316, 513
 crud.create, 316
 crud.delete, 316
 crud.read, 316
 crud.search, 316
 crud.select, 316
 crud.tables, 316
 crud.update, 316
 CRYPT, 341
 cryptographic store, 42
 CSRF, 41
 CSV, 393
 csv, 279
 custom validator, 344
 DAC, 349
 DAL, 156, 233, 239
 DAL shortcuts, 256
 database drivers, 233
 databases, 155
 date, 76, 276
 datetime, 76, 276
 day, 277
 DB2, 239
 def, 64, 201
 default, 239
 default_application, 176, 181
 default_controller, 181
 default_function, 181
 define_table, 234, 239
 deletable, 421
 delete, 263
 delete_label, 303
 dict, 60
 dir, 55
 dispatching, 144
 distinct, 261
 distributed transactions, 253
 DIV, 207

Document Object Model (DOM), 202
 Domino, 363
 drop, 251
 EDIT, 131
 effects, 415
 element, 219
 elements, 219
 elif, 65, 199
 else, 65, 199, 200
 EM, 207
 email attachments, 368
 email from GAE, 367
 email html, 368
 email logging, 367
 emails, 230
 encode, 57
 env, 159
 errors, 134, 155
 escape, 197
 eval, 73
 examples, 83
 except, 66, 200
 Exception, 66
 exclude, 265
 exec, 73
 exec_environment, 188
 executesql, 250
 export, 279
 Expression, 235
 extent, 222
 ez.css, 224
 Facebook, 355, 364
 fake_migrate, 247
 FastCGI, 444, 447
 favicon, 179
 fcgihandler, 444
 fetch, 479
 Field, 234, 239, 254

Field constructor, 240
 fields, 244, 302
 FIELDSET, 207
 file.read, 70
 file.seek, 71
 file.write, 70
 finally, 66, 200
 find, 265
 FireBird, 239
 first, 264
 flash mediaplayer, 520
 Flickr, 355
 for, 62, 198
 FORM, 94, 207
 form, 91, 290
 format, 100
 formname, 290
 formstyle, 304
 GAE login, 363
 geocode, 479
 GET, 146
 Gmail, 362
 Google, 355
 Google App Engine, 467
 Google map, 520
 grouping, 272
 H1, 208
 HAProxy, 459
 HEAD, 208
 help, 55
 helpers, 156, 202
 hidden, 207
 hideerror, 327
 hour, 277
 HTML, 208, 283
 HTTP, 156, 171
 httpserver.log, 481
 id_label, 303

- if, 65, 199
- IF_MODIFIED_SINCE, 146
- IFRAME, 210
- IMG, 210
- import, 74, 187, 279
- improper error handling, 41
- include, 222
- index, 84
- information leakage, 41
- Informix, 239
- inheritance, 288
- init, 176
- injection flaws, 40
- inner join, 270
- INPUT, 94, 209
- insecure object reference, 41
- insert, 248
- internationalization, 156, 173
- IS_ALPHANUMERIC, 329
- IS_DATE, 330
- IS_DATE_IN_RANGE, 330
- IS_DATETIME, 330
- IS_DATETIME_IN_RANGE, 331
- IS_DECIMAL_IN_RANGE, 331
- IS_EMAIL, 97, 331
- IS_EMPTY_OR, 341
- IS_EQUEL_TO, 331
- IS_EXPR, 332
- IS_FLOAT_IN_RANGE, 332
- IS_IMAGE, 338
- IS_IN_DB, 97, 342
- IS_IN_SET, 332
- IS_INT_IN_RANGE, 332
- IS_IPV4, 340
- IS_LENGTH, 333
- IS_LIST_OF, 334
- IS_LOWER, 334, 340
- IS_MATCH, 334
- IS_NOT_EMPTY, 94, 97, 335
- IS_NOT_IN_DB, 342
- IS_NULL_OR, 341
- IS_SLUG, 337
- IS_STRONG, 337
- IS_TIME, 335
- IS_UPLOAD_FILENAME, 339
- IS_UPPER, 340
- IS_URL, 335
- Janrain, 355
- join, 270
- jqGrid, 513, 518
- JSON, 388, 406
- JSONRPC, 398
- JSP, 33
- Jython, 487
- keepvalues, 296
- KPAX, 127
- LABEL, 210
- labels, 302
- lambda, 71
- languages, 155
- last, 264
- latex, 518
- layout, 92
- layout plugin, 505
- layout.html, 222
- LDAP, 360, 362
- left outer join, 271
- LEGEND, 210
- length, 239
- LI, 210
- license, 44, 130, 155
- Lighttpd, 444
- like, 276
- limitby, 261
- LinkedIn, 355, 365
- list, 58
- list:integer, 274
- list:reference, 274
- list:string, 274
- LOAD, 490
- load, 490
- local_import, 187
- Lotus Notes, 363
- lower, 276, 277
- MAC, 349
- mail.send, 367
- malicious file execution, 41
- many-to-many, 272
- markdown, 122
- MARKMIN, 50, 122, 211
- markmin syntax, 509
- memcache, 465
- MENU, 217
- menu, 223
- menu in plugin_wiki, 512
- Mercurial, 137
- META, 211
- meta, 223
- meta-footer, 513
- meta-header, 513
- meta-menu, 513
- meta-sidebar, 513
- migrate, 239
- migrations, 246
- minutes, 277
- mod_proxy, 431
- mod_python, 431
- mod_wsgi, 431
- Model-View-Controller, 35
- models, 155

modules, 155
 month, 277
 MSSQL, 239
 multiple, 274, 332, 343
 MySpace, 355
 MySQL, 239
 named id field, 245
 nested select, 278
 not, 262
 notnull, 239
 OAuth, 364
 OBJECT, 211
 OL, 211
 ON, 212
 onDelete, 239
 one to many, 269
 onvalidation, 292
 OpenID, 355, 363
 OpenLDAP, 363
 OPTGROUP, 212
 OPTION, 212
 or, 262
 Oracle, 239
 orderby, 260
 os, 75
 os.path.join, 75
 os.unlink, 75
 outer join, 271
 P, 213
 page layout, 222
 pagination, 480
 PAM, 141, 360, 362
 PARTIAL CONTENT, 146
 password, 141
 PDF, 408
 PGP, 369
 PHP, 33
 pie chart, 518
 PIL, 357
 plugin, 489
 plugin_wiki, 506
 PluginManager, 501
 POST, 146
 postback, 93
 PostgresSQL, 239
 PRE, 213
 prettydate, 479
 private, 155
 PyAMF, 403
 Pyjamas, 398
 PyRTF, 407
 Python, 53
 Query, 235, 255
 radio, 209
 random, 74
 raw SQL, 278
 RBAC, 349
 reCAPTCHA, 357
 recursive selects, 258
 redirect, 93, 156, 171
 referencing, 270
 removing application, 466
 ReportLab, 408
 request, 32, 156, 157, 159
 request.ajax, 147
 request.application, 146
 request.args, 108, 146
 request.cid, 147, 495
 request.controller, 146
 request.cookies, 157
 request.function, 146
 request.get_vars, 147
 request.post_vars, 147
 request.url, 146
 request.vars, 91, 147
 required, 239
 requires, 94, 239
 reserved Keywords, 238
 response, 156, 161
 response.body, 161
 response.cookies, 161
 response.download, 161
 response.files, 161
 response.flash, 108, 161
 response.headers, 161
 response.js, 161
 response.menu, 161, 223
 response.meta, 161, 223
 response.postprocessing,
 161
 response.render, 161
 response.status, 161
 response.stream, 108, 161
 response.subtitle, 161
 response.title, 161
 response.view, 161
 response.write, 161, 197
 return, 64, 201
 robots, 179
 rollback, 249
 routes_app, 181
 routes_in, 177
 routes_on_error, 181
 routes_out, 177
 Row, 234, 255
 Rows, 234, 255, 270, 271
 RPC, 394
 RSS, 115, 391
 rss, 125
 RTF, 407
 sanitize, 122, 204
 scaffolding, 83
 scalability, 456
 SCRIPT, 213
 seconds, 277
 secure communications, 42
 security, 40, 455

SELECT, 213
 select, 105, 255
 selected, 212
 session, 89, 155, 156, 164
 session.connect, 164
 session.forget, 164
 session.secure, 164
 Set, 235, 255
 shell, 54
 showid, 303
 simplejson, 406
 site, 127
 slideshow, 519
 SMS, 483
 SMTP, 362
 SOAP, 405
 sort, 265
 SPAN, 213
 sql.log, 239
 SQLFORM, 108
 SQLite, 239
 SQLTABLE, 259
 startswith, 276
 static, 155
 static files, 145
 Storage, 157
 str, 57
 streaming, 486
 STYLE, 214
 sub-menu, 223
 submit_button, 303
 sum, 278
 superfish, 224
 sys, 76
 sys.path, 76
 T, 156, 173
 TABLE, 214
 Table, 245, 254
 tables, 244
 TAG, 217
 tag could, 520
 tags, 274, 343, 520
 TBODY, 215
 TD, 214
 template language, 195
 tests, 155
 TEXTAREA, 215
 TFOOT, 215
 TH, 215
 THEAD, 216
 time, 76, 77, 276
 TITLE, 216
 TLS, 362
 TR, 214, 216
 truncate, 248
 try, 66, 200
 TT, 216
 tuple, 59
 type, 56, 239
 UL, 216
 Unicode, 57
 unique, 239
 update, 263
 update_record, 264
 upgrades, 477
 upload, 96
 uploadfield, 239
 uploads, 155
 uploadseparate, 239
 upper, 276, 277
 URL, 93, 168
 url mapping, 144
 url rewrite, 177
 UTF8, 57
 validators, 156, 328
 views, 155, 195
 Vimeo, 519
 virtualfields, 267
 Web Services, 387
 welcome, 83
 while, 63, 198
 widget in plugin_wiki, 506
 wiki, 115, 506
 Windows service, 454
 WSGI, 191, 431
 WYSIWYG, 515
 x509, 369
 XHTML, 208
 XML, 203, 284, 388
 XMLRPC, 115, 126, 397
 year, 277
 YouTube, 519

Bibliography

- [1] <http://www.web2py.com>
- [2] <http://www.python.org>
- [3] <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SQL>
- [4] <http://www.sqlite.org/>
- [5] <http://www.postgresql.org/>
- [6] <http://www.mysql.com/>
- [7] <http://www.microsoft.com/sqlserver>
- [8] <http://www.firebirdsql.org/>
- [9] <http://www.oracle.com/database/index.html>
- [10] <http://www-01.ibm.com/software/data/db2/>
- [11] <http://www-01.ibm.com/software/data/informix/>
- [12] <http://www.ingres.com/>
- [13] <http://code.google.com/appengine/>
- [14] <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HTML>
- [15] <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/>

- [16] <http://www.php.net/>
- [17] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_Server_Gateway_Interface
- [18] <http://www.python.org/dev/peps/pep-0333/>
- [19] <http://www.owasp.org>
- [20] <http://www.pythonsecurity.org>
- [21] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secure_Sockets_Layer
- [22] <https://launchpad.net/rocket>
- [23] <http://www.cdolivet.net/editarea/>
- [24] <http://nicedit.com/>
- [25] <http://pypi.python.org/pypi/simplejson>
- [26] <http://pyrtf.sourceforge.net/>
- [27] <http://www.dalkescientific.com/Python/PyRSS2Gen.html>
- [28] <http://www.feedparser.org/>
- [29] <http://code.google.com/p/python-markdown2/>
- [30] <http://www.tummy.com/Community/software/python-memcached/>
- [31] <http://www.fsf.org/licensing/licenses/info/GPLv2.html>
- [32] <http://jquery.com/>
- [33] <https://www.web2py.com/cas>
- [34] <http://www.web2py.com/appliances>
- [35] <http://www.web2py.com/AlterEgo>
- [36] <http://www.python.org/dev/peps/pep-0008/>
- [37] <http://www.network-theory.co.uk/docs/pytut/>
- [38] <http://oreilly.com/catalog/9780596158071>

- [39] <http://www.python.org/doc/>
- [40] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cascading_Style_Sheets
- [41] <http://www.w3.org/Style/CSS/>
- [42] <http://www.w3schools.com/css/>
- [43] <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JavaScript>
- [44] <http://www.amazon.com/dp/0596000480>
- [45] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cron#crontab_syntax
- [46] <http://www.xmlrpc.com/>
- [47] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hypertext_Transfer_Protocol
- [48] <http://www.w3.org/Protocols/rfc2616/rfc2616.html>
- [49] <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XML>
- [50] <http://www.w3.org/XML/>
- [51] <http://www.ez-css.org>
- [52] <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XHTML>
- [53] <http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/>
- [54] <http://www.w3schools.com/xhtml/>
- [55] <http://www.web2py.com/layouts>
- [56] <http://sourceforge.net/projects/zxjdbc/>
- [57] <http://pypi.python.org/pypi/psycopg2>
- [58] <http://sourceforge.net/projects/mysql-python>
- [59] http://python.net/crew/atuining/cx_Oracle/
- [60] <http://pyodbc.sourceforge.net/>
- [61] <http://kinterbasdb.sourceforge.net/>

- [62] <http://informixdb.sourceforge.net/>
- [63] <http://pypi.python.org/simple/ingresdbi/>
- [64] http://docs.python.org/library/csv.html#csv.QUOTE_ALL
- [65] <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2616.html>
- [66] <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2396.html>
- [67] <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3490>
- [68] <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3492>
- [69] <http://mail.python.org/pipermail/python-list/2007-June/617126.html>
- [70] <http://mail.python.org/pipermail/python-list/2007-June/617126.html>
- [71] <http://www.recaptcha.net>
- [72] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pluggable_Authentication_Modules
- [73] <http://www.reportlab.org>
- [74] <http://gdwarner.blogspot.com/2008/10/brief-pyjamas-django-tutorial.html>
- [75] <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/AJAX>
- [76] <http://www.learningjquery.com/>
- [77] <http://ui.jquery.com/>
- [78] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Common_Gateway_Interface
- [79] <http://www.apache.org/>
- [80] <http://httpd.apache.org/download.cgi>
- [81] http://adal.chiriliuc.com/mod_wsgi/revision_1018_2.3/mod_wsgi_py25_apache22/mod_wsgi.so

- [82] http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.0/mod/mod_proxy.html
- [83] <http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/core.html>
- [84] <http://sial.org/howto/openssl/self-signed>
- [85] <http://code.google.com/p/modwsgi/>
- [86] <http://www.lighttpd.net/>
- [87] <http://www.cherokee-project.com/download/>
- [88] <http://www.fastcgi.com/>
- [89] <http://www.apsis.ch/pound/>
- [90] <http://haproxy.lwt.eu/>
- [91] <http://pyamf.org/>
- [92] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_HTTP_status_codes
- [93] <http://www.authorize.net/>
- [94] <http://sourceforge.net/projects/zxjdbc/>
- [95] <http://www.zentus.com/sqlitejdbc/>